

The Chess
PUZZLE
Book

4

**Mastering the
Positional Principles**

Karsten Müller & Alex Markgraf
Foreword by Mark Dvoretsky



The Chess Puzzle Book 4

Mastering the Positional Principles

by

**Karsten Müller
&
Alexander Markgraf**

Foreword by Mark Dvoretsky



**2012
Russell Enterprises, Inc.
Milford, CT USA**

The Chess Puzzle Book 4
Mastering the Positional Principles

by
Karsten Müller
Alexander Markgraf

ISBN: 978-1-936490-52-3

© Copyright 2012

Karsten Müller, Alexander Markgraf

All Rights Reserved

The Chess Puzzle Book 4 is the fourth volume in the series
formerly known as the ChessCafe Puzzle Books.

No part of this book may be used, reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any manner or form whatsoever or by any means, electronic, electrostatic, magnetic tape, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the express written permission from the publisher except in the case of brief quotations embodied in critical articles or reviews.

Published by:

Russell Enterprises, Inc.
P.O. Box 3131
Milford, CT 06460 USA

<http://www.russell-enterprises.com>
info@russell-enterprises.com

Cover design by Janel Lowrance
Foreword by Mark Dvoretsky translated from the Russian
by Inga Gurevich

Printed in the United States of America



Table of Contents

Signs and Symbols	4
Foreword	5
Introduction	6
Chapter 1: Prophylaxis	7
(1.1) The Theoretical Concept	7
(1.2) How to Train Prophylactic Thinking?	7
(1.3) Prophylaxis in the Middlegame	9
Chapter 2: The Principle of Two Weaknesses	29
Chapter 3: The Right Exchange	48
(3.1) Exchange your opponent's active pieces.	48
(3.2) The attacker does not want to exchange attacking potential.	51
(3.3) Defenders of weaknesses should be exchanged.	52
(3.4) It is not important what is exchanged, but what remains on the board.	54
(3.5) A rook fighting against minor pieces welcomes exchanges.	54
(3.6) Exchanging the bishop pair can transform an advantage.	56
(3.7) The side with the space advantage tries to avoid exchanges.	57
(3.8) When the opponent has static weaknesses, reduce his dynamic potential.	61
(3.9) The defender exchanges pawns.	61
Chapter 4: Domination	64
(4.1) Dominating a Knight	64
(4.2) Dominating a Bishop	73
(4.3) Restricting the Whole Army	82
Chapter 5: Do Not Rush	84
Chapter 6: Converting an Advantage	90
(6.1) Material Advantage	90
(6.2) Positional Advantage	93
Tests	108
Solutions: Chapter Exercises	132
Solutions: Tests	150
Sources	183

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

Signs and Symbols

1-0	White wins
0-1	Black wins
½-½	Draw agreed
+	check
♯	mate
!	a strong move
!!	a brilliant or unobvious move
?	a weak move, an error
??	a grave error
!?	a move worth consideration
=	an equal position
±	White is slightly better
±	White has a clear advantage
+−	White has a winning position
∓	Black is slightly better
∓	Black has a clear advantage
−+	Black has a winning position
∞	an unclear position
∞	with compensation
ol	Olympiad
m	match
ch	championship
wch	world championship
corr	correspondence game
[W]	White to move
[B]	Black to move
(D)	see the next diagram

Foreword

Regular training plays, or rather, should play, an important role in self-improvement. The participants of any sport know this, as do musicians, dancers, etc. Unfortunately, most coaches and their students ignore this technique for some reason.

For those players who are ready to improve their skills and learn new techniques, rather than just strain their memories with limitless opening analysis, it is important to find a high-quality collection of exercises involving various chess topics. Grandmaster Karsten Müller's Puzzle Book series can be a great help.

This is the fourth book in the series, and, in my opinion, the most interesting and useful. The thing is, there are many tactics books. Not all are created equal; only some are of very high quality. Books with positional exercises are much less common, although you can still find some in the huge market of chess literature. However, I cannot think of any books with high-quality exercises regarding such topics as domination, the "do not hurry" principle, the principle of two weaknesses, etc., all of which are discussed by Müller and his co-author Alexander Markgraf.

A significant number of the exercises in this new book pertain to the realization of an accumulated advantage. In making decisions, one has to consider not only purely chess implications but also psychological factors. Indeed, it often makes sense to choose a continuation that is not objectively strongest, instead making things easier for the player or creating difficulties for the opponent, helping him make mistakes.

A strong chess player and an experienced coach (and Müller has considerable coaching experience) is able to explain the inner logic of these positions, a logic that is sometimes not quite obvious at first sight. The authors' comments to the positions, which explain the topic which is being discussed, are interesting and instructive. It is not as simple with the exercises, which the readers have to solve on their own.

Indeed, for the positional exercises (as opposed to purely tactical ones), which involve no small part of psychology, there can be different interpretations. It can be difficult to decide which approach is correct. Moreover, even a computer often does not give clear preference to one or another. However, when you compare your decision to the authors' comments, you can trust their opinion. Indeed, Müller's previous books and articles have established his reputation as an extremely diligent author who always carefully checks his material. On the other hand, bearing in mind that the exercises of this kind often do not have a unique solution, you might stay with your own solution. Careful examination and com-

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

parison to the author's solution is very useful in any case, regardless of your final conclusion.

I hope that you enjoy this new book by Müller and Markgraf and I encourage you to seriously study the positions discussed in the book. As a result, you will significantly progress in your understanding of chess and improve your results.

Mark Dvoretsky
Moscow
June 2012

Introduction

Many coaches agree that solving exercises without moving the pieces is a good way to train and improve your abilities. And, of course, books with tactical puzzles abound. But what about other areas of the royal game? Here much less material is available. The present book mostly deals with the important technical question of how to convert a static advantage. A few chapters like prophylaxis and the right exchange also tackle wider issues. The chapters on prophylaxis and the principle of two weaknesses are based on works by Alexander Markgraf to get his A and B German trainer licenses. They have been translated, checked and rewritten by Karsten Müller to fit into this series.

Finally we want to thank our publisher Hanon W. Russell for his help and cooperation, Mark Dvoretsky for his foreword and our students Fiona Sieber, Spartak Grigorian, Philipp and Marcel Kyas, Rasmus Svane, Jonas Lampert, Julian Kramer, and Daniel and Julian Grötzbach for testing the exercises. We wish you a lot of fun while improving your positional feeling!

Karsten Müller and Alexander Markgraf
Hamburg
March 2012

Chapter 1 Prophylaxis

(1.1) The Theoretical Concept

Nimzowitsch introduced the concept of prophylaxis. He valued it very highly and even made it the most important principle of positional play. In his work *My System* he defined prophylaxis as "taking precautionary measures to render positional harmful options harmless." In principle, he distinguished between two forms of prophylaxis: the inner and the outer. Outer prophylaxis means stopping the ideas and plans of the opponent, especially so-called freeing moves. Inner prophylaxis means overprotecting important points, for example, the base of a pawn chain.

Among the modern authors who have dealt with prophylaxis, Dvoretsky stands out. He not only found good examples for prophylactic play, but also formed a model of thought for employing the principle of prophylaxis in a practical game – the so-called "prophylactic thinking." He recommends that you should ask yourself, after every move, what the opponent is threatening or planning, especially what he would play if it were his move. Furthermore, your ability should be trained to use those answers in your own processes in reaching a decision. Dvoretsky stresses explicitly that this method is not a pure chess phenomenon. The psychological aspects must be taken into consideration as well: "It is in the nature of mankind that he thinks mostly about his own plans, ideas and feeling. The opponent (and in chess the

opponent has exactly the same rights!) is often forgotten and from time to time we even shed tears." It is indeed helpful to ask yourself during the games: "What is my opponent planning?" Only in this way is it possible to make sure, that we give the opponents plans the same priority as ours."

(1.2) How to Train Prophylactic Thinking?

Why should a chessplayer try to master the concept of prophylaxis? Chess is a game between two players. Both have the same options and rights. So an optimal plan always has to take the options of the opponent into account and put one's own aims forward. Prophylactic thinking is relevant in almost all positions. If you have already achieved a large advantage, it is important for its realization to give the opponent no more counterplay than absolutely necessary. Otherwise the opponent must be beaten twice or three times in every game. In tactical positions, it is also very important to deal with your opponent's options. If this concept is applied carefully, then the number of tactical oversights can be reduced considerably.

The defense of difficult positions is often based on preventing an opponent's plans and ideas. This is of course much easier if you see them before they appear on the board. As the attacker, you should search for defensive setups early and not when they repel your attack for good. So

prophylactic thinking can be found and applied in all phases of the royal game, regardless if you are dealing with the opening, middlegame or endgame, or if you are dealing with a strategic, tactical or technical position.

So progress in understanding prophylaxis is progress in all areas of chess. But the very broad field of prophylaxis also introduces problems for both trainer and student. Successful prophylaxis can only be applied if the type of the position at hand and the plans of both sides are fully understood. For example, the side with the pair of bishops should be aware that one main plan of the opponent is to halve the pair. With certain pawn structures, it is important to know which pieces should be exchanged and which should remain on the board to use, e.g., an outpost.

In the endgame you should know which theoretical positions are won and which are drawn. This could be continued of course. So the training of prophylaxis should always be in accordance with the general development of the student. Nevertheless, one issue that arises is whether the method of prophylactic thinking – the constant searching for the opponent's plans – should be introduced early in training, so that the student can get used to it. Classical games of great master of prophylaxis are very helpful for this purpose. Petrosian and Karpov come particularly to mind. Both players had a very prophylactic style. Petrosian thought in larger dimensions and tried to prevent any counterplay during the whole game. The following game is quite typical of this. At first, Petrosian seems to start an attack with his pawns on the kingside in a typical King's

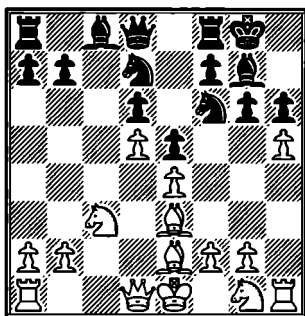
Indian position. But in reality, his aim is to close that wing, stopping the usual source of counterplay ...f7-f5, and then to attack undisturbed on his home turf, the queenside.

01.01 Petrosian – Schweber

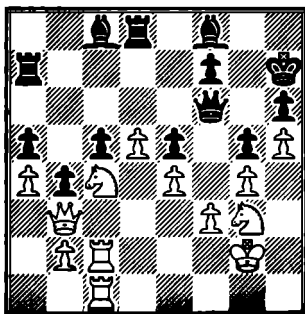
Stockholm Interzonal 1962

King's Indian Defense [E73]

1.d4 ♘f6 2.c4 g6 3.♗c3 ♖g7 4.e4 d6 5.♗e2 0-0 6.♗g5 h6 7.♗e3 e5 8.d5 c6 9.h4 cxd5 10.cxd5 ♘bd7 11.h5 (D)



At first this looks like an attack, but in reality, Petrosian wants to prevent Black's play before it begins. 11...g5 12.f3 a6 13.g4 b5 14.a4 b4 15.♘b1 a5 16.♘d2 ♘c5 17.♗xc5 dxc5 18.♗b5 ♗b7 19.♘e2 ♘e8 20.♗xe8 ♗xe8 21.♘c4 ♗a6 22.♖b3 ♖f6 23.♗c1 ♗f8 24.♘g3 ♗c8 25.0-0 ♗d8 26.♖g2 ♗a7 27.♗f2 ♖h7 28.♗fc2 (D)



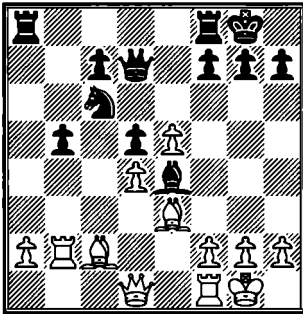
Prophylaxis

A complete triumph of Petrosian's strategy. Black is positionally lost, as he has many structural weaknesses and no counterplay. **28... ♖a6?! 29. ♖×e5 ♜c7 30. ♖c4 ♙g7 31. ♗d3 ♜g8 32. ♗d2 ♜e7 33. e5 ♙×e5 34. ♖×e5 ♜×e5 35. ♗×a6 ♙×a6 36. ♜×c5 ♙c8 37. ♜×a5 f5 38. g×f5 ♙×f5 39. ♖×f5 ♜×f5 40. ♗b5 ♗df8 41. d6 ♜×b5 42. a×b5 ♗f7 43. d7 1-0**

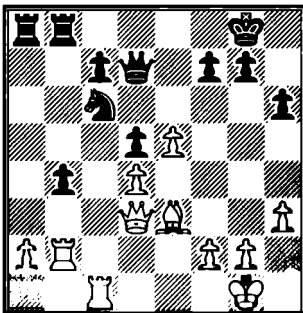
Karpov's style is more concrete. He stops threats of his opponent that might arise in a few moves. This is well-illustrated by the following example:

01.02 Karpov – Yusupov

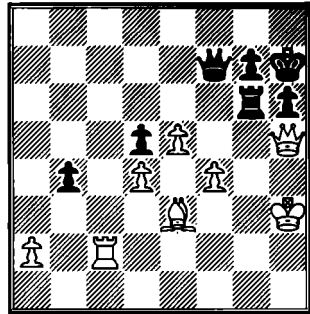
USSR (ch) Moscow 1983 [W] (D)



Karpov fights against the regrouping of the knight to c4 in the following moves as the knight on c4 would block the c-file and so would stop White's attack against the weak c7-pawn: **20. ♙d3! ♙×d3 21. ♗×d3 ♜fb8 22. ♜fb1 b4 23. h3 h6 24. ♜c1 (D)**



24... ♗b6 Trying to regroup the knight with 24... ♖a5 is met by 25. ♗b1! (Karpov in *Informant* 35/427) 25... ♖c4 26. ♜×b4 ♜×b4 27. ♗×b4 as 27... ♜×a2?? runs into 28. ♗b8+ ♖h7 29. ♗b1+ +-. **25. ♗b1 ♜ab8 26. ♜c5!** Karpov now stops ... ♖a5 directly. **26... ♖d8 27. ♜cc2 ♖c6 28. ♗c1 ♜8b7 29. ♜c5** The motif repeats itself **29... ♖e7 30. ♗h2** Now Karpov plans and attack on the kingside to open a second front, which induces a mistake immediately. **30... ♖f5?** Yusupov had to sit tight and wait with, e.g., 30... ♜a6. **31. ♜bc2 ♜g6?! 32. ♜×c7 ♜×c7 33. ♜×c7 ♗b5 34. g4 ♖h4 35. ♜c8+ ♗h7 36. ♗d1 ♗a6 37. ♜c2 f5?! 38. ♗g3 f×g4 39. ♗×h4 g×h3 40. f4 ♗e6 41. ♗h5 ♗e7+ 42. ♗×h3 ♗f7 (D)**



Now comes Karpov's tactical point, the prophylactic **43. ♗h2!! ♗d7+ 44. f5 1-0**

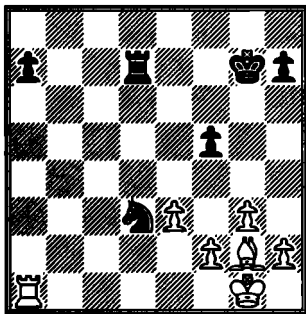
In addition to these two great players, studying the games of Dvoretsky's students Yusupov and Dolmatov is productive.

(1.3) Prophylaxis in the Middlegame

Because of the universal nature of prophylaxis, we cannot deal with all aspects extensively and will mostly deal with middlegames. In the opening

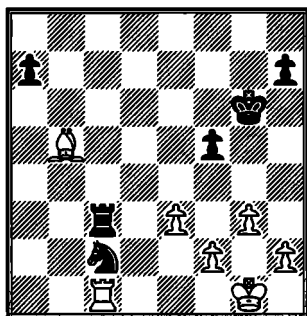
and endgame, the specifics of these phases must be taken into account. In the opening prophylaxis may, e.g., be directed against the occupation of the center or the unhindered development of the opponent. In the endgame, prophylaxis may, e.g., be used when dealing with weaknesses, the principles of the type of endgame at hand and prevention of technically and theoretically poor positions. Before we get to the exercises, however, here is one further example to get you into the right prophylactic mood:

01.03 Beliavsky – Nikolic
Polanica Zdroj 1996 [W] (D)



How to convert White's advantage smoothly? **31. ♖a5!** Black must solve three problems in this position. The first two are the weaknesses on a7 and f5 and the third is the d3-knight which is in constant danger of being captured. White's last move rubs salt into these wounds. The a5-rook attacks both weaknesses and prevents the knight from rejoining the rest of Black's forces via the fifth rank. **31... ♣g6** **32. ♗h3!** The attack of White's pieces is well-coordinated and forces Black into a passive position. **32... ♜f7** **33. ♗f1!** Now White's play is directed against the knight. The rook and bishop try to imprison it. **33... ♛e1** The alternatives are not better: **33... ♛b4** **34. ♜a4 ♜a5 (34... ♜c6 35. ♜a6 ♜f6**

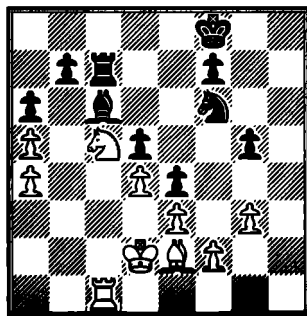
36. ♗g2 ♛e5 37. ♜xa7+-) **35. ♗c4 ♜d7 36. ♗xd5 ♜xd5 37. ♜xa7+-;** **33... ♜d7 34. ♗xd3 ♜xd3 35. ♜a6+ ♣g7 36. ♜xa7+-;** **33... ♛c1 34. ♗c4 ♜c7 35. ♗e6 ♣f6 36. ♗xf5 ♛b3 37. ♜d5+-.** **34. ♗e2** Preventing the knight from escaping via f3. **34... ♜c7** The direct retreat **34... ♛c2** runs into **35.g4** with the king on g6: **35... ♛b4 (35... ♜xg4? 36. ♗d3+-)** **36.gxf5+ ♜xf5 37. ♜xa7+-.** **35. ♜a1!** Forcing the knight into a deadly pin. **35... ♛c2 36. ♜c1 ♜c6 37. ♗b5! ♜c3 (D)**



White to move and win! **38. ♣h1! 1-0** This prophylactic move finishes Black off as there is no defense against **♗a4**. The direct **38. ♗a4?** fails to the tactical trick **38... ♛d4!** **39. ♜xc3?** (**39. ♜d1** is necessary) **39... ♛e2+ 40. ♣f1 ♛xc3** and Black is still fighting.

Exercises

E01.01 Epishin – Nikolic
German Bundesliga 2002 [B] (D)

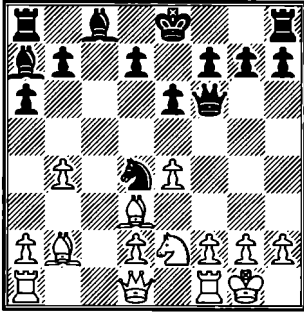


Prophylaxis

White is obviously creating strong pressure. But what is his threat? Find it and parry it!

E01.02 Baklan – Cherniaev

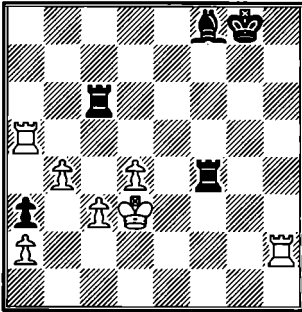
EU-ch Istanbul 2003 [W] (D)



How to profit from the pin along the long diagonal?

E01.03 Gdanski – Beliavsky

EU-ch 11th Rijeka 2010 [W] (D)



Find White's most precise move!

(1.3.1) Defensive Prophylaxis

Prophylactic thinking is especially important when defending. To do this hard job successfully it is **necessary** to understand the plans and threats of the opponent and to **render them harmless**. First of all, **concrete tactical ideas** must be stopped. **But the**

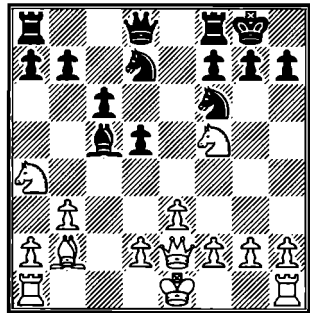
defender also must follow strategic guidelines in order to be successful.

(1.3.1.1) Tactically Defensive Prophylaxis

The first job of the defender is to avoid a tactical shot by the attacker, a shot which leads to mate, material gain or a technically won position. To achieve this, the defender has to identify all threats. If only one idea is missed, the game is often decided. But if all ideas and threats are discovered, the resources to stop them are often found easily. So the main aim of prophylactically defensive thinking is to spot the threats. To make this job easier it is helpful to discover all typical tactical blows for the given distribution of pieces and to look at them again each move.

01.06 Hickl – Yusupov

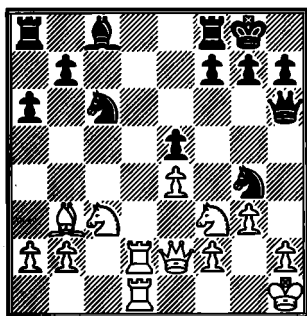
German Championship Bremen 1998 [B] (D)



With his last move (12. ♖a4) White has attacked the c5-bishop. Can Black avoid the exchange of his good dark-square bishop? But before you consider **concrete** moves, you should try to **discover all white threats**. Hickl has **managed** to land a knight on f5. **Together with the bishop on the long diagonal a1-h8, White has a typical**

attacking formation which is well covered in the literature (so all alarm bells should be ringing!). Both pieces are applying strong pressure on the dark-squares. Typical motifs are, e.g., the sacrifice 1. ♖xg7 ♜xg7, to use the arising pin of the f6-knight with ♖g4 or ♖h5. Another idea is to open the long diagonal completely for the b2-bishop in a sacrificial way by removing the f6-knight and g7-pawn and then to mate by ♖h6 or ♖e7.

01.07 Nielsen – Baburin
EU-chT Gothenburg 2005 [W] (D)



12... ♖b4?! Yusupov stops the positional threat ♖xc5, but misses his opponent's tactical point. It was better to play 12... ♖e8 13. ♖xc5 ♖xc5 14. 0-0 ♖e6=. So Hickl strikes immediately: 13. ♖xg7! A typical motif for this kind of position, as previously noted. The knight cannot be taken because of 14. ♖g4+ winning the b4-bishop. So Yusupov decides to win the a4-knight, but White gets an irresistible attack in return. 13... b5 After 13... ♜xg7 14. ♖g4+ ♜h8 15. ♖xb4 Black can resign. 14. ♖f5 bxa4 15. ♖h5! A typical motif for the ♖f5 and ♖b2 setup against a black king on g8. The queen cannot be taken because of ♖h6*. 15... ♖h8 16. ♖g4 In view of the double threat ♖g7* and ♖xb4 White wins his piece back while maintaining his attack. 16... ♖xd2+ 17. ♖xd2 ♖g8 18. ♖xa4 ♖xg2 The material is now equal, but the extremely powerful b2-bishop cannot be controlled by Black. So the game is decided: 19. ♖e2 ♖g8 20. ♖g3 ♖g6 21. ♖ac1 ♖e8 22. ♖f4 c5 23. ♖f1 ♖xg3 24. ♖xf6+ ♖xf6 25. hxg3 ♖e4 26. ♖h6 ♖g7 27. ♖d1 ♖e5 28. ♖g2 ♖g5 29. ♖c6 h6 30. ♖xh6+ 1-0

Black's pieces make a very active impression at first sight. The ♖h6 and the ♖g4 eye h2 which is defended only by the ♖f3. Typical of such cases are all forms of deflection or destroying of the guard combinations. So the last black move 18...e5 threatens to deflect the f3-knight with 19... ♖d4!. But Nielsen has spotted the motif and takes countermeasures.

19. h4!

White simply prevents the threat 19... ♖d4. And now it is obvious that Black's position is not very healthy. His development is not completed and the ♖c8 cannot enter the game with good effect. On the other hand, White's pieces all occupy active posts and control the center very well.

19... ♖e6

After 19... ♖f6 White has the strong exchange sacrifice 20. ♖g5! ♖d4 (20... ♖g4 21. f3 ♖d4 22. ♖xd4 exd4 23. ♖xd4 ♖h5 24. e5) 21. ♖xd4 exd4 22. ♖xd4 with more than enough compensation in both cases.

20. ♖d6 ♖ad8 21. ♖xd8 ♖xd8

Prophylaxis

21...♖×d8 22.♖×d8+ ♘×d8 23.♗g5
♕×b3 24.a×b3 ♘f6 25.♖d1 ♘c6
26.♖d6 ♖g6 27.♖c7±

22.♗g5?!

White misses the option to convert the advantage of his more harmonious setup with 22.♗d5! ♕×d5 23.e×d5 as the d8-knight has problems and the passed d-pawn is not easy to blockade.

22...♕×b3 23.a×b3 ♘f6?

Too passive. 23...♖h5! with the idea 24...h6 is much stronger as 24.♗d5? is refuted by 24...♗f2+–+. So White should opt for 24.♖d7 ♘c6 25.♖g2 (25.♖b7?! ♗d4 26.♖f1 h6 27.♗h3 ♘f6) 25...♗d4 26.♖d3. But Black still has some counterplay.

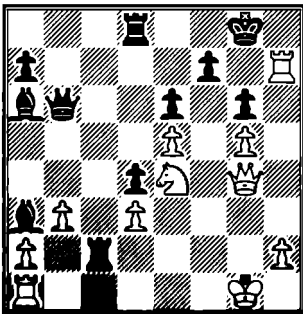
24.♖d6 ♘c6?

24...♖h5 keeps White's advantage within reasonable bounds.

25.♗d5± ♖d8? 26.♖×d8+ ♘×d8
27.♗e7+ ♖f8 28.♗f5+– ♖g6
29.♖d2 ♘c6 30.♖d6+ ♖e8
31.♖c7 1-0

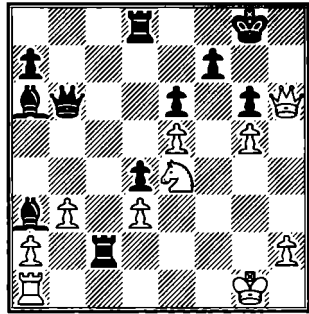
01.08 Motoc – Gutsko

EU-ch U18 Girls Budva 2003 [B] (D)



White has just sacrificed a piece (22.♕a3) and a rook (23.♖×h7) to destroy the pawn shield protecting Black's king. And after the game continuation 1...♕b7?? White succeeded. But Black has alternatives. First the counterattack 1...♖c7? which secures a draw: 2.♖h4!? (2.♗f6+ ♖f8 3.♖×e6 ♖c1+ 4.♖f2 ♖c2+ 5.♖g3 ♖×d3+ 6.♖h4 f×e6 7.♖h8+ ♖e7 8.♖h7+ ♖f8 9.♖h8+=) 2...♖c1+! (But not 2...♖×e5? 3.♖e1!±) 3.♖×c1 ♖×c1+ 4.♖g2 ♖f8 5.♖×f7+ ♖×f7 6.♖h7+=.

But what about the natural 1...♖h7?!. As a child I learned that the opponent should not be trusted blindly and everything calculated critically. So let's consider: 2.♖h4+ ♖g8 3.♖h6 (D)



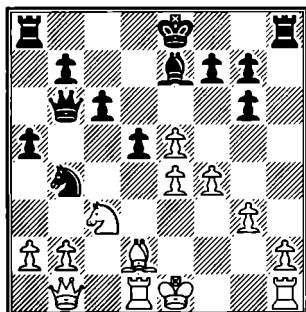
and it seems to be impossible to stop the mate on f6 while after 1...♕e7 2.♗f6+ ♕×f6 3.g×f6, g7 seems to be unable to be protected. But again prophylactic thinking helps. The first step, identifying the threat (♗f6+) has already been taken. Now options must be found to take the sting out of it. In this case Black's large material advantage gives him the option returning material without ending up in a technically lost position. So can Black parry the mating threat? Yes she can, with the help of tactics: 3...♖g2+!!

4.♖h1 (4.♜xg2 ♘b7!+) What is the only remaining white threat and how can it be parried? 4...♞f2!! 5.♗xf2 ♜c6+ 6.♖g1 ♗c1+.

2.♜h4+- ♖f8 3.♞xf7+ ♜xf7
4.♜h7+ ♖e8 5.♗f6+ ♖f8
6.♜g8+ 1-0

01.09 Yusupov – Caruana

Amsterdam 2008 [W] (D)



From White's point of view, the opening has gone wrong. His pieces are passive and his king cannot castle easily. But if he manages to drive the b4-knight away with a2-a3 and to take on d5 afterwards, then he will get counterplay. But he has to act extremely carefully as Black has significant tactical potential because of the activity of his pieces (♜b6, ♞h8, ♗b4) and White's exposed king. So White must watch out for concrete tactical threats. In the game, Yusupov did not do this. After his move **19.a3?** Black has a strong shot. 19.h4? is also too slow in view of 19...d4 20.♗e2 d3 21.♗c3 ♞xh4!! 22.gxh4 ♘xh4+-; 19.exd5?! allows 19...♞xh2 as well: 20.♞xh2 ♜g1+ 21.♖e2 ♜xh2+ 22.♖f3 ♜h5+ 23.♖g2 ♗xd5 24.♞e1 0-0-0 25.♗xd5 ♞xd5 26.♗c3 ♘b4 with a strong initiative. 19.♖e2! d4 20.♖f3! 0-0-0 (after 20...dxc3

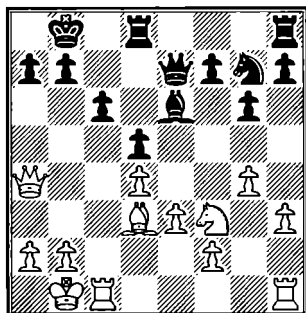
21.bxc3 White wins the knight back.) 21.♗e2 and White can consolidate with ♖g2 and ♞he1 and continue to fight. But Black is of course still for choice. 19...♞xh2!+- 20.♞xh2 ♜g1+ 21.♖e2 ♜xh2+ 22.♖f3 d4 23.axb4 dxc3 24.♗xc3 ♜h5+ 25.♖f2 axb4 26.♗d4 ♜h2+ 27.♖f3 g5 28.♗f2 g4+ 29.♖e2 ♗c5 30.♞f1 ♜g2 31.♜d3 ♞d8 32.♜c2 ♜f3+ 33.♖e1 b3 0-1

(1.3.1.2) Strategic Prophylaxis in Defense

The defender must adhere to several general guidelines. In general, Steinitz has already formulated them. Following his theory, the defender must avoid weakening moves on the threatened wing at any cost. Furthermore, the defense should be conducted economically. This means that no more pieces than are absolutely necessary should defend as otherwise they will be missed in the counterattack.

01.10 Nilsson – Hansen

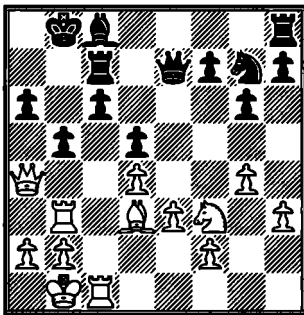
Laholm 2008 [B] (D)



White has just prepared the rook transfer to the third rank with 17.♞c1 to provoke weaknesses on Black's queenside. Can Black avoid this?

Prophylaxis

17...♖e8! A strong prophylactic maneuver which is also in accordance with Steinitz' defensive principles. Black's knight will be transferred via d6 to c8, where it will defend a7 securely, so that Black can make do without moving a pawn in front of his king. The disastrous consequences such a move can have is shown in the following game between two Serbian grandmasters: 17...♖c8? 18.♖c3 ♖c7 19.♖hc1 ♖c8 20.♖a3 now Black is forced to weaken his queenside pawn wall: 20...a6 21.♖b3 b5 (D)

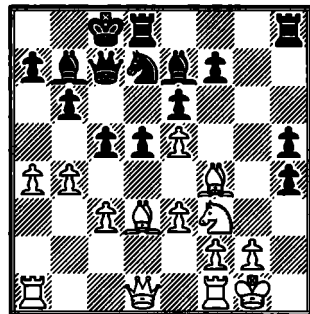


and White took advantage of the gaping holes in Black's queenside: 22.♗a5 ♖b7 23.♖bc3 ♖hc8 24.♗b6 f6 25.♖d2 ♖e6 26.♖b3 ♗d6 27.f4 ♖e7 28.♖a5 ♖d8 29.♖xc6+ ♖xc6 30.♖xc6 ♖xc6 31.♖xc6 ♗b4 32.♗d8+ ♗a7 33.♗b6+ ♗b8 34.a3 ♗e1+ 35.♗a2 ♗xe3 36.♖d6 1-0 Pavlovic-Kosic, Bar 2003

18.♖c3 ♖d6 19.♖a3?! As Black has transferred his knight to the defense of the queenside, this standard plan makes no sense anymore as White does not manage to provoke a weakness. White's pieces are better located in the center. 19...♖c8 20.♖c1 ♖d7! Again a strong defensive maneuver. Black brings his rook to c7 where it protects the c6-

pawn and the seventh rank. **21.♖e5 ♖c7 22.♖c5 h5!** Black has conducted the defense economically and has not used more pieces than necessary. Now he starts his counterplay on the other wing. **23.♖a5 b6!** Now it is clear that White can achieve nothing on the queenside as Black's pieces have all the important squares covered. **24.♖a6 24.♖xc6+ ♖xc6 25.♗xc6 bxa5 26.♖b3+ ♖b6 27.♖xb6+ axb6 28.♗xb6+ ♗b7! → 24...hxg4 25.hxg4 ♗d6 26.♗d1 g5 27.♖c3 f6 28.♖g6 ♖h2 29.♗f3 ♖f7 0-1**

01.11 Spassky – Petrosian WCh Moscow 1966 [B] (D)



White has just shown his intentions on the queenside with 17.a4. With a4-a5 he wants to open files against Black's king. Probably Petrosian could have entered the race, which is typical for positions with castling on opposite sides as the half-open g-file gives him good chances. But Petrosian would just not be Petrosian if he did not stop White's play first and only follow his own plans later.

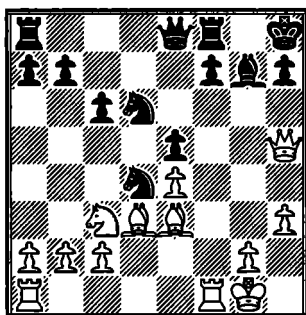
17...c4! 18.♖e2 18.♖f5!? is met by 18...t1t1 (but not 18...exf5? 19.e6 ♖d6 ♖(t1,t1)17+ ♖(t1,t1)17 21.♗d4 with unclear consequences) 19.cxd4 (19.♖xd4?

e×f5 20.e6 (20.♖b5 ♜b8 21.e6 ♘e5-+) 20...♘e5-+) 19...e×f5 20.e6 ♖d6 21.e×d7+ ♜×d7 22.♖×d6 ♜×d6 and Black dominates on the light-squares. (Kasparov) 18...a6! Petrosian's point! Today it is a common defensive weapon to avoid the opening of lines. White cannot achieve anything with 19.a5 because of 19...b5, and 19.b5 is met by 19...a5. So from now on only Black is playing: 19.♖h1 ♖d8 20.♖g1 ♖g4 21.♜d2 ♖hg8 22.a5 b5 23.♖ad1 ♖f8! 24.♘h2 ♘×e5! 25.♘×g4 h×g4 26.e4 ♖d6 27.♜e3 ♘d7 28.♖×d6 ♜×d6 29.♖d4? e5! 30.♖d2 f5! 31.e×d5 f4! 32.♜e4 ♘f6 33.♜f5+ ♖b8 34.f3 ♖c8 35.♜b1 g3 36.♖e1 h3 37.♖f1 ♖h8 38.g×h3 ♖×h3 39.♖g1 ♖×f1 40.♖×f1 e4! 41.♜d1 ♘g4! 42.f×g4 f3 43.♖g2 f×g2+ 0-1

(1.3.2) Prophylaxis in Attack

When attacking, prophylaxis can also play a very important role. Often a player takes great risks to attack the enemy king. Maybe he has sacrificed a lot of material, ruined his pawn structure or given his opponent a free hand on the other wing. To win the game, it is then absolutely necessary to bring the attack to a successful end. This can often only be achieved if the essential defensive ideas are seen and prevented. Like when defending, the main difficulty here is to spot the resources of the opponent in time. "In time" means most often before starting the attack. Otherwise the basis for the decision whether to attack or not is not present.

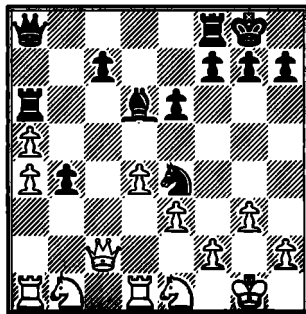
01.12 Fischer – Benko
USA ch New York 1963 [W] (D)



This is one of Fischer's most famous games. Benko has just played 17...♜e8 with the idea of bringing the queen into the defense of the kingside by f7-f6 (f5). How to stop this maneuver? 18.♖×d4! e×d4 19.♖f6!! A very famous prophylactic move! Fischer sacrifices a rook to block Black's f-pawn. The threat of e4-e5 followed by ♜×h7* decides. After the hasty 19.e5? f5! Black's point would be fully revealed. 19...♖g8 19...d×c3 20.e5+-; 19...♖×f6 20.e5+- 20.e5 h6 21.♘e2! 1-0 and Benko resigned in view of 21...♖×f6 22.♜×h6+-.

Exercises

E01.04 Vaganian – Beliavsky
URS ch Moscow 1988 [B] (D)

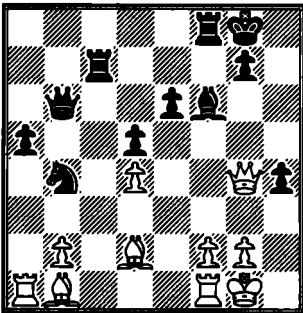


Black has reached a clearly superior position. His minor pieces occupy

Prophylaxis

much more active posts, the a-pawns are weak and White's king position is weak on the light-squares. But White has the important defensive resource $23.f3!$ followed by $\text{d}2$, which stabilizes his position completely. How did Beliavsky stop this idea?

E01.05 Markgraf – Schuster Germany 2006 [W] (D)



Black has an extra pawn and threatens to grab another one on d4. In the long run the bishops cannot compensate for this. So White must attack. Can you see how he should start?

(1.3.3) Prophylaxis and Strategy

In the first two chapters on defense and attack, prophylactic thinking played more or less a tactical role. But it is just as valuable in quiet strategic positions. But in sharp contrast to just calculating a line and counting the pieces at the end, here the main stratagems and plans have to be found and evaluated. This ability has to be developed by studying many examples of the theme.

(1.3.3.1) Space Advantage

Tarrasch's famous quote: "Every cramped position harbors within itself

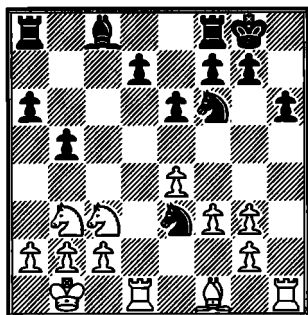
the germs of defeat" must be taken with a large grain of salt of course. Usually it is good to have more space to maneuver freely, but more important for the evaluation is whether the opponent's pieces are restricted in their mobility. If those pieces cannot be placed harmoniously because of a lack of space, the space advantage really counts. However, if White has a large space advantage, but Black's pieces are active and his minor pieces have maneuvering room even in the face of White's spatial advantage. The far advanced pawns and the squares behind them can even be weak, especially if the other side manages to get behind the pawns.

One example to illustrate this problem is the so-called Hedgehog structure which can arise from many openings. White has a large space advantage, but Black's pieces are active and the four minor pieces have enough space within which to maneuver. It is as if they are waiting to show their energy after a freeing move like $d6-d5$ or $b6-b5$. If Black manages to get in such a break, White is often in dire straits, as Black starts to exploit the weaknesses in his camp. The side with less space has two options if there is not enough maneuvering room for all of the pieces. It can try to exchange pieces or try to get freeing moves in to get behind the enemy pawns and to grab space to maneuver. The other side usually tries to prevent such exchanges and freeing moves. When this succeeds, the better maneuverability can be used in the long run. According to Nimzowitsch, one should organize one's forces economically. A freeing move should only be prevented if it really helps the defender. If it could be

stopped, then the minimum number of force to do the job should be employed.

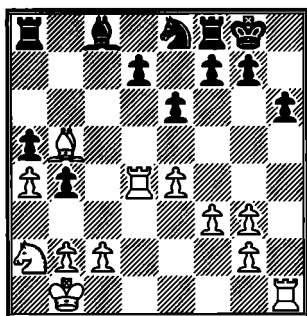
01.13 Anand – Portisch

Biel Interzonal 1993 [W] (D)

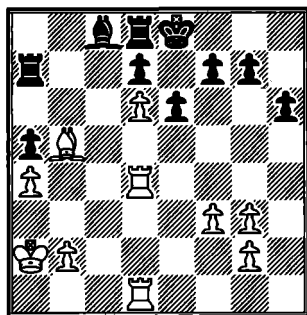


White has a small advantage. He is better developed and has more space. Furthermore the d7-pawn may become weak later. But first, Black's attempts to free himself must be stopped. White must first deal with Black's threats to solve his problems by b5-b4 followed by d7-d5. **19. ♖d6!** An important move. White simply blocks the d7-pawn. Black's only way to lift the blockade is ♟f6-e8. But then the knight's support of d7-d5 will be sorely missed. After the superficial 19. ♗d3? Black can equalize by 19... ♟xf1 20. ♗xf1 d5 21. exd5 b4 22. ♞e2 ♟xd5. **19... ♟e8 20. ♗d3 ♟c4?!** After 20... ♟xf1 21. ♗xf1 ± White has a strong grip. But the text move allows Anand to open the queenside favorably. **21. a4! ♟e5 22. ♗d2 b4 23. ♟a2 ♟c6 24. ♟d4 ♟xd4 25. ♗xd4 a5 26. ♖b5±** (D)

White is clearly better as Black has not achieved the freeing advance d7-d5 and has had to allow a weakening of his queenside structure. **26... ♟f6 27. ♗hd1 ♗d8 28. c3 bxc3 29. ♟xc3 ♗a7 30. e5 ♟e8 31. ♟e4**



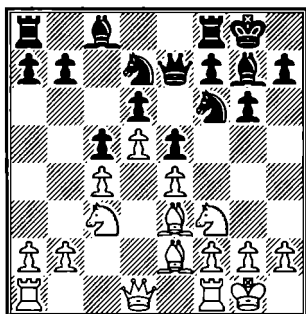
♟f8 32. ♖a2 ♟e7 33. ♟d6 ♟xd6 34. exd6+ ♟e8 (D)



35. ♗c4?! Converting an advantage often requires precise moves to prevent the coordination of the defensive forces. The text move does not give the advantage away altogether, but correct is the *zwischenzug* 35. ♗g4! and only after 35... ♟f8 (35... ♗g6? can be met by 36. ♗h1) 36. ♗c4. **35... ♖a6 36. ♗c7 ♗aa8 37. ♗dc1?** This spoils the advantage completely. Anand had to activate his king with 37. ♖a3 ♖xb5 38. axb5 ♗db8 39. ♖a4±. **37... ♖xb5 38. axb5 ♗ab8 39. ♗1c5 ♗b6 40. ♖a3 ♗xd6 41. ♖a4 ♟e7 42. ♗c8 ♗d2 43. ♗c2 ♗xc2 44. ♗xc2 d5 45. b6 d4 46. ♖b5 d3 47. ♗d2 e5 48. b7 f5 49. ♗xd3 ♗xd3 50. b4 ♗d5+ 51. ♖c6 ♗d6+ 52. ♖c5 ♗d8 53. bxa5 e4 54. fxe4 fxe4 55. a6 e3 56. a7 e2 57. b8 ♖ ½-½**

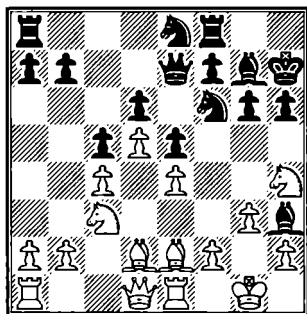
01.14 Topalov – Movsesian

12th EU-chT (Men) Batumi 1999 | W|
(D)



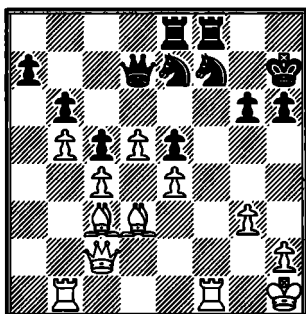
A typical position for the ♠bd7 King's Indian with c5. The central pawn chains secure White a space advantage. White can eventually follow up with b2-b4 and Black with f7-f5, which would give him good counterplay. So Topalov takes prophylactic measures against the freeing move first as his play on the queenside can be started later anyway: **10. ♖g5!** Topalov provokes h7-h6 to weaken g6. **10...h6 11. ♖d2 ♗e8** But how to continue now? The advance f7-f5 will weaken g6 further. So Topalov directs his ♗f3 to h4, where it eyes both weak light-squares g6 and f5. Against 11...♗h5 Topalov would also have opted for 12.g3, to meet 12...f5? with 13.♗h4+- . **12.g3!** White has prevented the advance f7-f5 by strategic measures for the moment. Now 12...f5?! can be answered by 13.♗h4! ♜f6 14.exf5 gxf5 15.f4! to fix Black's pawns, making it very difficult for Black to make further progress on the kingside. So Black waits for a more appropriate moment for the freeing advance and activates his ♖c8 first by regrouping the ♗d7. **12...♗df6 13.♗h4 ♖h3 14.♖e1 ♜h7 (1)**

Topalov has stopped Black's play on the kingside for the moment. So he can



now use the time to prepare his play on the queenside. **15. ♜b1 b6 16.a3 ♖d7** Here we should have a look at Topalov's intentions against a more direct approach with f5. Then the weakened light-squares on the kingside play a vital role: 16...♗g8 17.♖d3 to meet 17...f5? with 18.♗xg6! ♜xg6 19.exf5+ ♖xf5 20.♜g4+- and White wins the piece back. This motif is one of the points of the prophylactic approach starting with 10. ♖g5. The advance f7-f5 cannot be played because of the weaknesses on the light-squares. **17.b4±** White has achieved his advance b2-b4 and managed to hinder Black's progress on the kingside. In the next phase he will employ the setup ♖d3/♜c2 to stop Black's f5 for good. **17...♜d8 18. ♖d3! ♗g8 19.♜c2 ♜c8 20.bxc5! dxc5** A risky decision. Black clears the d6-square for his e8-knight. The downside is of course that White's advance f2-f4 gains in strength as Black's e-pawn has lost its base d6-pawn. If Black takes back on c5 differently, then White continues to play on the queenside: 20...♜xc5 21.♖e3 ♜c8 22.a4 and 20...bxc5 21.♜b7 in both cases with a strong initiative. **21.f4!** Topalov starts the fight for the c5-square at an appropriate time as neither Black knight is in a good position to participate. **21...♗d6**

21...exf4? allows White to open the floodgates with 22.e5 (fxg3 23.hxg3) e7 24.d6 e6 25.♖xg6+ ♜h8 (25...fxg6 26.♜xg6+ ♜g8 27.♖xh6+-) 26.♖f4+- . **22.a4!** Strategically a strong move. White wants to create a second front. He plans to exchange the strong blockading d6-knight with e6. So Black must take on b5 with the bishop, allowing White to open a road against Black's a-pawn by axb5. The more direct 22.f3! was also very interesting as Black is almost forced to answer 22...f6 (22...exf4? runs into 23.e5±) 23.f5 e7 24.eh4 g5 25.eg2 when the g7-bishop is quite bad. **22...e7** The typical 22...a5! was probably a better practical choice, but White's initiative continues of course, e.g., 23.fxe5 (23.f3 f6 24.f5 e7 25.eh4 g5 26.eg2 ♜b8) 23...♖xe5 24.f3 f6 25.♜b3 e7 26.exe5 fxe5 27.♜eb1 ♜b8 28.♜b2 e6c8 29.♖e3 ♜c7 **23.e6 ♖xb5 24.axb5 ♜d7 25.fxe5 ♖xe5 26.f3 f6 27.exe5 fxe5 28.♖c3 e7 29.♜f1 ♜ce8 30.♜h1± (D)**



White's position is strategically winning in view of his large spatial advantage, the weaknesses on e5 and a7, his pair of bishops and the opportunity to double rooks on the open f-file. **30...g5 31.♜f6 e6 32.♜bf1 e6 33.♜xf8 e6**

34.♖e2 ♜g7 35.♖h5 ♜e7 36.♜e2 e7 37.♖g4 ♜e8 38.♖f5 e6 39.♜g2 ♜g8 40.h4 g4 and now instead of **41.♖xg4!** after which Topalov eventually won, he could have chosen as well the stronger prophylactic **41.♖d2** to take on g4 after **41...♜e8 42.♖c1 ♜e7 43.♖xg4** with the idea **43...e6xg4 44.♜xg4+ ♜h7 45.♖g5 ♜f7 46.♜e6 h6xg5 47.h6xg5+-** .

(1.3.3.2) Mysterious Rook Moves

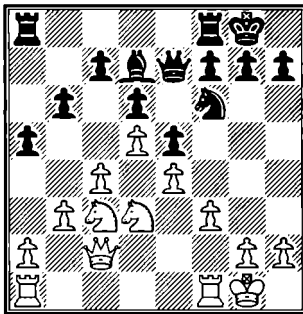
This term was coined by Nimzowitsch. He sometimes put his rooks on closed files, when his contemporaries called them mysterious without really understanding what was going on. But Nimzowitsch usually followed a deep concept to stop freeing pawn moves. The rook is placed on a closed file. If the opponent now plays his freeing pawn advance this file is opened and the rook springs to life. Nimzowitsch called such files, which can only be opened by the opponent, "Eventuallinie." The mysterious rook move is a special form of prophylaxis against freeing moves. The player has to solve several complex problems:

- (1) Which freeing moves is the opponent planning?
- (2) Is it a "real" freeing move or might it even be preferable to allow the advance?
- (3) Can the advance be stopped?
- (4) Is it worth it to use the power of a whole rook to stop the advance?

The following example illustrates Nimzowitsch's concept well (see *My System*, p.203).

01.15 Nimzowitsch

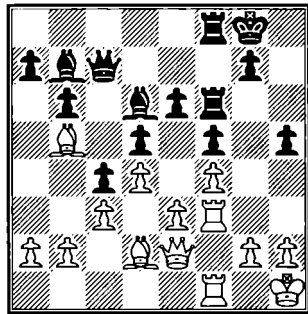
My System [B] (D)



If White wants to make progress, he must advance on the queenside with a2-a3, b3-b4 followed by c4-c5. Black to move prepares himself for this opening of the wing by bringing his rooks into position. **1...♠a7!**? Black doubles his rooks on the closed a-file. If White executes his plan with a3 followed by b4, he will be very active. The natural 1...♞h5!? to start play on the kingside with ...f5 was the alternative. **2.a3 ♜fa8 3.♞b2 ♞d8 4.b4** With Black's rooks so far away, opening a second front with 4.f4 is of course also an option. **4...a×b4 5.a×b4 ♞b8 6.♜fb1 6...♠a7?! ♞xa7** plays into Black's hand as he maintains control over the a-file. **6...♞f8 7.c5 b×c5 8.♠xa7 ♠xa7 9.b×c5 ♞×b2 10.♠b2 ♠a3 11.♠c2** and now Nimzowitsch's move order is not precise. Instead of **11...♠c8?** Black should play **11...♞e8** immediately. **12.c6? 12.c×d6! c×d6 13.♞b5 ♠×d3 14.♠xc8+ ♞e7 15.♠c7+ ♞d7 16.h3 ♠d1+ 17.♞h2 g6 18.♞a7 f5 19.♞c8+ ♞d8 20.♠c6± 12...♞e8=**

Exercises

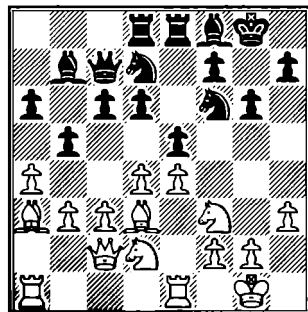
E01.06 Kupchik – Capablanca
Lake Hopatcong 1926 [B] (D)



The position has a closed character. Black has a spatial advantage on the queenside thanks to his c4-pawn and wants to start an eventual pawn storm with b6-b5-b4. White on the other hand should seek his chances on the kingside. After g7-g6, he can only open the wing by sacrificing a piece or with the lever g2-g4. How did Capablanca stop this plan for the rest of the game?

E01.07 Dolmatov – Beliavsky
USSR ch Odessa 1989

1.e4 e5 2.♞f3 ♞c6 3.♠b5 a6 4.♠a4 ♞f6 5.0-0 ♠e7 6.♠e1 b5 7.♠b3 d6 8.c3 0-0 9.h3 ♞b8 10.d4 ♞bd7 11.♞bd2 ♠b7 12.♠c2 ♠e8 13.a4 ♠f8 14.♠d3 c6 15.b3 g6 16.♠a3 ♞c7 17.♞c2 ♠ad8 (D)



The game has reached a position typical of the Breyer Variation of the Ruy

Lopez. Not a piece or a pawn has been exchanged yet. Black has slightly less space, but his position is solid and his pieces harmoniously placed. But sooner or later he has to free his game by opening the center with c6-c5 or d6-d5, perhaps taking on a4 first. So White should look for those freeing moves and determine if they really help Black or not. So what is the result of this investigation?

(a) 18...d5 This move does not solve Black's problems as White can react with 19.♘xf8 ♜xf8 20.b4 fixing Black's queenside pawns on light-squares obstructing the b7-bishop permanently. So the advance 18...d5 is not a real threat.

(b) It seems stronger to prepare the advance by 18...bxa4! 19.bxa4 d5!. This opening of the center gives Black good play, e.g., 20.♘xf8 ♜xf8 21.exd5 (21.♞ab1 c5!) 21...cxd5 22.dxe5 ♟xe5 23.♟xe5 ♞xe5 24.♞xe5 ♜xe5 which is roughly equal. The maneuver b5xa4 followed by d6-d5 has the potential to free Black's game.

(c) 18...bxa4! 19.bxa4 c5! is not as good, as White can get a small but lasting advantage with 20.d5!.

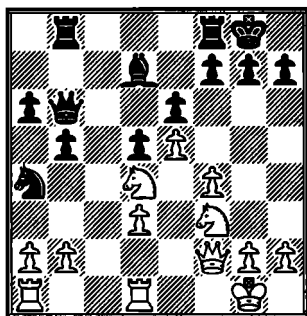
So Black to move could free his game only with bxa4 followed by d6-d5. Which measures can White take against this method?

(1.3.3.3) The Principle of the Worst-Placed Piece

This principle, also called the Makogonov principle, means that you should improve the prospects of your worst placed piece if you do not find another better plan. But the principle

can be turned around as well: if one notices that an enemy piece is badly placed, the play can be directed against it. On the one hand this can mean that you should attack on the kingside because an enemy knight is stuck on the queenside. On the other hand – and this is more common for the prophylaxis theme – another technique is used more often. You restrict the badly placed piece and hinder it from entering the game, following Tarrasch's old rule: "If one piece stands badly the whole position is bad."

01.16 Anand – Bareev Dortmund 1992 [W] (D)



This position was reached from a French Defense with 3.♟c3 ♟f6. Black has a bad light-square bishop, quite typical for such systems. If he manages to activate or exchange it, he can equalize. But if he does not manage to achieve this then he will have to suffer in a long game. Black has just played 17...♟a4, to fight for a good square for the knight on the queenside. Furthermore he wants to activate his bishop by a6-a5 and b5-b4. Against which of these two plans should White take measures?

18.b4!± The strongest move. White directs his play against the bad French

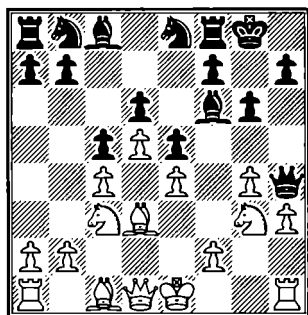
d7-bishop and stops its activation permanently. The weakening of the c3-square on the other hand is not of real importance. Black's knight is only optically well placed, as it has no real support. White's knights on the other hand will find strong outposts with ♖b3 and ♗d4. Black will have problems for the rest of the game because of his passive bishop. **18...a5 19.a3 ♜fc8**

20.♞dc1 a×b4 21.a×b4 ♞×c1+ After 21...♞c7 White replies 22.♖b3

and keeps his advantage. He is very comfortable in any case in view of the bad ♗d7. He can exchange queens and/or rooks. As long as Black has the bad French bishop, White will be better in almost all endings. Anand uses his advantage in the following to attack on the kingside with the typical plan h2-h4-h5 followed by g2-g4 and f4-f5. White gets a space advantage, attacking chances and might even be able to create a passed pawn. **22.♞×c1 ♞c8?! 23.♞×c8+ ♜×c8 24.♞c2?! The direct 24.♞h4?! is even stronger: 24...♞c7 (24...g6 25.♞f1 ♖b2 26.♞e7 ♖×d3 27.♖g5+-) 25.♖×b5 ♞b6+ 26.♞h1 h6 27.♖d6 ♞c7 28.h3+-.**

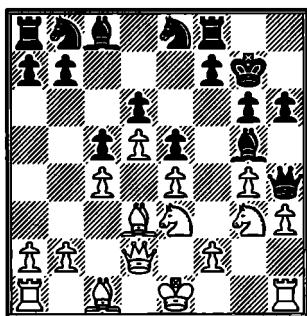
24...♗d7 25.♞f2 ♞f8 26.g4 ♞e8 27.♞e3 f6? This opening backfires but good advice is hard to give. **28.h4 ♞b8 29.♞c1 ♞f8 30.♞e2 ♞f7 31.♞e3 ♞f8 32.f5 ♞e8?! 33.g5! e×f5 34.g×f6 g×f6 35.♞h6 f×e5 36.♞×h7+ ♞f6 37.♞h6+ ♞f7 38.♖g5+ ♞e7 39.♞g7+ ♞d6 40.♖f7+ ♞c7 41.♖×e5 ♖b6 42.♖×b5+ ♞b8 43.♖d4 ♞h5+ 44.♖df3 ♗e8 45.♞f2 f4 46.♞e7 ♖c8 47.♞f6 ♞b7 48.♞×f4 ♞h8 49.♖g5 ♞h6 50.♞g3 ♖d6 51.♞f3 ♗c6 52.♖gf7 ♖×f7 53.♞×f7+ ♞b6 54.♞f4 ♞e6 55.h5 ♗b7 56.♞f6 1-0**

01.17 Yusupov – Lipnowski
USSR 1986 [W] (D)



A typical position from the Czech Benoni has appeared on the board. The structure also sometimes arises from the King's Indian. The center is completely closed and so the play will be on the wings. As White has taken prophylactic measures against Black's main freeing lever f7-f5 (e4, g4, ♖g3, ♗d3) Black opts for another plan. He wants to exchange his passive dark-square bishop. But instead of the direct 10...♗h6 he has played 10...♗f6 to exchange the bishop on g5. How can White prevent this idea? **11.♞d2! ♞g7** Now Black wants to play h7-h6 followed by ♗f6-g5. Can White prevent that as well? **12.♖d1!** A very strong maneuver that was made possible by ♞d2. White transfers his knight to e3, where it follows two prophylactic aims: It prevents the exchange of the dark-square bishop and the freeing advance f7-f5. **12...h6 13.♖e3 ♗g5 (D)**

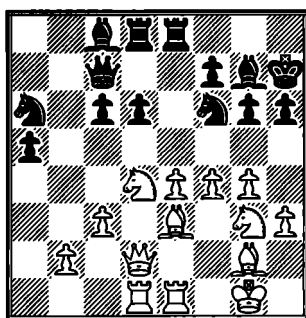
White has crossed Black's plans and his space advantage and active pieces secure a clear advantage. But how to continue now? Again the principle of the worst-placed piece and prophylactic thinking help find an idea. Black has big problems with his queen as it has no flight-square. But the direct



14. ♖g2?? runs into 14... ♗xd2+. So White must evacuate his queen first. But in which direction? 14. ♜e2?! Yusupov's move gives Black the chance to reorganize his pieces with 14... ♗f4 15. ♖g2 ♜f6. He should have prevented it prophylactically with 14. ♜c3!. Then 14... ♗f4 can be met by 15. ♖g2! ♜f6 16. ♖xf4 exf4 17. ♜xf6+ ♜xf6 18. ♗xf4 with a solid extra pawn for White. Black must either give up his bishop for the knight with 14... ♗xe3 15. ♗xe3 or remove it passively to d8 or e7. 14... ♗f4! 15. ♜f3 ♜f6 According to Dvoretzky, White's best plan is 16. ♗d2! with the idea ♗c3, ♜e2 and only now ♖g2. Black will have to exchange on g3 sooner or later, which will give White the strong lever f2-f4. 16. h4?! This advance weakens g4. Now Black starts to act prophylactically by placing his rook on the "Eventuallinie." 16... ♖h8 17. ♖ef5+?! This shocking strike looks devastating, but with a clear head Black would have found the calm 17... ♜g8! (17... gxf5? 18. ♖h5+ +- ; 17... ♗xf5? 18. exf5! ±) after which neither 18. g5? h×g5 19. h×g5 ♖×h1+ 20. ♜×h1 ♜×g5 nor 18. ♖×h6? ♖×h6! 19. g5 ♗d2+! 20. ♜e2 ♜×f3+ 21. ♜×f3 ♗×c1 22. g×h6 ♗×h6 is playable. So White's knight must retreat to e3. Black could continue then ♖a6 or ♜e7

followed by ♖f6. 17... ♜f8? 18. g5! 1-0 and Black resigned in view of 18... h×g5 (18... ♜d8 19. ♖×h6+-) 19. h×g5 ♖×h1+ 20. ♜×h1 ♗×g5 21. ♗×g5 ♜×g5 22. ♜h8*.

01.18 Karpov – Timman
Montreal 1979 [W] (D)



White has a large space advantage on the kingside and a more centralized army. But Black's pieces are also harmoniously placed. Only the a6-knight has some problems. And this is the point at which Karpov's plan starts. He demonstrates convincingly how effective the method of prophylactic thinking can be. He plays against the badly placed knight and hinders it from reconnecting with the rest of Black's forces, which gives him a clear advantage. 22. ♜c2! Dvoretzky comments: "Probably the best move of the game. Two forms of Nimzowitsch's concept of prophylaxis are applied: preventing the plans of the opponent (outer) and protecting important strategic points (inner prophylaxis)." And the move ♜c2 is indeed very strong. It overprotects the important e4-pawn and prevents 22... ♖c5? which can now be met by 23. b4. The alternative 22. ♖×c6 ♜×c6 23. e5 d5 24. exf6 ♗×f6 and now 25. f5 (or 25. ♗×d5 follows a completely

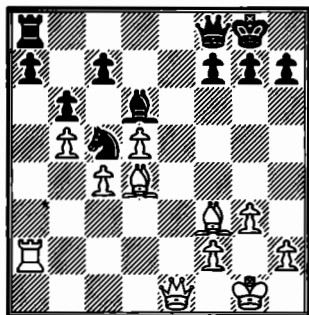
Prophylaxis

different approach, but is also quite strong.) **22...♙d7?** Timman fights back to activate his a6-knight. The bishop protects the weak c6-pawn and prepares **23...♗c5** **24.b4** **a×b4** **25.c×b4** **♗e6**. **22...♗d7** might be a bit more tenacious, but Black's house looks shaky in any case. **23.♙f3!** Karpov plays again against the stranded a6-knight. He plans to meet **23...♗c5** with **24.e5!**. If Black answers **24...♗d5** White gets the upper hand by **25.♙×c5** **d×c5** **26.♗h5** and White has very dangerous threats on the kingside. The alternative approach **23.g5!** **h×g5** **24.f×g5** **♗g8** **25.♗f2±** is also strong. **23...♗e7** Karpov commented on **23...c5** that now Black's a6-knight was a sorry sight. **24.♙f2** **♙e8?** A tactical mistake that simply loses a pawn. **24...♙c8** was necessary. **25.♗d3!** **♗b7** Black had no real choice. The ♗a6 was hanging and **25...♗b8?** runs into **26.e5!** **♗d5** **27.e×d6** **♗×e1+** **28.♗×e1** **♗×d6** **29.c4+-** winning a piece. **26.♗a1!** Black's pieces are so badly placed that the a5-pawn cannot be protected. The rest is a matter of technique. **26...♗c7** **27.♗×a5** **♗dd7?!** **28.b4** **♗e6** **29.♙e3** **c5** **30.f5** **♗d8** **31.b5** **♗h8** **32.♙f2** **♗c7** **33.♗a4** **♗b8** **34.c4** **♗a7** **35.♗×a7** **♗×a7** **36.e5** **d×e5** **37.♗×e5** **♗a2** **38.♙×c5** **1-0**

Prophylactic thinking can be applied in all phases of the royal game. The following examples and exercises are a small illustrative sampling.

(1.3.3.4) Weaknesses

01.19 Baklan – Murdzia
Hamburg 2005 [W] (D)



White has the pair of bishops and Black's a7-pawn is backward. But his advantage is nevertheless not very large because of Black's solid structure. Black's c5-knight is on a strong, secure outpost and Black is ready to get rid of the weakness on a7 by **a7-a5**. If he manages to achieve this freeing advance, then he will get a draw without too much trouble. So it is White's job to prevent that lever. But how to do accomplish this?

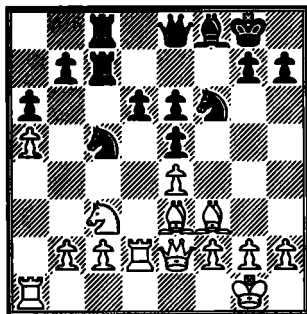
27.♗b1! A strong prophylactic move. Now White can answer **27...a5?** with **28.b×a6** **♗×a6** (**28...♗×a6** **29.♙×c5** **♗×a2** **30.♙×d6** **♗a8** **31.♙e5+-**) **29.♗a1+-**. Weaker are **27.♙×c5?** **♙×c5** **28.d6** **♗e8!** and **27.♗a1** **♗b3** followed by **28...♗×d4** with equality. Other moves like **27.♗g2** can be met by the freeing **27...a5** **28.b×a6** **♗×a6** **29.♗×a6** **♗×a6** and Black has managed to get rid of the weak a-pawn and should be able to defend. **27...♗c8** Again Black prepares **28...a5**. **28.♙e4** **♗g4?** A weak move that leads to an incorrect exchange. Black hopes to defend the resulting endgame with opposite-color bishops and rooks, but in valn. Weakening the kingside with **28...g6** or **28...h6** also leads to a clear white advantage, so Black should have the bishop pair by **28...♗×e4** **29.♗×e4**

h5 with chances to defend. Note that 29...a5? is still not playable because of 30.bxa6 ♖xa6? 31.♖xa6 ♜xa6 32.c5+- . 29.♙xc5! bxc5 29...♙xc5? 30.d6+- 30.♙xh7+ ♕f8 31.♜f5 ♜xf5 32.♙xf5 Black is a pawn down and a7 is permanently weak. The endgame cannot be defended in the long run. 32...♞e8 33.♜f1 g6 34.♙d3 ♞a8 35.h4 ♜g7 36.♜g2 ♜f6 37.♜f3 ♜e5 38.♜e3 ♜f6 39.f4 ♜g7 40.♜f3 ♜f6 41.♙f1 ♜e7 42.♙h3 f5 43.♙f1 ♜f6 44.♙d3 ♙f8 45.♞a6+ ♙d6 46.♙c2 ♜f7 47.♙a4 ♜f6 48.♜f2 ♜g7 49.♜f3 ♜f6 50.b6 cxb6 51.♙c6 ♞f8 52.♞xa7 ♞f7 53.♞a6 ♙c7 54.♙b7 ♞e7 55.♙c8 ♞e4 56.♞a7 ♞e7 57.♙e6 ♙d6 58.♞a6 ♞b7 59.♙c8 ♞b8 60.♙d7 ♙f8 61.♞a7 ♙d6 62.♙c6 ♙f8 63.♜e2 ♞c8 64.♞a6 ♙d6 65.♜d3 ♞c7 66.♙b5 ♞b7 67.♜c2 ♜e7 68.♙c6 ♞c7 69.♞xb6 ♞a7 70.♜b2 ♙c7 71.♞b3 ♜f7 72.♞e3 ♙d8 73.d6 ♙f6+ 74.♜b3 ♞a6 75.♙d5+ ♜f8 76.♞e6 1-0

(1.3.3.5) The Bishop Pair

One important plan for the side with the bishops is simply to just preserve them! If the bishops take full control then roads can be opened under favorable circumstances and they can be even be exchanged later at a favorable moment to transform one advantage into another. This can often be considered if the remaining bishop is clearly superior to the knight or if the enemy pawn structure is significantly weakened.

01.20 Markgraf – Pena Gomez
Pardubice 2007 [W] (D)

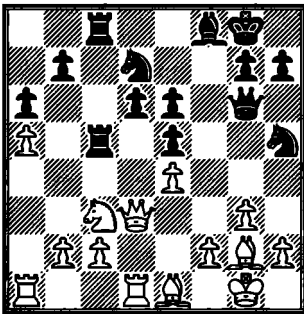


In a Najdorf variation of the Sicilian Defense White has managed to get the bishop pair. As compensation, Black has managed to set up his pieces actively (doubled rooks on the c-file, strong pressure against e4). Black's doubled e-pawns are especially no real disadvantage as they control important central squares. Black wants to increase the pressure against e4 with 20...♜g6 and thereby force White to give up one of his bishops. How can White stop this?

20.♞dd1! A strong prophylactic maneuver that was not easy to play! White had just moved his rook to d2 a few moves earlier. But closer inspection reveals that the pressure on the d-file is only an illusion. It is much more important to preserve the e3-bishop even if it has to assume a passive role for some time. 20...♜g6 21.♞e1! Another important move! White prevents not only taking on e4 but also the central advance d6-d5, which would follow after 21.♙d2?: 21...d5! 22.♞e1 (22.exd5? e4!+- and the f3-bishop is lost) 22...d4! and Black is clearly for choice. On the other hand, 21.h4! with the idea of meeting 21...♙f4?? with 22.♙xe4 ♙xe4 23.h5! ♜f5 24.g4! was playable, but I did not want to move a pawn on the kingside yet. 21...♞c6 The tactical justification of 21.♞e1 is

Prophylaxis

revealed after 21... $\text{c}\times\text{e}4$ 22. $\text{d}\times\text{e}4$
 $\text{d}\times\text{e}4$ 23. $\text{a}b6!$ $\text{d}g5$ 24. $\text{a}\times\text{c}7$ $\text{b}\times\text{c}7$
 25.c3. Black has a pawn and a strong
 center as compensation for the ex-
 change, but White is for choice as the
 central pawn mass cannot advance eas-
 ily. 21...d5? runs into 22. $\text{a}\times\text{c}5$ $\text{b}\times\text{c}5$
 23. $\text{e}\times\text{d}5\pm$ with a solid extra pawn.
22. $\text{a}d2$ $\text{b}f7$ 23. $\text{b}ed1!$? At the
 moment, Black cannot play d6-d5. I
 wanted to use this to bring more har-
 mony to my piece configuration. The
 dark-square bishop will be transferred
 to e1. From there it keeps an eye on
 the a5-pawn, is out of the way of the
 rooks and most importantly cannot be
 exchanged. Later it will reemerge to a
 more active position. I learned this
 method by studying Kortschnoi's
 games. 23... $\text{d}cd7$ 24. $\text{a}e1$ $\text{b}c5$
 25. $\text{b}d3$ $\text{d}h5$ 26.g3 $\text{b}g6$ 27. $\text{a}g2$ (D)

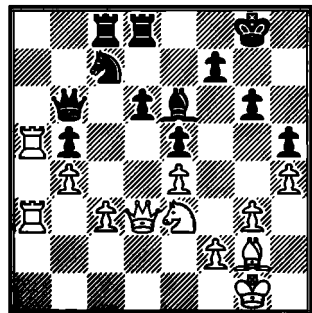


White's prophylaxis has been
 successful. He still has the pair of
 bishops, the e4-pawn is well-protected
 and Black could not achieve the freeing
 move d6-d5. Now the bishop will take
 over and rule. White advances his
 queenside pawns slowly but surely and
 forces an opening of the position, after
 which the bishops will be able to show
 their full power. 27... $\text{d}hf6$
28. $\text{a}a4!$ $\text{b}c4$ 28... $\text{b}\times\text{c}2?$ runs into
 29. $\text{a}c3$ trapping the rook. 29.b3 $\text{b}d4$
30. $\text{b}e2$ $\text{b}\times\text{d}1!$ This eases White's
 task as Black has no real counterplay

anymore. 30...d5 was necessary, e.g.,
 31.c3 (31. $\text{b}\times\text{d}4$ $\text{e}\times\text{d}4$ 32. $\text{e}\times\text{d}5$ $\text{d}\times\text{d}5$
 33. $\text{a}e4$) 31... $\text{b}\times\text{e}4!$? (31... $\text{b}\times\text{d}1?$ gives
 White the initiative on the queenside:
 32. $\text{b}\times\text{d}1$ $\text{d}\times\text{e}4$ 33. $\text{b}\times\text{d}7$ $\text{d}\times\text{d}7$
 34. $\text{a}\times\text{e}4$ $\text{b}f7$ 35. $\text{a}\times\text{b}7$ $\text{b}b8$
 36. $\text{b}\times\text{a}6\pm$) 32. $\text{a}\times\text{e}4$ $\text{d}\times\text{e}4$ 33.f3 $\text{d}g5$
 34.h4 $\text{d}f7$ 35.c4 $\text{d}d4$ 36. $\text{b}d3$ and White
 is slightly better in both cases, but
 matters are not completely clear.
31. $\text{b}\times\text{d}1$ $d5$ 32.c4! $\text{d}\times\text{c}4!$? 32...d4
 keeps the position more closed.
33. $\text{b}c1$ $c3$ 34. $\text{b}\times\text{c}3$ $\text{b}\times\text{c}3$
35. $\text{a}\times\text{c}3$ $\text{d}c5?$ This loses material
 by force, but good advice is hard to give.
36. $\text{d}\times\text{c}5$ $\text{a}\times\text{c}5$ 37. $\text{b}c4$ $\text{d}d7$
38.b4 $\text{a}f8$ 39. $\text{a}h3!$ $\text{b}f7$ 40. $\text{b}c7$
 $\text{b}e7$ 41. $\text{b}\times\text{b}7$ $\text{b}h5$ 42. $\text{b}g2$ $\text{b}e2$
43. $\text{b}c6$ $\text{d}f6$ 44. $\text{b}\times\text{e}6+$ $\text{b}d8$
45. $\text{b}c8+$ $\text{b}e7$ 46. $\text{b}c7+$ $\text{b}e8$
47. $\text{b}c6+$ $\text{b}d8$ 48. $\text{a}f5$ $\text{b}c2$
49. $\text{b}c8+$ $\text{b}e7$ 50. $\text{b}e6+$ $\text{b}d8$
51. $\text{a}\times\text{e}5$ $\text{b}d3$ 52. $\text{a}\times\text{f}6+$
52. $\text{a}c7+$! $\text{b}\times\text{c}7$ 53. $\text{b}b6*$ wins
 quicker. 52... $\text{g}\times\text{f}6$ 53. $\text{b}\times\text{f}6+$ $\text{b}e8$
 54. $\text{b}e6+$ $\text{b}d8$ 55. $\text{a}\times\text{h}7$ $\text{b}d4$
 56. $\text{b}d5+$ $\text{b}\times\text{d}5$ 57. $\text{e}\times\text{d}5$ $\text{a}\times\text{b}4$
 58. $\text{a}d3$ 1-0

Exercises

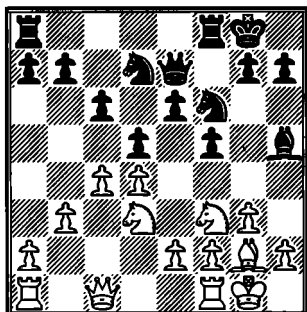
E01.08 Berelovich – Popovic
 German Bundesliga 2008 [W] (D)



Black wants to reduce the pressure by
 29... $\text{a}u\text{h}$. How to prevent that?

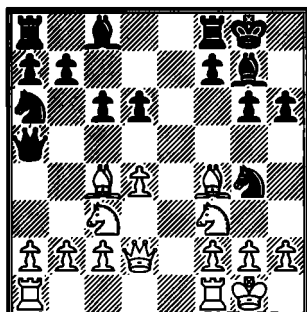
The Chess Puzzle Book 4

E01.09 Vukic – Davcevski
Yugoslavia ch 1979 [W] (D)



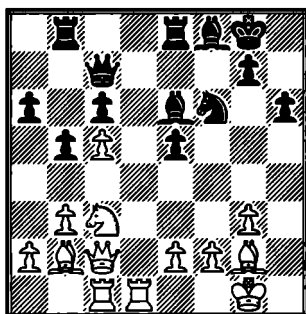
Black has prepared to exchange his bad bishop with his last move 13... Bh5 . What to do about it?

E01.10 Markgraf – Breuer
Niedersachsen-ch 2005 [B] (D)



Black is in difficulties as result of an overly creative treatment of the opening (1.e4 c6 2.d4 Qa6 ?! Miles). The double threat 13... Qxd6 and 13... h3 Qf6 14... Qxh6 just seems to win a pawn with ongoing initiative. What is the best way to fight against that?

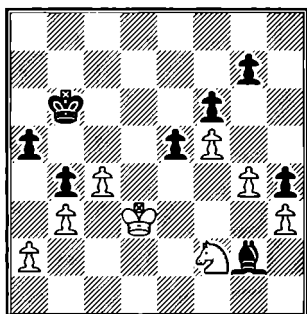
E01.11 Timman – Larsen
Mar del Plata 1982 [B] (D)



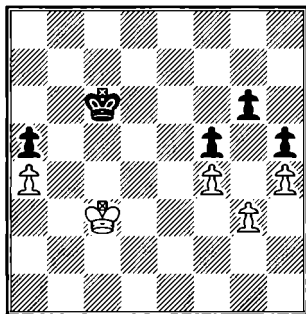
Black can take a pawn with 23... Qxc5 . But then White's knight lands on e4. What to do about that?

Chapter 2 The Principle of Two Weaknesses

A weakness is a pawn or a square which cannot be defended by pawns. One weakness usually is not fatal but a whole weak color complex or two weaknesses often are. The reason is that one weakness usually can be defended quite comfortably but the defenders are not as flexible as the attackers and the attackers can often choose the moment to open a second front or to create a second weakness on the other wing. Especially "slow" pieces like the king and knight cannot play on both wings and follow the attackers in time. So this method is often very effective against them. In the following pawn ending it is obvious that the king cannot defend both wings:



02.01 Instructive Example [W] (D)



1. ♖c4 ♖b6 2. ♖d5 ♖b7 3. ♖c5 ♖a6 4. ♖c6 ♖a7 5. ♖b5 ♖b7 6. ♖xa5 ♖a7 7. ♖b5 ♖b7 8. ♖c5 ♖a6 9. ♖d5 ♖a5 10. ♖e5 ♖xa4 11. ♖f6 ♖b5 12. ♖xg6+-

02.02 Votava – Serebrjanik Israel 1992 [B] (D)

Black is clearly better. The weak h3-pawn forces White's knight into a

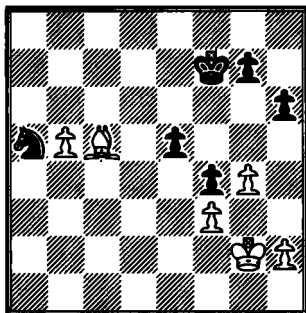
passive defensive role on the kingside. Black's bishop on the other hand can quickly act on the queenside as well, e.g., by ♗f1. One weakness is usually not enough. To win Black must use the clumsiness of the knight and create a second weakness on the queenside.

1...a4! Black advances his pawn, marking White's queenside pawns as weaknesses and fixing them on light-squares. The breakthrough ideas ♗xc4, ♗xb3 and the simple ♗xa2, together with the plan to invade with the king, will decide the day. 2. ♖e2 a3! Much better than 2...axb3? 3.axb3, which would bring the second weakness closer to the center, easing White's task. 3. ♗d3 3. ♖e3 is met by 3...♗f1 with the threat of 4...♗xc4 5.bxc4 b3 6.axb3 a2. 3. ♖d3 does not help either: 3...♗f1+ 4. ♖c2 e4+-+. 3...♗xh3 4. ♖f3 e4+! The simplest solution. A central pawn is not as important as a rook's pawn when fighting against a knight. 5. ♖xe4 ♗xg4 5...♗f1 6. ♗f2 ♗xc4!+- was very strong as well. 6. ♖f4 ♗d1 7. ♗xb4 ♖c5 8. ♗d3+ ♖d4 White cannot deal with the two rook pawns. 9. ♗b4 ♖c3! 10. ♗d5+ ♖b2 11. c5 ♗xb3! 12. ♗b6 12. ♗b7? ♗a4 13. c6 ♗xc6 14. ♗xc6 ♖a4 15. ♗b4+ (15. ♖g4 ♖b3+-)

15...♖b3 16.♘d3 ♗c4 17.♘c1 ♖d5
 18.♗g4 ♗e4 19.♘a2 h3 20.♗xh3
 ♗xf5 21.♘c3 ♗f4 22.♗g2 ♗e3
 23.♗g3 ♘d3 24.♘a2 ♗c2 25.♗f4
 ♗b2 26.♘b4 a2 27.♘xa2 ♗xa2+
12...h3 13.♗g3 13.c6 h2 14.c7 h1♗
 15.c8♗ ♗f1+ 16.♗e4 (16.♗e3 ♗g1+
 17.♗d2 ♗xb6+) 16...♗e2+ 17.♗d4
 ♗f2+--+ **13...♗c2 0-1**

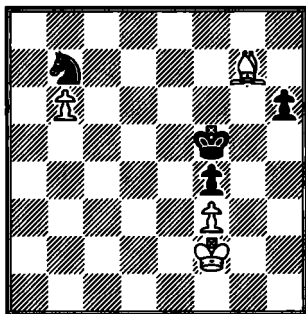
Both previous examples were very clear. The attacker had a target on one wing and then also started to play on the other wing. In the next game, White has a plus on the queenside in form of the passed b5-pawn which carries a lot of winning potential. But the pawn needs the help of White's king to break the resistance of the knight. However the transfer of White's king is stopped by Black's monarch. So as usual, one weakness is not enough to win. White has to create a second weakness on the kingside to force Black's king to stay there to defend it.

02.03 Chlburdanidze – Muresan
 Olympiad Luzern 1982 [W] (D)



1.h4! A very strong move. White realizes that Black's kingside pawns can only be attacked if they are fixed on the color the bishop controls, viz., fixed on dark squares. White must achieve

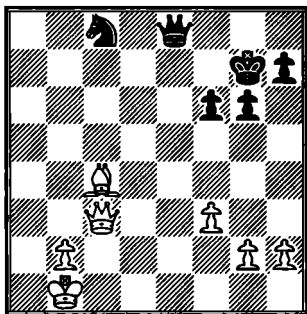
this before Black manages to consolidate his position by g7-g6 and h6-h5. **1...g6** 1...♘b7 2.♗b4 ♗e6
 3.♗f8 ♗f7 4.♗a3 ♗e6 5.b6 ♘d6
 6.♗b2 g5 (6...g6 7.h5 g×h5 8.g×h5
 ♘b7 9.♗c3 ♗f5 10.♗f2+-) 7.h5 ♘b7
 8.♗f2 ♘d8 9.♗e2 ♗d5 10.♗d2 ♗c6
 (10...e4 11.♗f6 ♘b7 12.♗xg5+-)
 11.♗xe5 ♗xb6 12.♗g7 ♘f7
 13.♗d3+- **2.h5!** g×h5 3.g×h5 ♗f6
 4.b6 ♘b7 5.♗f8 ♗g5 6.♗g7
 ♗xh5 7.♗xe5 Black has captured the h5-pawn but now the king must protect the f4-pawn. **7...♗g5** 8.♗f2
 The direct 8.♗h3?! ♘a5 9.♗d6 ♘b7
 10.♗e7+ ♗h5 leads nowhere.
8...♗f5 9.♗g7 (D)



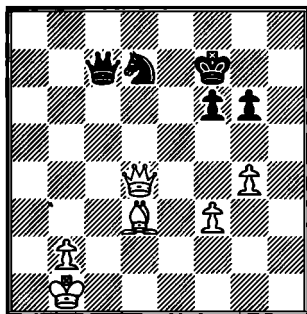
Black's king can now defend only one invasion route; White's king will just take the other. **9...h5** 9...♗g5 10.♗e2 ♗g6 11.♗f8 and Black must advance the h-pawn in view of the invasion threat ♗d3-e4-d5. **10.♗g2!** Now White decides the day on the kingside. **10...♘c5** 11.♗f8 ♘b7 12.♗h3 ♗g5 13.♗e7+ ♗f5 14.♗h4 1-0 and Black resigned as her king is not able to protect both h5 and f4 – again the principle of two weaknesses at work.

02.04 Alekhine – Sämisch
 Baden-Baden 1925 [W] (D)

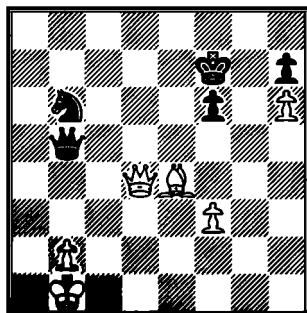
The Principle of Two Weaknesses



This case is much more complicated. Contrary to the previous examples, White has to add an extremely important component to his play on both wings: prophylaxis. Using the principle of two weaknesses often needs a lot of time and long maneuvering, which is only possible if the opponent has no active play himself (in this case perpetual check). Before he can go about his own business, Alekhine first has to stop Black's play. He has the outside passed b-pawn, but advancing it without preparation exposes White's king and Black can try to get a perpetual check. **34. ♖d4!** Alekhine not only improves the position of his queen, he also indicates his winning plan. First, his pieces will be centralized and will then take away important squares from Black's pieces to restrict them. Next his kingside pawns will advance to weaken Black's king's shelter and to force an exchange of the queens. Only then will his b-pawn be set in motion. **34... ♗e7 35. ♔d3! ♜c7 36. g4 ♝f7 37. h4 ♞b6 38. h5 g×h5?** This gives White access to the h-pawn. **38... ♗c6!** is called for. **38... ♞d7?** on the other hand is refuted by **39. h×g6+ h×g6.** (D)

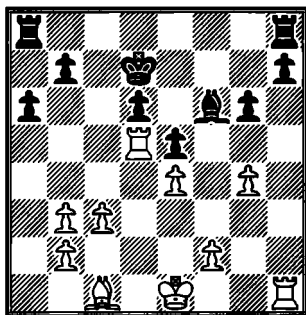


40. g5!! opens the second front to attack the king: **40... f×g5 (40... ♗c6 41. ♔e4 ♖b5 42. ♗d6 ♝f1+ 43. ♝a2 ♗c4+ 44. ♝a1 ♗c1+ 45. ♔b1+-) 41. ♔c4+ ♝f8 42. ♗h8+ ♝e7 43. ♗g7+ ♝d8 44. ♗g8+ ♝e7 45. ♝f7+ ♝d8 46. ♔e6+-.** **39. g×h5** Alekhine has managed to create a second weakness (the first is the passed pawn – a white strength which can also be seen as a weakness from Black's point of view). Black's h-pawn will be vulnerable for the rest of the game. **39... ♗c6 39... h6 40. ♔g6+ ♝g7 41. ♔c2 ♞d7 42. ♗g1+ ♝f8 43. ♗e3+-** **40. ♔e4!** White also had the option to exchange queens with **40. ♗e4?** but then Black manages to put his h-pawn to a dark-square by **h7-h6**, where the bishop cannot attack it. **40... ♖b5 41. h6!** (D)



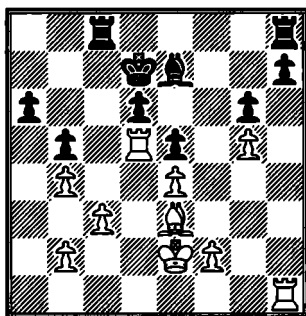
White fixes the h7-pawn and marks it as second weakness. **41...♖b3** **42.♙c2! ♖b5** 42...♗xf3 43.♗xb6 ♗h1+ 44.♙a2 ♗a8+ 45.♙b3 ♗f3+ 46.♙a4 ♗a8+ 47.♗a5 (47.♙b5 ♗e8+ 48.♗c6 ♗e5+ 49.♙a4+-) 47...♗c6+ 48.♗b5 ♗xc2+ 49.♗b3+ ♗xb3+ 50.♙xb3+- **43.♗d3** Now the right time for the exchange of queens has come! With the second weakness on h7 firmly fixed, the endgame is easily winning as the knight obviously is not able to stop White's play on both wings. **43...♗xd3** **44.♙xd3 ♖c8** 44...♙g8 45.♙c2+- **45.♙xh7 ♖e7** **46.♙c1 f5** **47.b4 ♖d5** **48.b5 ♙e6** **49.♙d1?** 49.♙g8+! ♙d6 50.♙xd5+- **49...♙d6?** 49...♖c3+ 50.♙d2 ♖xb5 51.♙xf5+ ♙f6= is surprisingly only drawn because of the presence of the wrong rook's pawn and Black's blockade. **50.f4** 50.♙xf5!? ♖e3+ 51.♙c1 ♖xf5 52.h7+- **50...♖xf4** **51.♙xf5 ♖d5** **52.♙e4** 1-0

02.05 Fischer – Reshevsky
USA-ch New York 1962 [W] (D)



White's pieces are more active, but to get a real advantage White must seize more space first: **22.g5!** Fischer fixes the weakness on h7 and restricts Black's bishop. **22...♙e7** **23.♙e2** Black must defend two weaknesses, the d6- and h7-pawns. At the moment he

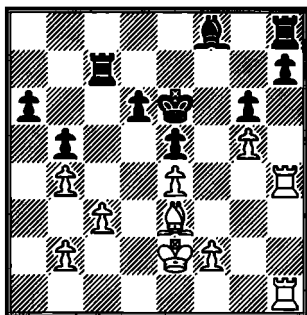
can accomplish that as his pieces are just mobile enough. So Fischer's next step is to increase the pressure by attacking the weaknesses and advancing on the queenside with b3-b4 and c3-c4. **23...♙af8** **24.♙e3 ♙c8** **25.b4 b5!** Fischer (in *My 60 Memorable Games*): "Many annotators criticized this, as it creates a new weakness. But if Black just waits, he will be overrun by ♗d3 followed by c4 etc." **25...♙cf8** 26.c4 ♙c6? (26...♙e6 27.b5±) 27.c5 ♙d8 28.cxd6 ♙xd6 29.b5+ axb5 30.♙c1+ ♙d7 31.♙b6 ♙c8 32.♙cd1 ♙c2+ 33.♙f1 ♙c6 34.♙c5+- (D)



Black has weakened another pawn with b7-b5. Fischer now destroys the defensive coordination by attacking the weaknesses on a6 and h7. He is careful to always have an answer against the freeing advance d6-d5 (the prophylactic component of his play). **26.♙dd1 ♙e6** **27.♙a1 ♙c6** **28.♙h3** 28.♙h4? allows Black to get rid of the weakness by 28...h5!. **28...♙f8** Giving up a pawn by 28...d5!? 29.exd5+ ♙xd5 30.♙ah1 ♙c4 to get activity is also insufficient: 31.♙xh7 ♙xh7 32.♙xh7 ♙e6 33.♙d2 ♙b3 34.♙d3 ♙xb2 35.♙e4! ♙f8 (35...♙xc3 36.♙d5 ♙d6+ 37.♙xe5 ♙f8 38.♙c7+! ♙b3 39.♙c8 ♙e7 40.♙e8 ♙d7 41.♙e6+-) 36.♙h8 ♙g7 37.♙g8 ♙e7 38.♙c8+- **29.♙ah1 ♙c7** 29...♖f5? 30.exd5+ ♙xd5 31.♙xh7 ♙xh7 32.♙xh7 ♙c4

The Principle of Two Weaknesses

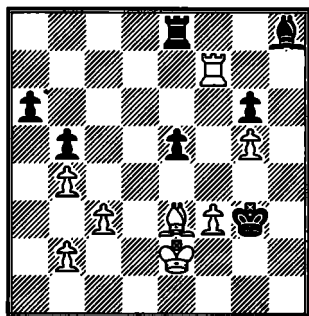
33. ♖f7 ♗c8 34. ♖f6 ♜b3 35. ♖xa6
 ♜xb2 36. ♔d2+- 30. ♖h4! (D)



Zugzwang! Black cannot move any of his pieces without losing either the pawn on h7 or a6. Fischer: "The rook is well-placed on h4 which will be revealed soon." Its placement on the fourth rank is directed against Black's advance d5. White can now meet it by taking on d5 followed by ♖d1+ and ♖d8 invading on the eighth rank without the fear that Black's king counterattacks via c4. 30...d5 30...♗c4 31.f3 ♗c7 32.♜f2! *Zugzwang!* 32...d5 33.♖a1 ♗c6 34.exd5+ ♜xd5 35.♖d1+ ♜e6 36.♖d8+-; 30...♖f7 31.♖a1+-

31. ♖a1! This strong *zwischenzug* deflects the rook from the seventh rank. 31.exd5+ ♜xd5 32.♖d1+? ♜e6 33.♖d8 is met by 33...♔g7! and the rook defends h7 after 34.♖xh8 ♔xh8. 31...♗c6 31...dxe4 32.♖xa6+ ♜d5 33.♖b6+- 32.exd5+ ♜xd5 33.♖d1+ ♜e6 34.♖d8 ♜f5 34...♗c7 35.♖a8 ♗c6 36.♔c5+- 35.♖a8 35.♔c5? runs into 35...♜xg5. But 35.♖h3!? wins as well: 35...♔g7 36.♖xh8 ♔xh8 37.♖xh7+- . 35...♖e6 36.♖h3! Threatening ♖f3+ winning a piece. 36...♔g7 36...♜g4 37.♖g3+ ♜h5 38.♖f3 ♔g7 39.♖xh8 ♔xh8 40.♖f8 ♔g7 41.♖f7+- ; 36...♜e4 37.♖f3 ♔g7 38.♖xh8 ♔xh8 39.♖f8 ♔g7 40.♖f7 ♔h8 41.f3+ ♜d4

42. ♖xh7 ♗e8 43. ♜d3+- 37. ♖xh8
 ♔xh8 38. ♖xh7 ♗e8 39. ♖f7+
 ♜g4 39...♜e4 40.f3+ ♜d5 41. ♜d3+-
 40.f3+ ♜g3 (D)

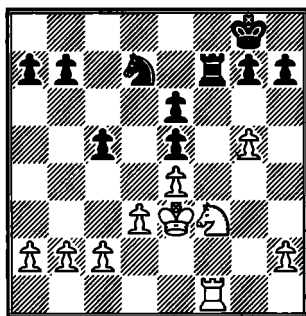


41. ♜d3?! Fischer misses the mating attack 41. ♜f1 ♜h4 42. ♜f2+- . 41...e4+ 42.fxe4 ♖d8+ 43.♔d4 ♜g4 44.♖f1 ♔e5 44...♜xg5 45.♖g1+ ♜f4 46.♖xg6+- 45.♜e3 ♔c7 45...♔xd4+ 46.cxd4 ♜xg5 47.e5+- 46.♖g1+ ♜h4 47.♜f3 ♖d7 47...♖f8+ 48.♔f6 ♜h3 49.♖h1+ ♔h2 50.e5 ♗e8 51.♜e4+- 48.e5 ♖f7+ 49.♜e4 ♖f5 50.e6 ♔d8 51.♔f6! ♔xf6 52.gxf6 ♖xf6 53.♜d5 ♖f2 54.♖e1 1-0

Summary: This strong performance by Fischer can be seen as an excellent model for using the principle of two weaknesses. Fischer first fixes the weakness on h7. Then he disturbs the harmony of the defending army by winning space on the queenside and attacking the weaknesses one after another. This leads to the creation of a second weakness on a6. By combining threats against both weaknesses Fischer, while prophylactically stopping the freeing advance d5, manages to restrict Black's pieces so much that Black finally almost falls into *zugzwang*. By precise tactical methods, typical of Fischer's style, he finally breaks through.

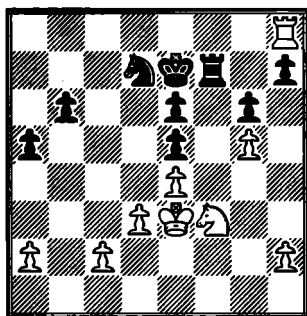
02.06 Spielmann – Tarrasch

Bad Kissingen 1928 [W] (D)



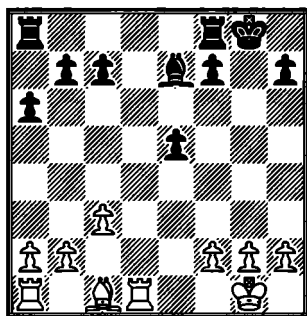
After studying the previous examples, it should be no problem to find the right plan for White in this case. Black has one weakness on e5 and the knight blocks the rook's path to the queenside. According to the principle of two weaknesses, it is obvious that White should now start to play on the queenside. **29. ♖b1!** Opening a file on the queenside allows White's rook to penetrate to the seventh or eighth rank as Black's knight is tied to the d7-square to defend the e5-pawn. In the game, White chose 29.g6? and a draw was soon agreed: 29...h×g6 30. ♖g1 ♖f6 31. ♖g5 b6 ½-½. **29...b6** After 29...a5 White opens things up with 30.c3! ♖f8 31.b4 c×b4 32.c×b4 a×b4 33. ♖×b4 forcing Black to defend passively: 33...b6 (33...♖b8 34. ♖b5 ♖f7 35.a4±) 34. ♖a4 ♖f7 35. ♖a7 ♖e8 36.h4±. **30.b4 c×b4 31. ♖×b4 ♖f8** 31...a6 32. ♖c4 ♖f8 33. ♖c6 ♖e7 34.c4± **32. ♖c4 a5 33. ♖c8+ ♖e7 34. ♖h8 g6** (D)

35.c3 ♖×f3+ 35...♖d6 36. ♖d2!+- 36. ♖×f3 ♖f8 37. ♖e3 ♖f7 38.d4 ♖g7 39. ♖×f8 ♖×f8 40. ♖d3+- and White wins by ♖d3-c4-b5.



02.07 Znosko Borovsky – Alekhine

Paris 1933 [W] (D)



Alekhine comments as follows:

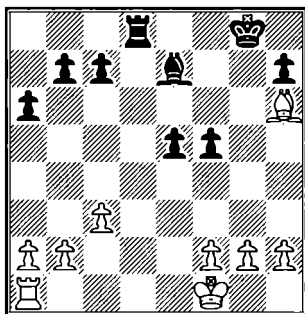
This endgame is not as easy as it seems at first sight as Black has the following plan:

1. Exchange one rook;
2. Bring the king to e6 where it is shielded by pawns and prevents a rook invasion on d7;
3. Open the h-file with the help of the rook by advancing the h-pawn;
4. Force the white king (and perhaps also the bishop) to protect the h1 invasion square;
5. Open a second front on the queenside by advancing the a- and b-pawns; and
6. If White's king is still on the kingside, then Black's rook will penetrate.

The Principle of Two Weaknesses

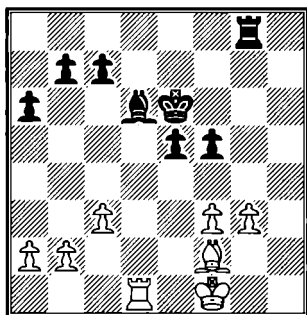
If White had known this plan then he would have defended more cautiously and not so superficially, convinced that the game would end in a draw anyway.

This comment by Alekhine is very instructive. But he is influenced by the course and the result of the game. As the analysis shows, White is not worse in this position. He had several chances to stop the plan. **16. Qh6** This move itself is not bad but White has no concept behind it and this will lead to problems. **16... Bfd8 17. Qf1?** **17.f4!** This strong move stops Black's plan in its tracks. Then White is certainly not worse. **17... f5 18. Bxd8+ Bxd8 (D)**

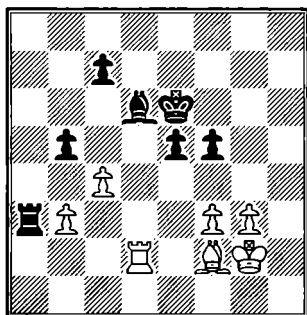


19.g3 White makes a very slight concession as the h6-bishop was in danger of being trapped. **19. Qe2?** **f4 20. Bd1?** loses the bishop (**20.h4! Qf7 21. Qg5 Qxg5 22.hxg5 Qg6** limits the damage.) **20... Bxd1 21. Qxd1 Qf7+-**. The following runs according to Alekhine's plan. First he brings his king to e6 to stop counterplay via d7. Then he provokes the first weakness on the kingside. **19... Qf7 20. Qe3?! 20. Be1** is more precise. **20... h5 21. Qe2 Qe6 22. Bd1 Bg8 23.f3 23.h4** is met by **23... Bg4** with the idea of f5-f4. **23... h4 24. Qf2 hxg3**

25.hxg3 Bb8 26. Qg1 Qd6 27. Qf1 Bg8 28. Qf2 (D)

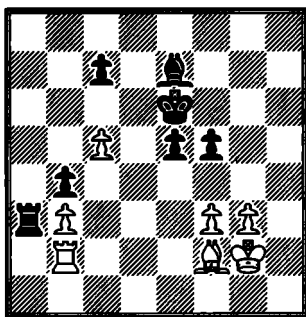


Alekhine has completed the fourth phase of his plan and restricted White's mobility by forcing him to defend the inroads on the kingside. Now he starts to grab space on the queenside to provoke another weakness there. **28... b5! 29.b3?!** This facilitates Black's task to open a road into the queenside. **29... a5! 30. Qg2 a4 31. Bd2 31.h4 Bc8!?** **32. Qc5 Ba8** followed by **Ba6-c6** is also very unpleasant for White. **31... axb3 32. axb3 Ba8 33.c4?!** Again a pawn move on the queenside makes it easier for White to invade, but good advice is hard to give. **33... Ba3 (D)**

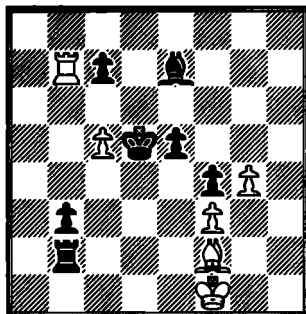


34.c5? Seriously weakening the c-pawn. White should try to get into a rook ending with **34. Bb2 bxc4 35. hxc4 Nc3 36. c5 Qxc5 37. Qxc5 Nxc5 38. g4** with practical drawing chances because of the large drawish

tendency of rook endings. 34...♙e7
35.♖b2 35.b4? ♖b3-+ 35...b4 (D)

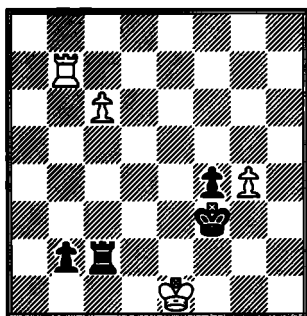


Black has managed to create two weaknesses on the queenside. Now his forces can invade with decisive effect. 36.g4?! This just leads to White's bishop being almost completely restricted. 36...f4! 37.♙f1 ♖a1+ 38.♙e2 ♖c1 39.♖a2 ♖c3! 40.♖a7 40.♖b2 e4 41.fxe4 f3+ 42.♙d1 ♙e5-+ 40...♙d7 41.♖b7 ♖xb3 42.♖b8 ♖b2+ 43.♙f1 b3 44.♙g1 ♙c6 45.♙f1 ♙d5 46.♖b7 (D)



Alekhine has managed to create a passed pawn on the queenside. But now he does not try to convert this trump directly but turns his attention to the kingside instead, to invade with his king there. 46...e4! 47.fxe4+ ♙xe4 48.♖xc7 ♙f3 49.♖xe7 ♖xf2+ 50.♙e1 b2 51.♖b7 ♖c2 52.c6 (D)

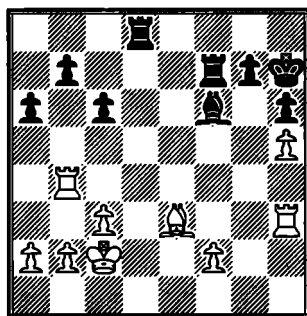
52...♙g3 Good technique! Alekhine uses the g4-pawn as an umbrella against



the rook checks. 52...♖c1+ wins as well: 53.♙d2 b1♙ 54.♖xb1 ♖xc6 (54...♖xb1? spoils it due to 55.c7) 55.g5 ♙g2-+ . 53.c7 f3 54.♙d1 ♖xc7 55.♖xb2 f2 0-1

Summary: Alekhine has given a strong demonstration of his superb endgame technique. Black's maneuvers are typical for such positions and should be mastered by you. The centralization of his king deserves special attention, as well as the advance of his h-pawn and the exchange of one and only one pair of rooks, and finally his exploitation of the principle of two weaknesses.

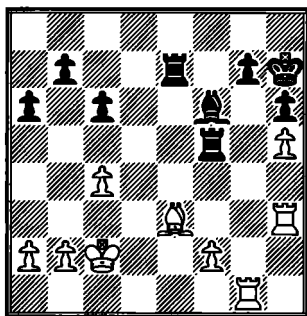
02.08 Nielsen – Dreev
Esbjerg 2003 [B] (D)



At first sight it may seem that the position is dynamically balanced. White's weakened kingside structure seems to

The Principle of Two Weaknesses

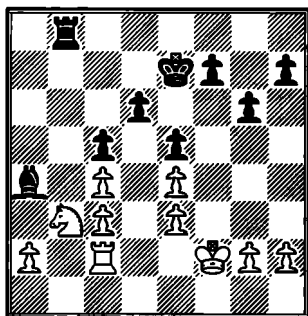
be balanced by his active pieces. But Black manages to force White's pieces into passivity by attacking the weaknesses. 29...♞e7! Black prepares an attack against the h5-pawn. He wants to double his rooks on the fifth rank. 30.♞f4 ♠d5 31.c4 Black threatened ♞e5 which would make the weakness of the h5-pawn obvious. 31...♞de5 32.♞g4?! It is better to grab space on the queenside with 32.b4. 32...♞f5! With the plan ♞e5×h5. Black activates his own pieces and forces White into passivity. 33.♞g1 (D)



33...b5! All according the grand strategic scheme. First pressurize one weakness to force the enemy pieces into passivity, then improve one's own army, make it very mobile and win space. Finally, attack on the other wing. 34.c×b5 c×b5 35.♠d1 a5! 36.b3?! This move makes it easier for Black to open a second front. White should just wait with, e.g., 36.♠d6. 36...♞c7+ 37.♣b1 a4 Not only preparing to weaken White's b-pawn, but also to open roads to attack the king. 38.♞hh1? The prophylactic 38.♠d3 is more tenacious. 38...a×b3 39.a×b3 ♞c3 40.♣a2 b4 0-1 The threat ♞a5+ is decisive. This demonstrates that Black's pieces are much more mobile and can easily act on both wings.

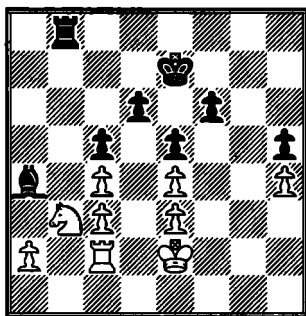
Summary: This game illustrates an important step when realizing the principle of two weaknesses. After creating the first weakness the pieces attack it to force the opponent to defend passively. Then the position is improved to the maximum, and only afterwards is the attack on the other wing started.

02.09 Akopian – Shirov
World Cup Khanty-Mansiysk 2007
[B] (D)

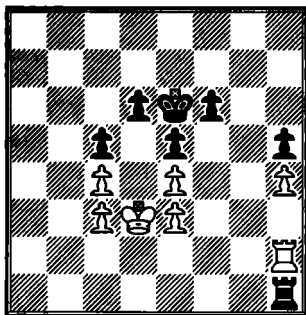


This position seems to be difficult to evaluate at first sight. White has an extra pawn, but with the two sets of doubled pawns, his structure is in ruins. As Black's pieces are additionally much more active, only Black is able to play for the full point. Shirov demonstrates in the game that he has studied the classics. He increases his advantage à la Alekhine by a combined attack on both wings. 30...h5! Shirov plays like in the Alekhine game. He advances his h-pawn to h4. Then he wants to pressurize the g2-pawn by opening the long diagonal with f7-f5, later to provoke g2-g3, when Black can open a way for his rook on the kingside. 31.♣e1 It was probably better to stop the advance of Black's pawn immediately with ♠h4 to put the kingside pawn on dark-squares. But Black keeps

excellent winning chances, e.g., 31...f6
32.g3 g5 33.♖e2 g×h4 34.g×h4 (D)

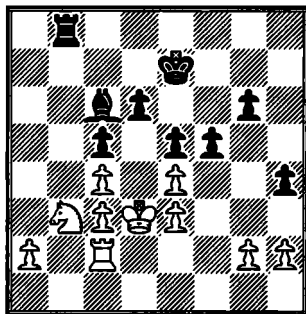


Now Black can enter a rook ending because of his active rook and the many weaknesses in White's camp. 34...♙b3 35.a×b3 ♖×b3 36.♖d3 ♖b1 37.♖b2!? ♖d1+ 38.♖e2 ♖h1 39.♖d3 ♖e6 (but not 39...♖×h4? because of 40.♖h2! ♖g4 41.♖×h5=) 40.♖h2!? (D)



The point of White's defense is this stalemate motif. But Black can break the fortress by transferring his rook to g4 and his king to g6, forcing White's rook to defend the h4-pawn. Then he continues with f6-f5 to get rid of the stalemate motifs. Black's activity together, with the many weaknesses in White's camp, give him good winning chances. 40...♖d1+ 41.♖c2 ♖g1 42.♖f2 ♖g4 43.♖d3 ♖f7 44.♖h2 (44.♖g2 f5!-+; 44.♖a2 f5! 45.♖a7+ ♖f6 46.e×f5 ♖×f5 47.♖f7+ ♖e6 48.♖h7 ♖×h4 49.♖h6+ ♖d7 50.♖h7+ ♖c6-+) 44...♖g6 Black will follow up with f6-f5 to activate his king. 45.♖g2

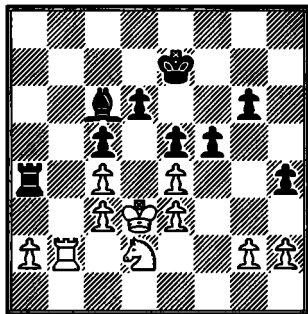
(45.♖f2 ♖×h4! 46.♖h2 ♖g5-+) 45...f5 46.e×f5+ ♖×f5 47.♖f2+ (47.♖h2 ♖g1 48.♖f2+ ♖g4 49.♖e4 ♖×h4 50.♖d5 ♖g3 51.♖f6 ♖d1+ 52.♖e4 h4 53.♖g6+ ♖h2 54.♖f3 ♖d2 55.♖g8 h3 56.♖g7 ♖g2 57.♖a7 ♖g3+ 58.♖f2 e4-+) 47...♖e6. Now that the stalemate problem has been solved, White has to defend passively which is usually bad in rook endings. 48.♖h2 d5! and Black has good winning chances. 31...h4 32.♖d2 ♙c6 33.♖d3 f5! (D)



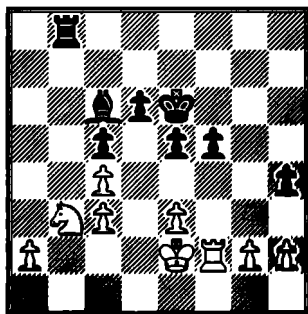
Black improves the scope of his pieces. The slow white knight is not able to follow the actions of Black's quick long-range pieces. 34.e×f5? This opens too many inroads. 34.♖d2!? offers more resistance. The defensive idea is to keep the long diagonal closed and then to clarify the situation on one of the wings by g2-g3 or a2-a3 followed by ♖a2. Black must act precisely to get an advantage. 34...♖a8! is the best move. Black must tie White's pieces to the defense of the weak pawns. So he brings his rook to a3 or a4, which threatens f×e4 ♖×e4 ♙×e4 ♖×e4 ♖×c3 winning a pawn. This finally forces White to take on f5, which opens more roads for Black. (34...♖f6?! allows White to regroup with 35.a3 followed by ♖a2. 34...♙a4?! wins back the pawn but at the price of entering a rook endgame: 35.♖h3 ♙×h3 36.a×b3 ♖×b3 37.g3! with practical drawing chances.) 35.♖h2 (White can also try to free his

The Principle of Two Weaknesses

game on the kingside with 35.g3 now, but with the minor pieces still on the board, Black has strong pressure, e.g., 35...h×g3 36.h×g3 ♖e6 37.♖b2 ♖a3 38.♖c2 ♖a4 and White finally has nothing better than taking on f5.) 35...♖a4 (D)



White is running out of moves. Black will put his king on e6 to threaten to take on e4. So sooner or later White will be forced to take on f5. 36.exf5 g×f5 37.g3 h×g3! 38.h×g3 ♖e6 and White is powerless against the plan e5-e4, ♖e6-e5 followed by ♖c6-d7-e6. 39.♖b8 (39.e4?! ♖×e4+ 40.♖×e4 f×e4+ 41.♖×e4 ♖×c4+ 42.♖d3 ♖g4; 39.♖e2 ♖a3 40.♖d3 ♖g2; 39.♖b6 e4+ 40.♖c2 ♖×a2+) 39...e4+ 40.♖c2 ♖×a2+ 41.♖c1 ♖e5 42.♖h8 (42.♖d8 ♖a7) 42...♖d7 and Black is clearly for choice in all cases. He will put his bishop on e6 to put pressure on the c4-pawn. He will follow with c4, c3 and g3 until White's defense crumbles. 34...g×f5 35.♖f2 ♖e6 36.♖e2 (D)



36...♖a8! Black's rook threatens to attack all of White's weaknesses. The a2-pawn is under direct fire and the rook can move quickly to a4 and g8. White is powerless against the multiple threats. 37.♖e1 37.♖d3? ♖e4+ -+ 37...♖a4 Black wins his pawn back, which decides the issue in view of the many weaknesses in White's camp. 38.g3 h×g3 39.h×g3 ♖e4 40.♖h2 ♖×c4 41.♖d2 ♖a4 42.♖c1 c4 43.♖a1 ♖a8 44.♖d2 44.♖c2 ♖×c2 45.♖×c2 ♖d5 46.♖d2+ ♖e4 47.♖b2 ♖d8 48.♖f2 ♖b8+ 49.♖c2 ♖g8 50.a4 ♖×g3 -+ 44...♖g8 45.a4 ♖×g3 46.♖c2 ♖×c2 47.♖×c2 ♖×e3 48.a5 ♖d7 49.a6 ♖c7 0-1

Summary: Shirov used classic principles in a complicated position. In addition to the weaknesses on the queenside, he created weaknesses and inroads on the kingside by advancing his h- and f-pawns, and this could finally be exploited by his powerful long-range duo of rook and bishop.

These examples allow us to formulate a general plan about two weaknesses:

- (1) First create one weakness;
- (2) Attack it not with the aim of winning it, but to tie the defending pieces down to its defense and thereby stop any form of counterplay;
- (3) Improve the position of your pieces as much as possible while trying to restrict the enemy pieces as much as possible (e.g., by seizing more space);
- (4) Provoke a second weakness on the other wing; and
- (5) Break the defense by using your superior mobility.

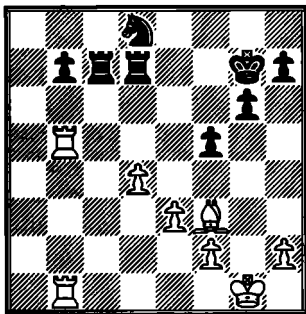
At every step the principle of prophylaxis and the avoidance of

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

counterplay must be taken into account. Long-term maneuvering is only possible if the opponent has no effective counterplay. Furthermore, it is important to see this principle relative to the mobility of one's pieces. Breaking the defense is most often only possible if the attacking pieces are quicker (e.g., bishop vs. knight) or more mobile because of an advantage in space so that they can create a favorable imbalance on one wing.

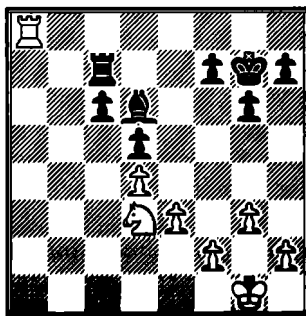
Exercises

E02.01 Kasparov – Andersson Belgrade 1985 [W] (D)



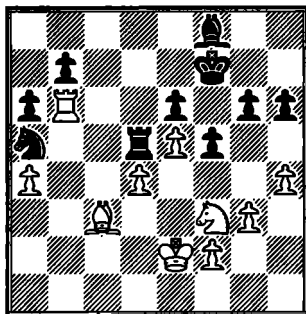
White has a clear advantage because of the weak b7-pawn. But as usual, Black can defend this one weakness successfully. How did Kasparov create a second weakness in Black's camp?

E02.02 Kotov – Pachman Venice 1950 [B] (D)



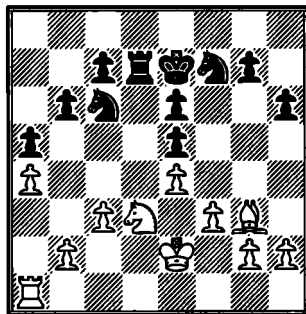
Black has one weakness on c6 in this typical position for the Carlsbad structure. How should he continue to keep his defensive line intact?

E02.03 Giri – Sutovsky Corus B Wijk aan Zee 2010 [W] (D)



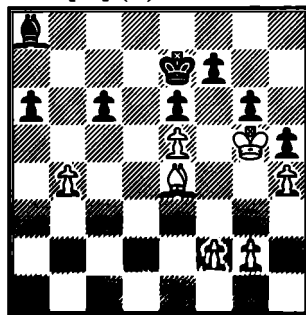
How did Giri increase his pressure?

E02.04 Yusupov – Christiansen Las Palmas 1993 [W] (D)



How did Yusupov make progress?

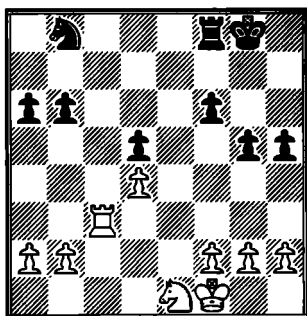
E02.05 Karpov – Lautier Biel 1992 [W] (D)



The Principle of Two Weaknesses

How did Karpov convert his advantage?

E02.06 Botvinnik – Alekhine
AVRO Holland 1938 [W] (D)

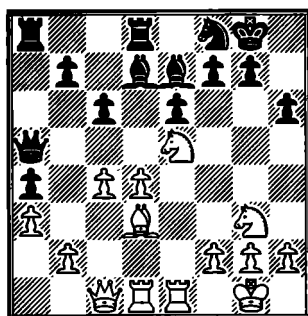


How did Botvinnik continue?

The Principle of Two Weaknesses in the Middlegame

These endgame examples have shown the principle in its pure form. In the middlegame, this is very rare as the problems are much more complicated. Often one side can compensate for a static disadvantage by dynamic counterplay and only very rarely is one side doomed to complete passivity. Furthermore, it is much more likely the weakness can be sacrificed to get activity. So long, slow maneuvering is often not possible. But on the other hand, one target comes more into the focus in the middlegame. Contrary to the endgame where using the principle of two weaknesses is about weak pawns or squares, now the king safety is of great importance.

02.10 Alekhine – Asztalos
Kecskemet 1927 [W] (D)

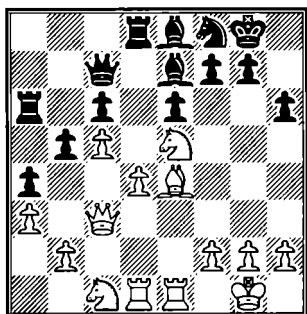


White has the more active pieces, but Black's position is quite solid. Alekhine now demonstrates how to apply the principle of two weaknesses in the middlegame. His plan consists of the following steps:

- (1) Creating a first weakness on the queenside;
- (2) Attacking the weakness, not to win it, but to tie Black down to its defense;
- (3) Improving his own position to the maximum (piece and space advantage);
- (4) Creating another weakness on the other wing (the king's position);
- (5) Breaking the defense; and
- (6) In all phases, the principle of prophylaxis is of utmost importance as maneuvering takes time and so the opponent should not have counterplay.

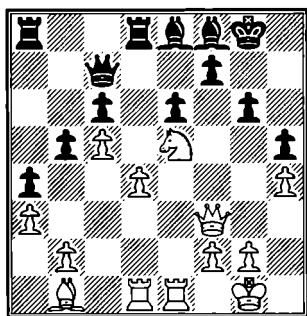
19.c5! A strong positional move. The ♖e5 shall move to b6 via c4, which endangers the a4-pawn. Weakening the d5-square on the other hand is not important at the moment as no black minor piece can occupy it any time soon. Black must stop the knight maneuver by weakening his queenside. **19...b5** The first step is completed; a weakness on the queenside has been created. **20.Qe4 ♜c7** Black's pieces are tied to the defense of the c6-pawn. Alekhine now improves the placement

of his pieces to the maximum and keeps an eye on the weak c6-pawn. **21. ♖c3** The queen gets the option to go to f3. **21... ♙e8 22. ♘e2** The knight will be directed to b4 via d3. The alternative was the direct **22. f4** with the advance f5 in mind. **22... ♟a6 23. ♘c1 (D)**

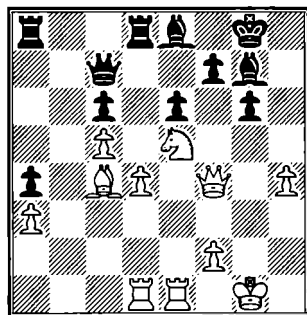


23... ♘d7 Black is forced to exchange the ♘e5. Otherwise he cannot protect the c6-pawn in view of the maneuver ♘c1-d3-b4 followed by ♖c3-f3. **24. ♘xd7 ♟xd7?! 24... ♖xd7** is more flexible. **25. ♘d3 ♟d8 25... ♙f6?** **26. ♘b4+- 26. ♘e5 ♙f8** White has placed his pieces aggressively. Now he starts to provoke another weakness on Black's kingside, which has already been slightly compromised by h7-h6. **27. h4!** This typical advance is directed against g7-g6. **27... ♟aa8 27... g6?** **28. h5 g5 29. ♙b1± 28. ♙b1** The threat ♖d3-h7 forces Black to make another pawn move on the kingside. **28... h5** Black weakens his kingside further to be able to close the diagonal b1-h7 with g7-g6 without fearing h4-h5. **29. ♖f3 g6 (D)**

Alekhine has realized the fourth phase of his plan and has induced a weakening on the kingside. Now he starts to attack the ramparts in earnest. **30. g4!** Alekhine opens the kingside to exploit the higher mobility of White's forces.



30... h×g4 31. ♖×g4 ♙g7 32. ♙a2 32. ♖g2!? with the idea h4-h5 followed by ♟eh1 was interesting as well. **32... b4!** Black seeks counterplay on the queenside. **32... ♖e7? 33. ♘×g6!+- (Alekhine); 32... ♙xe5? 33. ♟xe5 b4 34. ♙c4 ♖g7 35. h5+-.** **33. ♙c4! b×a3 34. b×a3 ♖a5 35. ♖e4 35. ♘×g6?** runs into **35... ♟×d4 35... ♖c7 36. ♖f4?! 36. h5!?** (D)



36... ♟ab8? Too slow. Black's kingside defense had to be strengthened immediately by **36... ♖e7!** **37. h5 (37. ♘×g6 ♖f6; 37. ♖g3 ♖f6 38. ♟d3 ♖f5 39. ♟f3 ♙xe5 40. d×e5 ♖h5) 37... g×h5 38. ♟d3 ♖f6 39. ♖g3 ♖h6** when White has pressure but the fight is not over. **37. h5!** The battering ram moves forward. **37... g×h5 38. ♖h1** Clearing the g1-square for the rook. **38... ♟b7 39. ♟g1 ♖e7** As a result of his lack of space, Black cannot setup

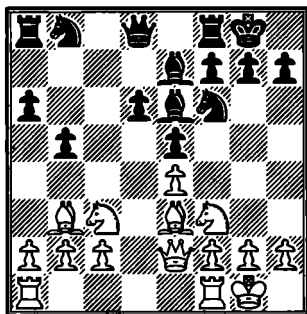
The Principle of Two Weaknesses

a line of defense as his pieces are not mobile enough. Alekhine finishes the job in his typical brilliant attacking style. 40. ♖×g7+! ♜×g7 41. ♖g1+ ♜h7 42. ♜×f7 1-0 and Asztalos resigned in view of 42... ♜×f7 43. ♔d3+ ♜g6 44. ♔×g6+ ♔×g6 45. ♜f6 ♖g8 46. ♜×e6 ♖b3 47. ♖g3+-.

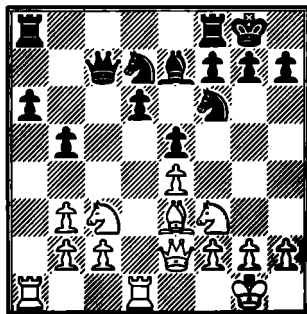
02.11 Polgar – Anand

Wijk aan Zee 1998 (D)

1.e4 c5 2. ♘f3 d6 3.d4 c×d4
4. ♘×d4 ♘f6 5. ♘c3 a6 6. ♔e3 e5
7. ♘f3 ♔e7 8. ♔c4 0-0 9.0-0 ♔e6
10. ♜e2 b5 11. ♔b3 (D)



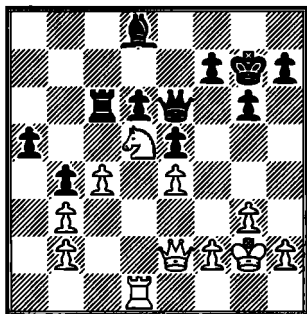
11... ♔×b3? A very serious mistake for a player of Anand's caliber. The light-square bishop is one of the most important black minor pieces in this position. 12.a×b3 ♘bd7 13. ♖fd1 ♜c7 (D)



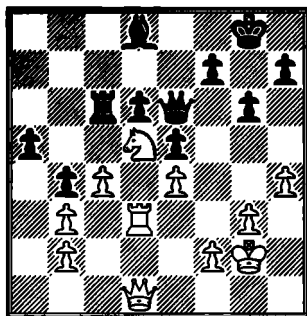
Black already has two weaknesses. Both backward pawns on the a- and d-file are

vulnerable in the long run. Regarding the d-pawn, especially important is that the d5-square is very weak after the exchange of light-square bishops. As there are still many pieces on the board, Black can hope to compensate his static disadvantages by drumming up counterplay against c2 and e4. So Polgar's aim is to prevent that without giving up her static trumps. This is achieved by exchanging minor pieces followed by seizing d5. 14. ♔g5! Exchanging an important defender of the d5-square. White's aim is to reach a position with a strong knight versus a bad bishop. 14... ♖fc8 15. ♘e1 The knight protects the c2-pawn and prepares the maneuver ♔×f6 followed by ♘d5. Furthermore, it can be relocated to d5 via the routes e1-d3-b4 or e1-g2-(c2)-e3. 15... ♜b7 16. ♔×f6 ♘×f6 17. ♘d5 ♘×d5 18. ♖×d5 Polgar has reached the desired material configuration without losing the d5-outpost square. 18... ♖c5 19. ♖ad1 ♖×d5 20. ♖×d5 ♖c8 21.c3! This strong move is a prophylaxis against the freeing ...d6-d5. 21... b4 21... ♖c5 22. ♖d1 d5? loses a pawn to 23.b4. 22.c4 g6 23.g3 A good move which fits well into White's general scheme. The g2-square is vacated for White's king and h2-h4 is prepared. 23... ♖c5 24. ♖d1 There will be a piece, not a pawn on d5! 24... a5 25. ♘c2 ♜g7 26. ♜d3 ♖c6 27. ♘e3 ♜c8 28. ♜g2 ♜e6 29. ♜e2 ♔d8 30. ♘d5 (D)

White has reached a dream position. The mighty ♘d5 prevents any counterplay by its strong presence alone. Polgar will in the long run now use the principle of two weaknesses to overturn Anand's defenses. Her next step is to improve the placement of her

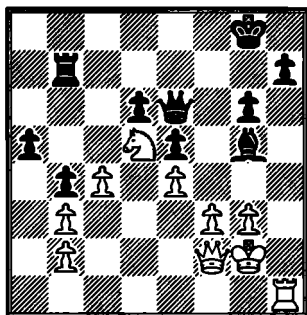


pieces to increase the pressure on the weaknesses at a5 and d6. 30...♞c5 31.♜e3 ♘e7 32.♞d3 ♙d8 33.♜d2 ♞c6 34.♜d1 ♜g8 White has placed her pieces so that they are mobile and flexible on the d-file. But the weaknesses at a5 and d6 can be defended by Black. So a second weakness should be provoked on the kingside. 35.h4! (D)

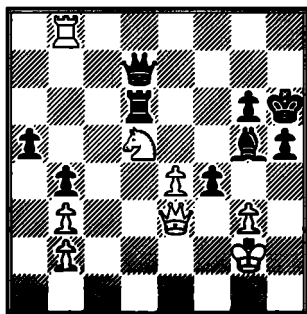


35...♜g7?! It is probably better to stop h4-h5 by 35...h5. Then White can only make progress by f4 or g4 which also exposes White's king. 36.h5 ♙g5 37.♜f3 ♞c8 38.♞d1 ♞c6 39.♜e2 ♞c8 40.♞h1 ♜g8 41.f3 Polgar clears the f2-square for her queen, which can operate on the queenside and quickly appear on the kingside via g1-h2 from f2. 41...♞b8 42.♜f2 ♞b7 43.hxg6 fxg6 43...hxg6? 44.♜g1 f5 (44...♙f6 45.♜h2 ♙g7 46.♜h4+-)

45.♜h2 ♙f6 46.♜h6 ♙g7 47.♜g5 ♞d7 48.♞a1+- and Black's pieces are not mobile enough to parry the threats on both wings. (D)



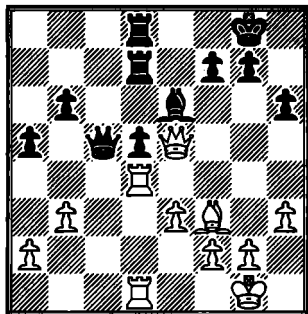
Black has protected all entry squares on the queenside. So Polgar really opens a second front there which also increases her chances to attack Anand's king: 44.c5! dxc5 45.♜xc5 ♙d8 The threat against the a5-pawn forces the bishop into passivity. 46.♞c1 ♜f7 47.♜e3 Black's pieces are completely passive and cannot drum up real counterplay. Polgar uses the time to increase pressure by doubling on the c-file. 47...♜g7 48.♞c4 ♞d7 49.♜c1 h5 50.♞c6 ♞d6 51.♞c8 ♜d7 52.♜c5 ♜h6 53.♞b8 ♙f6 54.♜e3+ ♙g5? Anand allows a beautiful concluding combination. 54...♜g7 is forced, e.g., 55.♞a8 ♜b5 56.♞c7 ♞d3 57.♜e2 ♜d7 58.♞d5 ♞d4 59.♞xa5± 55.f4 exf4 (D)



The Principle of Two Weaknesses

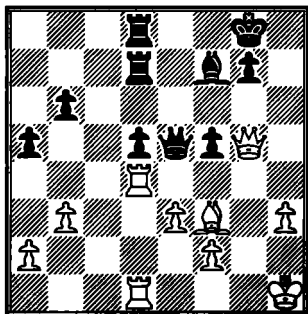
56. h8+ 1-0 and Anand resigned in view of 56... g7 57. d4+ f6 58. $\text{x}f6+$ $\text{x}f6$ 59. h7+ $\text{x}h7$ 60. $\text{x}f6+$ g7 61. $\text{x}d7+-$.

02.12 Botvinnik - Zagoriansky
Sverdlovsk 1943 [W] (D)



The first two steps of White's plan have already been achieved – creating a weakness and taking aim at it. White must now decide how to continue. Black's position has only one weakness. All White's pieces take aim at d5, but this alone is not sufficient to break through. The key to the position is not the weakness itself, but the fact that Black's pieces are tied to passive defense. So they are not flexible and cannot regroup quickly. White's pieces are much more mobile. They can move on both flanks quickly and back again (e.g., $\text{d4-a4-g4-d4}...$). To take advantage of this flexibility White has to create another weakness. 25. g4! Botvinnik: "Black's pieces are tied to the defense of the d5-pawn. This allows White to start an attack on the kingside, even if this also weakens White's king position." But Black can start no real counterattack. His pieces lack space and cannot exploit the advance of the g-pawn. White's major pieces will create strong pressure after the g-pawn has been used as battering ram. 25... c6 26. g5 $\text{h} \times \text{g5}$ 27. $\text{g} \times \text{g5}$ f6 28. $\text{g} \times \text{g6}$ $\text{a} \times \text{f7}$ 28... $\text{a} \times \text{h3?}$ 29. f4 d6 30. h2

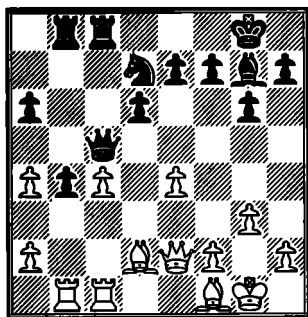
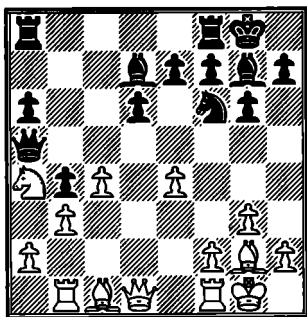
a6 31. g1 b7 32. $\text{h6} \pm$ 29. g3 f5? "This rushed advance only helps White's initiative. But the transfer of White's rook to g1 poses Black unsolvable problems anyway" (Botvinnik). 29... c2 30. a4 c6 31. a3 gives White a lasting initiative. 30. g5 e6 31. h1 e5 (D)



32. g1! Increasing the pressure is stronger than 32. e4? a6 33. $\text{e} \times \text{d5}$ $\text{a} \times \text{d5}$ 34. $\text{a} \times \text{d5+}$ $\text{h} \times \text{d5}$ 35. $\text{g} \times \text{d8+}$ $\text{h} \times \text{d8}$ 36. $\text{h} \times \text{d8+}$ $\text{g} \times \text{h7}$. One reason is that Black's position is much more difficult to play in the game. 32... f8 32... d6 33. f4 a6 34. $\text{h4} \pm$ 33. h6 b8? 33... c8 34. h4 f8 35. $\text{x} \times \text{b6}$ c2 36. $\text{g2} \pm$; 33... g6 34. $\text{x} \times \text{g6+}$ $\text{a} \times \text{g6}$ 35. $\text{g} \times \text{g6+}$ g7 36. $\text{x} \times \text{b6}$ c8 37. $\text{a} \times \text{d5+}$ $\text{g} \times \text{h8}$ 38. $\text{a4} \pm$. 34. h4 f8 35. h8+ $\text{a} \times \text{g8?}$ 36. f4 The new target, the f5-pawn, cannot be defended in a satisfactory way. 36... $\text{b} \times \text{b7}$ 37. g5 f7 38. h5 a1+ 39. g2 g6 40. $\text{g} \times \text{g6}$ $\text{a} \times \text{h7}$ 41. $\text{g} \times \text{d6+}$ $\text{f} \times \text{e7}$ 42. $\text{g} \times \text{d8+}$ 1-0

02.13 Kosak – Markgraf
German Oberliga 2006 [B] (D)

Black has the slightly better position. White's pieces are not coordinated and Black can weaken White's queenside structure with $\text{a} \times \text{a4}$. 15... $\text{a} \times \text{b8!}$ A strong preparatory move. Black wants



to take on a4 without giving White counterplay against the b4-pawn. **16. ♖d2** 16. ♖b2 ♜xa2 17. ♖d2 ♖c6 18. ♞e1 ♘d7 gives Black just a solid extra pawn. **16... ♖xa4** Now the knight had to be taken as White was threatening to start counterplay with a2-a3. **17. ♜xa4 ♜c5!** The best move. The queen unpins the b4-pawn and creates pressure against c4. **18. ♜e2?!**

active position and fixes the e4-pawn to prepare the lever f7-f5. Furthermore, Black threatens to attack the a4-pawn a second time by ♘c5. So White must put his bishop on c2. 23... ♘c5? runs into 24. ♖xb4. **24. ♖d3 ♘c5 25. ♖c2 (D)**

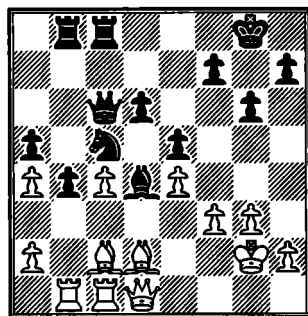
Now Black can just follow the well-known pattern:

- (1) Attack the white weaknesses on the queenside to force White's pieces into passive defense;
- (2) Improve all black pieces to the maximum to stop all counterplay;
- (3) Create a second weakness on the kingside; and
- (4) Break through the defense on one of the wings, in this case probably the kingside.

18. ♜b3! a5 19. ♖e3 ♜c7 20. c5!?
(20. a3?! ♘g4) 20... dxc5 21. ♞bc1 ♘d7
22. ♞c4 ♞fc8 23. ♞fc1 is called for.

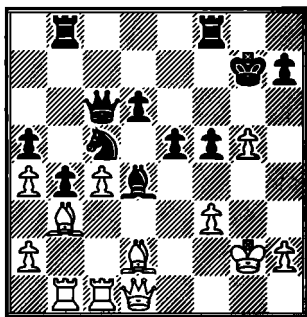
18... ♞fc8 19. ♞fc1 ♘d7 20. ♖f1 (D)

White's pieces are doomed to passive defense. Now Black starts to place his pieces on the best squares. **20... ♖d4!** **21. ♜g2 a5 22. f3 ♜c6 23. ♜d1 e5!** This move holsters the bishop in its



The second phase has been completed. Black's pieces are optimally placed. White has absolutely no counterplay. Which piece can he move without losing material? **25... ♜g7!** A preparatory move. Black keeps the options open to play the lever f7-f5 or h7-h5-h4. White's pieces are tied down to the passive defense of the pawns on the queenside, so White has no means to parry the coming onslaught on the kingside. **26. ♖b3 ♞f8 27. g4?!** Do not play on the wing where you are weaker! This makes Black's job of opening the kingside much easier. **27... f5 28. exf5 gxf5 29. g5 (D) 29... h6!?** (Opening the position forcefully. The third and fourth phases

The Principle of Two Weaknesses



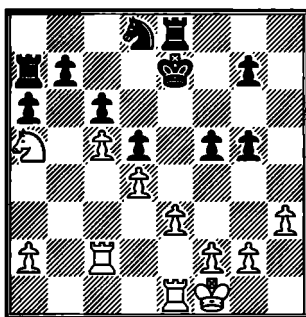
of the general scheme are almost completed. White's king position is weakened and the last defensive wall starts to crumble. Black's rooks can be thrown into the attack much quicker than White's into the defense.

30. ♖c2 30.g×h6+ ♔h7 31. ♗g5 ♜g8 32.h4 ♜e6 33. ♝d2 ♜f4+! (33... ♞xg5+ 34.h×g5 ♞g8-+) **34. ♔g3 ♞xg5+!** **35.h×g5 ♞g8** and Black's attack crashes through. **30... ♜e6 31.a3?! h×g5 32.a×b4 a×b4 33.c5 d×c5 34. ♖b3** The game is decided. Black has two extra pawns, a mating attack, a strong center, more active pieces and space advantage. **34... ♜f6 35.h3 ♜h8 36. ♝e2 ♜h4 37. ♝c4 g4 38. ♝×e6+ ♝×e6 39. ♗g5+ 39. ♗×e6 g×f3+ 40. ♔g3 ♞×h3+ (40... ♜bh8-+) 41. ♔×h3 ♗f2-+ 39... ♔×g5 40. ♗×e6 g×f3+ 41. ♔g3 e4 41... ♞×h3+!** mates in three moves: **42. ♔×h3 ♔f4 43. ♗×f5 ♜h8+ 44. ♗h7 ♞×h7***. **42. ♞h1 ♞e8 42... ♞g4+ 43.h×g4 f4+ 44. ♔h2 ♞h8*** **43. ♗d5 f4+ 44. ♔h2 ♞×h3+ 0-1**

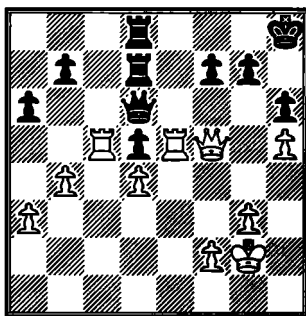
Exercises

E02.07 Rubinstein – Takacs
Budapest 1926 [W] (D)

(1) Formulate a plan! (2) Which targets should be reached in each step? (3) What to do first?

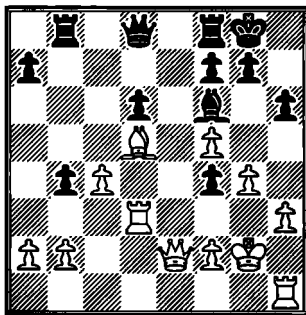


E02.08 Schandorff – Doettling
German Bundesliga 2002 [W] (D)



White applies pressure to the d5-pawn. Is this sufficient to win? How to make progress?

E02.09 Markgraf – Lanka
Grömitz 2005 [W] (D)



(1) How to assess this position? (a) White is slightly better? (b) White is winning? (c) Unclear?
(2) How should White proceed?

Chapter 3 The Right Exchange

This is a very difficult strategic theme. Important guidelines are:

(1) One side profits more from every exchange. Make sure that you are that side and consider every exchange very carefully! Do not exchange pieces automatically so that you cannot blunder them away later. Do not exchange just for the sake of exchanging or to get closer to a draw. Your opponent will feel that you are frightened and will gain strength from that knowledge.

(2) Exchange your opponent's active pieces.

(3) A rook fighting minor pieces welcomes exchanges.

(4) The defender should exchange pawns.

(5) The attacker does not exchange attacking potential.

(6) The side which is better does not exchange winning potential.

(7) It is not important what is exchanged; what is important is what remains on the board.

(8) The defender of weaknesses e.g., a weak color complex, should be exchanged.

(9) The side with a space advantage tries to avoid exchanges.

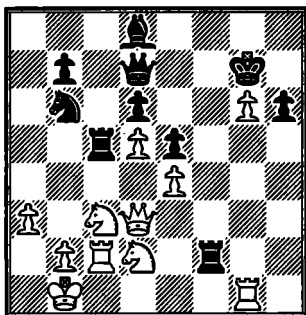
(10) Bishops are often easier to exchange than knights. One advantage of the bishop pair is that often a transformation into another advantage by an exchange can be made.

Let us look at those guidelines in more detail:

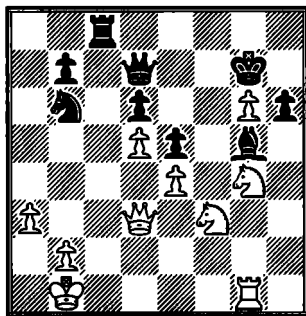
(3.1) Exchange your opponent's active pieces.

If you have bad and passive pieces try to exchange them for the opponent's good pieces:

03.01 Carlsen – Topalov Nanjing Pearl Spring 2009 [W] (D)



White's c2-rook is not contributing as much to the game as Black's rooks, so Magnus Carlsen played **32. ♖d1! ♜xc2** 32... ♜f8 33. ♜xc5 dxc5 34. ♗e3 c4 35. ♝c3+- **33. ♗xf2!**? Magnus takes the more active rook in attack and defense. But 33. ♝xc2?! ♜h2 34. ♗e3 ♗g5 35. ♗f5+ ♜xg6 36. ♝d3 ♗a4 37. ♗c4 ♗c5 38. ♝f3 is also clearly in White's favor. **33... ♜c8 34. ♗g4 ♗g5 35. ♗f3** (D)



35... ♗c4?! It was better to reduce White's attacking potential by exchanges with **35... ♜c1+ 36. ♜xc1 ♗xc1** but after **37. ♗g5 dxc5**

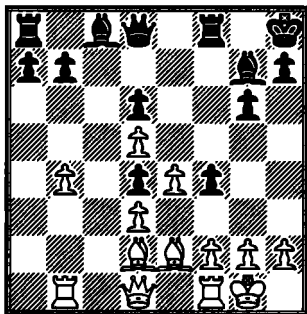
The Right Exchange

38.♖xc1, White is technically winning. 36.♗xg5 h×g5 37.♗e3 37.♖h3!? wins directly: 37...♖h8 (37...♖xg6 38.♖h6+ ♖f7 39.♖f1+--) 38.♖xh8+ ♖xh8 39.♖h1+ ♖g8 40.♗f6+-- . 37...♗e3 38.♖xg5 ♖a4 38...g4 39.♖g5 ♖f8 40.♖h1 ♖h8 41.♖f1 ♖f8 42.♖f5 ♖e8 43.♖xg4+- 39.♖xg5 ♖xg4+ 40.♖a1 ♖e8 41.♖c1 1-0 and Topalov resigned as he cannot stop the decisive invasion of White's major pieces.

In the next two examples the strategy is of a more long-term character:

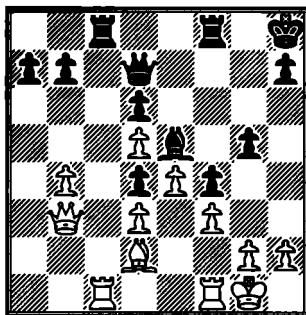
03.02 Wajih – Komarov

Goodricke open 12th Kolkata 2001 [W] (D)

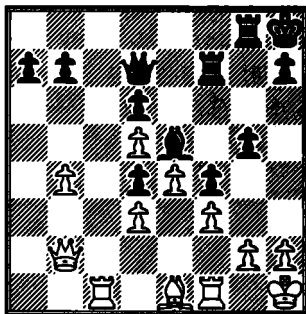


Black's light-square bishop is an important part of his attacking army, while White's ♗e2 is passive, so 17.♗g4! is the logical way to proceed. 17...♗e5 17...♗xg4 18.♖xg4 ♗e5 19.♖fc1 also gives White a pleasant strategic initiative. 18.♗xc8 ♖xc8 19.f3 "Now Black is positionally doomed. His d4-pawn is committed while his attack chokes without the light-square bishop" (Gershon in CBM 82) 19...♖d7 20.♖b3 g5 21.♖bc1 (D)

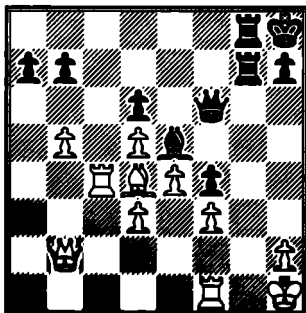
21...♖ce8?! Black wants to preserve the rook as attacking potential, but this



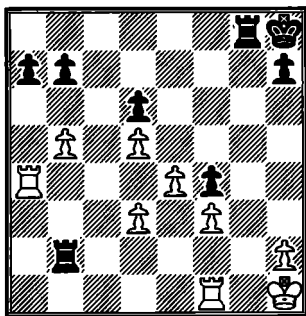
is too slow. The quicker 21...♖xc1 22.♖xc1 g4 23.♖d1 h5 is better and keeps White's advantage within small bounds because of the kingside counterplay. 22.♖h1 ♖f7 23.♗e1 ♖g8 24.♖b2 (D)



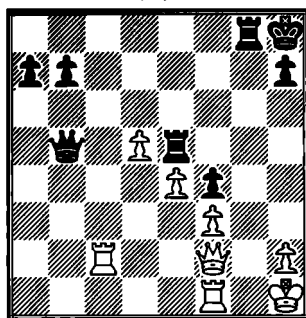
24...♖d8? 24...g4? is also wrong because of 25.♗f2±. Black should prepare an exchange of rooks with 24...♖ff8! 25.♗f2 ♖g7 26.♖c4 ♖c8 with some chances to resist. 25.♗f2 ♖f6 26.b5 g4 27.♖c4 gxf3 28.gxf3 ♖fg7 29.♗xd4 (D)



29...♖g5? 29...♜g6? 30.♔xe5 dxe5
31.♖cc1±; 29...♔xd4 was the last
chance to offer real resistance. Ex-
changing into a rook endgame is a typi-
cal defensive method. 30.♜xd4 ♜xd4
31.♖xd4 ♖g2 32.♖a4 ♖b2 (D)



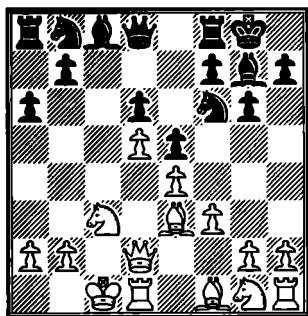
and now White must play 33.♖g1! to
try to exchange one attacking rook. But
Black keeps practical drawing chances.
30.♔xe5 dxe5 31.♜f2 ♜g7
32.♖c2 ♜d7 33.d4 ♜xb5
34.dxe5 ♖xe5 (D)



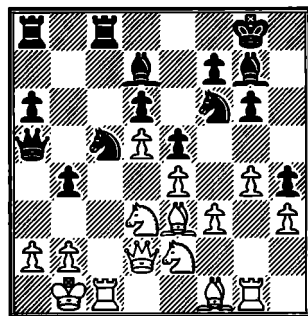
35.♖g1! White wants to exchange the
active g8-rook, which serves many
purposes. 35...♜e8 36.♖xg8+
♜xg8 37.♜h4 ♖c7 38.♜f6 1-0

03.03 Postny – Markos
Kolkata open 2009

1.d4 ♔f6 2.c4 g6 3.♔c3 ♔g7 4.e4
0-0 5.♔e3 d6 6.f3 e5 7.d5 c6
8.♜d2 a6 9.0-0-0 cxd5 10.cxd5
(D)



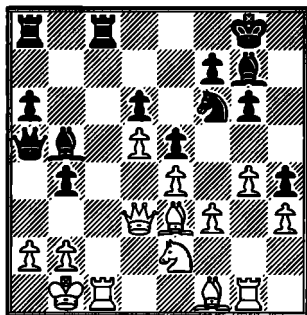
White has a clear space advantage and
can follow two strategies. He can ad-
vance his pawns on the kingside to gain
space and perhaps even start an attack
or try to use his space advantage on the
queenside to invade there. 10...b5
11.g4 h5 12.h3 ♜a5 13.♜b1
♔bd7 14.♖c1 ♔c5 15.♔ge2 ♔d7
15...b4 is a sharp alternative that com-
pletely changes the character of the
fight: 16.♔d1 ♔cxe4 (16...h×g4?
17.♔xc5! dxc5 18.h×g4± with the idea
♔e3-c4, Postny in CBM 132) 17.f×e4
♔xe4 18.♜d3 ♔b7 and Black has some
compensation. But not 18...h×g4?
19.♖xc8!±. 16.♖g1?! The immediate
16.♔d1 is more precise. 16...h4!
17.♔d1 b4 18.♔f2 ♖fc8 19.♔d3 (D)



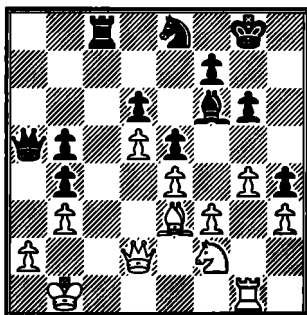
19...♔xd3? 19...♖ab8! "This was the
move that mainly concerned me.
Black's initiative should not be under-
estimated. For example, 20.♔xc5 dxc5
21.h3 (Perhaps 21.♖c4! ♔b5 22.♔c1,

The Right Exchange

Müller and Markgraf.) 21...♖b5 22.a4 c4!! 23.a×b5 a×b5 24.♙a2 ♜×a2+! 25.♜×a2 ♖a8+ 26.♜b1 ♖a3 with more than sufficient compensation for the piece." (Postny) 20.♜×d3 ♖b5 (D)

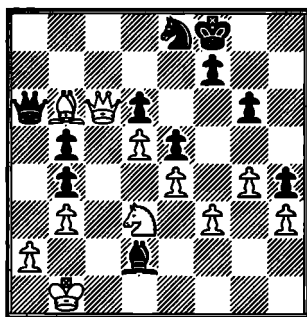


21.♙×c8+! "Every exchange reduces Black's attacking potential. White's idea is to exchange as many pieces as possible until Black will remain with his bad dark-square bishop." (Postny) 21...♙×c8 22.♜d2 ♖a4 22...♞d7 23.a3 ♜c7 24.a×b4 ♞b6 25.b3± (Postny). 23.b3 ♖d7 24.♞c1 ♞e8 25.♞d3 ♙c3 26.♞b2 ♖b5 27.♖×b5 a×b5 27...♜×b5 28.♞c4 ♖f6 29.♜b2 a5 30.a4 ♜a6 31.♜e2 ♞c7 32.♙d1 ♖e7 33.♖d2+- 28.♞d1 ♙c8 29.♞f2 ♖f6 (D)



30.♙c1 Again it is good to exchange Black's active rook. 30...♙c3 31.♞d1 ♙c7 31...♙×c1+ 32.♜×c1 ♜c7 33.♜c6+- 32.♙×c7 ♞×c7 33.♜c1 ♞e8 34.♜c6 ♞f8

35.♖b6 ♜a6 36.♞f2 ♖g5 37.♞d3 ♖d2 (D)

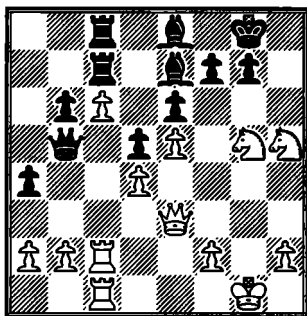


38.♞×e5! ♖c3 38...d×e5? 39.♖c5+- 39.♞d3 ♜a3 40.e5 1-0

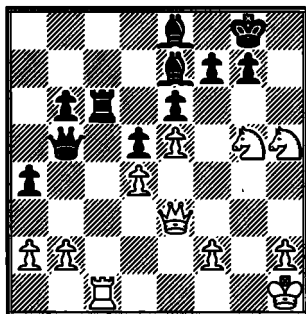
(3.2) The attacker does not want to exchange attacking potential.

But good defenders should of course be exchanged and you certainly cannot always preserve all your pieces:

03.04 Adams – Morozevich Sarajevo 2000 [W] (D)



27.♜h1! 27.♜g3 wins as well: 27...♙×c6 28.♞h7 (28.♞×f7 g5 29.♞d6+-) 28...g6 29.♞7f6+ ♖×f6 (29...♜f8 30.♜g5+-) 30.♞×f6+ ♜f8 31.♜a3+ ♜g7 32.♞×e8+ ♙×e8 33.♙×c6+-; But not the immediate 27.♞×g7 because of 27...♜×g7 28.♞h1 ♖×g5 29.♜×g5+ ♜f8-. 27...♙×c6 28.♙×c6 ♙×c6 (D)

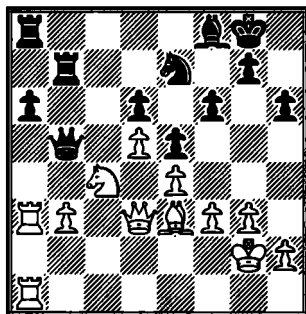


29. **g1!** Adams' point. He does not exchange his second rook of course but brings it into the attack. Black on the other hand is lost as he cannot bring his major pieces to the defense quick enough. 29... **x b2** 30. **x g7!**? **c3** 30... **c3** 31. **f4** **e2** 32. **f5+**– 31. **x e8** 1-0

(3.3) Defenders of weaknesses should be exchanged.

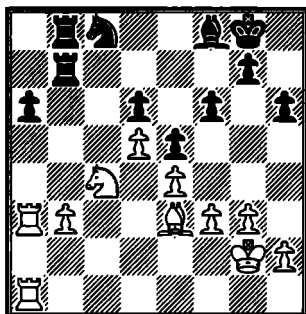
Especially if the defender shields a whole color complex or wing:

03.05 Rubinstein – Duras
Carlsbad 1911 [W] (D)



Black's queen is the glue that holds his position together. Without it, Black's queenside falls apart immediately: 27. **f1!** **c8!**! 27... **c7** is more tenacious, e.g., 28. **d2** (28. **x d6?**) loses the exchange in view of 28... **c2+**

29. **f2** **x f1** + 30. **x f1** **c8**) 28... **b4**
29. **x a6** **x a6** 30. **x a6** **c2** 31. **a2**
x a2 32. **x a2** **c3** 33. **f2** **f5** 34. **b1**
g5 35. **e2**± 28. **d2** **b4** 29. **c4**
x c4 30. **d4** **x c4** **ab8** (D)



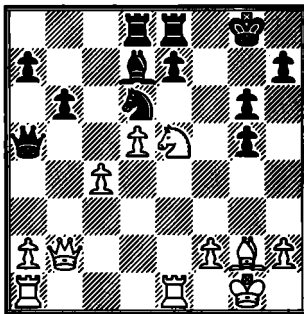
31. **d2!** Rubinstein simply defends his b3-pawn and as Black cannot hold his a6-pawn the game is decided and the rest a matter of technique: 31... **c7** 32. **x a6** **c2** 33. **6a2** **x a2** 34. **x a2** **e7** 35. **f2** **f7** 36. **e2** **e8** 37. **d3** **d7** 38. **c3** **d8** 39. **c4** **c7** 40. **g4** **d8** 41. **a6** **c7** 42. **h4** **d8** 43. **h5** **c7** 44. **b4** **b7** 45. **a8** **d8** 46. **b3** **b8** 47. **x b8** **x b8** 48. **b5** **e7** 49. **b6** **f5** 50. **gxf5** **d8** 51. **f2** **c8** 52. **h4** 1-0

Very often a bishop is exchanged, which defends an important color complex:

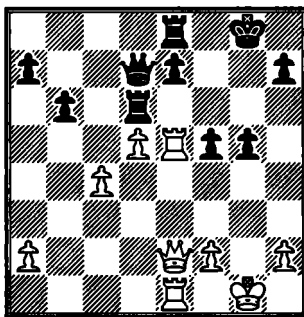
03.06 Vachier-Lagrave – Rodshtein
Biel 2010 [W] (D)

Vachier-Lagrave has started a very dangerous, long-term attack: 26. **x d7!** **x d7** 27. **h3** **f5** 27... **c7!**! 28. **e6+** **f7** 29. **e4** (Krasenkow in CBM 138) 29... **f8** 30. **f4**± 28. **x f5** **gxf5** 29. **e5** **d6!**! This defensive regrouping does not really stop the attack. It is probably better to provoke

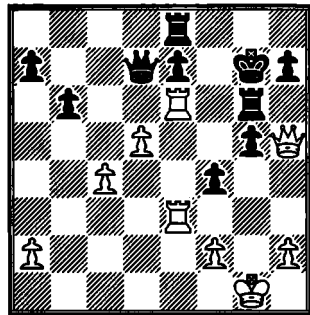
The Right Exchange



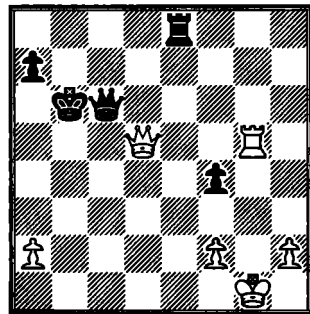
more direct action by 29...♖f8!? 30.d6 ♖a6 31.dxe7 ♖e8 32.♖e2 (32.♖xf5 ♖xe7 33.♖f6 ♖c8) 32...♖a3 33.c5 bxc5 34.♖c4+ ♖g7 35.♖xf5 ♖dxe7 and Black can still fight in both cases as White's rook al is not attacking yet. **30.♖ae1 ♖a4 31.♖e2 ♖d7 (D)**



32.♖h5! Vachier-Lagrave keeps his attacking potential on the board as the attack is easier to play and gives much better practical chances than 32.♖xe7? ♖xe7 33.♖xe7 when Black has hopes of saving the resulting rook ending after, e.g., 33...b5 (33...a5 34.♖xd7 ♖xd7 35.♖e5 ♖c7 36.d6 ♖d7 37.♖xf5 h6 38.c5 bxc5 39.♖xc5 ♖xd6 40.♖xa5 ♖g7) 34.cxb5 ♖xe7 35.♖xe7 a6 36.a4 axb5 37.axb5 ♖b6 38.♖e5 ♖xb5 39.♖xf5 h6. **32...♖g6 32...♖f6 33.♖e6 ♖f7 34.♖1e5 ♖d8 35.d6 ♖d7 36.h3±. Black is bound hand and foot. 33.♖e6 ♖g7 34.♖1e3 f4 (D)**



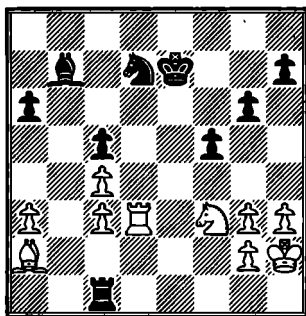
35.♖h3? 35.♖3e5! breaks the resistance immediately: 35...♖xe6 36.dxe6 ♖d8 37.♖d5 ♖c8 38.♖xg5+ ♖h8 39.♖e5+ ♖g8 40.♖e4+- . **35...♖xe6?** 35...♖g8! forces White to seek new roads of attack after 36.♖xh7+ ♖f8 37.♖d3±. **36.♖xh7+ ♖f6 37.♖h6+ ♖e5 38.♖xe6+ ♖d4 39.♖f5?! 39.♖e4+!?** ♖c3 40.♖f3+ ♖b4 (40...♖d4 41.♖e4+ ♖c5 42.♖a3*) 41.♖c6+- (Krasenkow). **39...♖a4 40.♖e4+ ♖c5 41.d6+ e5 42.♖xe5+ ♖xd6 43.c5+ bxc5 44.♖f6+ ♖c7 45.♖f7+ ♖d8 46.♖d5+ ♖c7 47.♖xc5+ ♖b7 48.♖d5+ ♖b6 49.♖xg5 ♖c6 (D)**



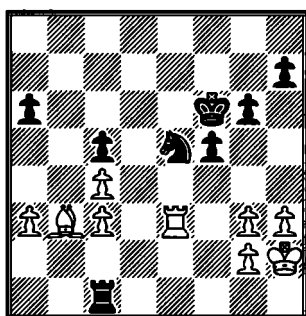
50.♖xc6+!? White simplifies into a technically won rook endgame. **50...♖xc6 51.h4 f3 52.h5 ♖e4 53.♖h2 ♖a4 54.♖g3 1-0**

(3.4) It is not important what is exchanged, but what remains on the board.

03.07 Spassky – Karpov
Montreal 1979 [B] (D)



31... ♖xf3! Karpov clarifies Black's advantage. White is helpless despite his extra pawn as his bishop is bad and his king cannot enter the game any time soon. It is not important that Black's bishop might be potentially stronger than the f3-knight. Important for Karpov is only that the resulting position after the exchange is won for him. **32. ♖xf3 ♗e5 33. ♖e3 ♜f6 34. ♖b3 (D)**



34... a5 Karpov does not rush. His move underscores the helplessness of White's position. **35. ♖a4 35.a4 ♖b1 36. ♖c2 ♖a1 (36... ♖xc4!?** should win as well.) **37. ♖b3 ♖a3 38. ♖d1 ♖xc4 39. ♖e8 ♖b2 -+ 35... ♖xc4 36. ♖e8 ♖xc3 37. ♖c8 ♖e3 38. ♖b5 c4 39. ♜g1 ♖c2 40. ♖c6 c3 41. ♖f3**

g5 42.g4 f4 0-1 and Spassky resigned in view of **43. ♖e4 ♖a2 44. ♖xc3 ♖a1+ 45. ♜h2 (45. ♜f2 ♖d1+-) 45... ♖f1+ 46. ♜g1 ♖g3+ 47. ♜f2 ♖f1#.**

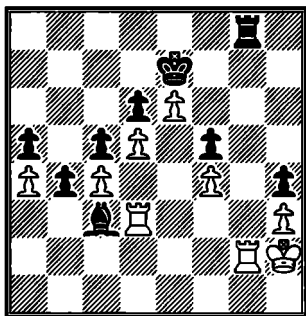
(3.5) A rook fighting against minor pieces welcomes exchanges.

There are several reasons for this:

- (1) The more material that is exchanged, the stronger the rook gets.
- (2) Minor pieces need a rook as coordinator.
- (3) A rook can help a bishop compensate for its "color blindness."
- (4) A rook can compensate for the slowness and clumsiness of a knight and act more quickly on both wings

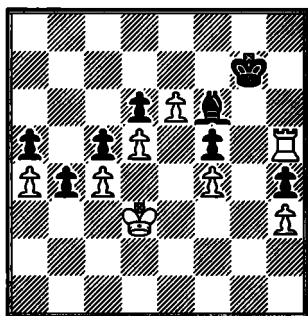
The rule is valid whether the rook is fighting against one or two minor pieces:

03.08 Yusupov – Dolmatov
Wijk aan Zee Candidates match 1991 [B] (D)

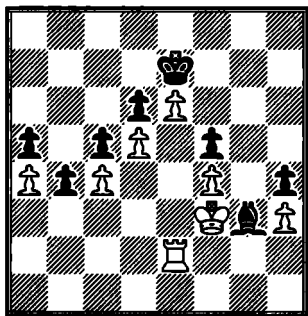


Black's rook must remain on the board as otherwise he will fall into *zugzwang* sooner or later: **48... ♖b8! 48... ♖xg2+? 49. ♜xg2 ♖e1 (After 49... ♖f6 50. ♜f3 ♜f8 51. ♖d1 ♖e7 52. ♖g1 ♖f6 53. ♜e2 ♖e7 54. ♖g6 ♖d8 55. ♖h6 ♜g7 (D) 56. ♖h5 ♖f6 57. ♜d4**

The Right Exchange



White's rook manages to break free no matter, what Black does, e.g., 57...♖g6 [57...♖g8 58.♗xf5 ♖g7 59.♗e3 ♖g6 60.♗e4 ♖g7 61.♗h5 ♔d8 62.♗e3 ♔e7 63.f5 ♔f6 64.♗e4 ♔d8 65.f6+ ♔xf6 66.♗f5+-] 58.e7 ♖f7 59.♗xf5 ♖xe7 60.♗h5 ♖f7 61.♗h7+-.) 50.♖f3 ♔g3 51.♗e3 ♔h2 52.♗e1 ♔g3 53.♗e2+- (D)

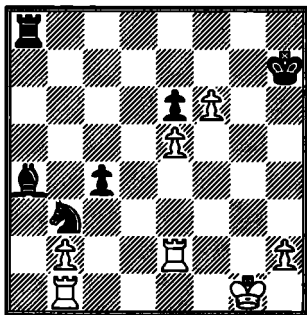


with decisive *zugzwang*. But now back to the game: 49.♗g1 After 49.♗g5 Black can even enter the rook endgame 49...b3 50.♗xc3 b2 51.♗g1 b1♗ 52.♗xb1 ♗xb1 as White's king cannot be activated in time, e.g., 53.♗c2 ♗b4 54.♗g2 ♗xa4 55.♗g7+ ♗e8 56.♗d7 ♗xc4 57.♗xd6 ♗d4= (Yusupov). 49...♔d4 50.♗b1 ♗g8 51.♗db3 ♔f2! 52.♗f1 ♔g3+ 53.♖h1 ♗g7 54.♗b2 ♗g8 55.♗b3 ♗g7 56.♗b2 ♗g8 57.♗bb1 ♗g7 58.♗f3 ♗g8 59.♗bf1 ♗g7 60.♗c3 ♗g8 ½-½

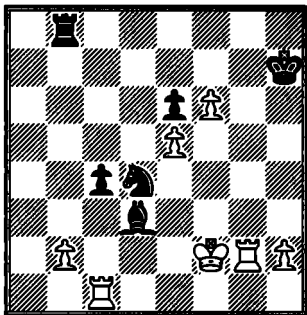
The next case is more complicated:

03.09 Kosintseva – Hoang Thanh Trang

39th Olympiad (Women) Khanty-Mansiysk 2010 [B] (D)



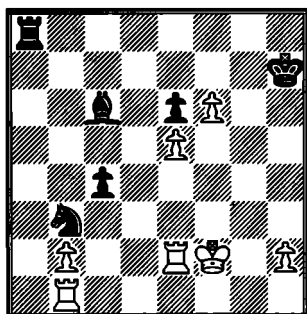
Black must exercise some care in light of White's dangerous passed kingside pawns, but she should be able to hold: 39...♔c6? The active 39...♔d4 40.♗g2 (40.♗e3 ♔c2 41.♗be1 ♔f5=) 40...♔c2 41.♗c1 ♔d3 42.♖f2 ♗b8 (D)



leads to dynamic equality because of Black's centralized minor pieces, e.g., 43.♗e3 ♔f5+ 44.♖f4 ♔h4 45.♗g7+ ♖h6=.

40.♖f2 (D)

40...♗g8? This allows White to exchange her passive rook. After 40...♗b8 41.♗e3 ♔c5 42.b4 ♔d3+ (42...cxb3?? runs into a lawnmower mate: 43.♗μ1 h2 44.♗h3♣) 43.♗e2 ♔f4+ 44.♗d2 ♔d4+ 45.♖c2 ♔e8 and



Black has enough counterplay.

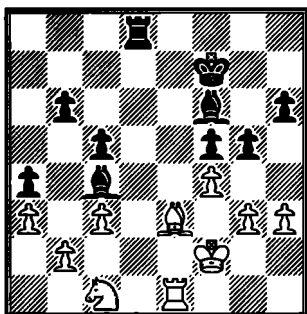
41. ♖g1! ♜xg1 42. ♕xg1 ♖g6?
 42... ♖g8! was the last chance to resist.
 43. h4 ♘d4 44. h5+! The decisive
 blow which wins a minor piece.
 44... ♖f7 44... ♖xh5 45. ♖f2 ♗e8
 46. f7+- 45. ♖e3 ♘f5 46. ♖a3 ♘h6
 47. ♖a7+ ♖g8 48. ♖g7+ ♖f8
 49. ♖c7 ♗d5 50. ♖c8+ ♖f7
 51. ♖h8 ♘g4 52. h6 ♘xe5 53. h7
 ♖g6 54. f7! ♘xf7 55. ♖f8 ♖xh7
 56. ♖xf7+ ♖g6 57. ♖f8 ♗e4
 57... ♖g7 58. ♖f2 ♖g6 59. ♖f1 e5
 60. ♖e2 ♖g5 61. ♖e3 ♖g6 62. ♖f8+-
 58. ♖f2 ♖g7 59. ♖c8 ♗d3
 60. ♖e3 ♗f1 61. ♖d4 ♖f7
 62. ♖e5 ♖e7 63. ♖c6 ♖d7
 64. ♖xe6 ♖c7 65. ♖d4 ♖b7
 66. ♖e1 ♗d3 67. b3 ♖c6 68. bxc4
 ♗f5 69. ♖f1 ♗h3 70. ♖f6+ ♖d7
 71. ♖c5 1-0

(3.6) Exchanging the bishop pair can transform an advantage.

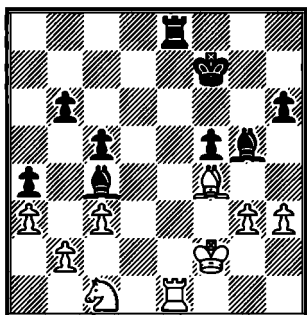
The following classic is very famous as it illustrates Steinitz's famous method of restricting a knight – see example 04.01. Here we highlight the question of the correct exchange:

03.10 Englisch – Steinitz

London 1883 [B] (D)



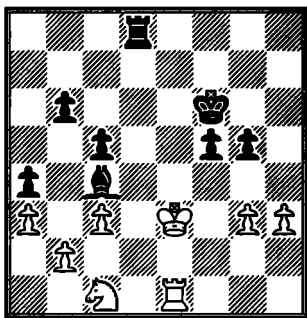
Steinitz has already achieved quite a lot. White's knight is restricted and his pieces passive. But how to make progress? 30...gxf4!? Steinitz transforms one advantage, the bishop pair, into another, a Fischer endgame with rook and strong bishop against rook and dominated knight. 30...♗d5 with the idea b5-b4 is the main alternative. Of course, Black can also opt for the flexible 30...♖g6. 31. ♗xf4 ♗g5! Steinitz exchanges the strong defending white bishop. This also highlights the fact that White's knight is dominated. 32. ♗xg5 32. ♖e3 ♖e8+ 33. ♖f2 (D)



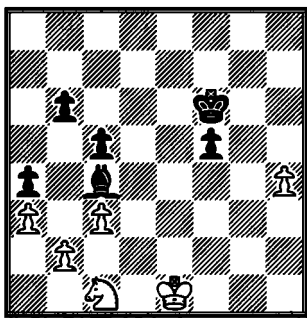
Now Black must solve the exchange question in the right way: 33...♗xf4 (But not 33...♖e1? 34. ♖e1 ♗xf4 35. gxf4 ♖e6 [35...♖g6 36. ♖f2 ♖h5 37. ♖g4 h5 38. h4=] 36. ♖f2 ♖d5 37. ♖c3 ♗f1 38. h4 ♗c4 39. ♖d2 and

The Right Exchange

Black cannot invade, e.g., 39...b5
40.♖e3 b4 41.cxb4 cxb4 42.a×b4
♖×b4 43.♚d4=) 34.g×f4 ♔d8-+
32...h×g5 33.♖e3 ♖f6 (D)

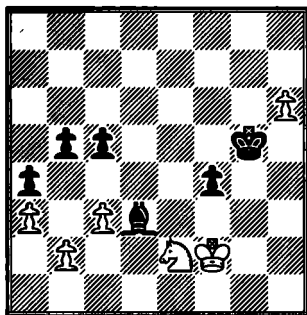


34.h4? This loses by force but good
advice is already hard to give, e.g.,
34.♔h1 ♖e5 35.♔g1 f4+ 36.♖f3
♔d5+ 37.♖f2 (37.♖e2 ♖e4 38.g×f4
g×f4 39.♔g7 ♔c4+ 40.♖e1 f3 41.h4
♖e3 42.♔e7+ ♖f4 43.♔g7 ♔d6 44.h5
♖e3 45.♔e7+ ♔e6-+) 37...♔h8
38.♔e1+ ♖d6 39.g×f4 g×f4 40.c4 ♔c6
41.♔d3 ♔×h3-+; 34.♔g1 ♖e5 35.h4
f4+ 36.g×f4+ g×f4+ 37.♖f3 ♔d5+
38.♖e2 ♖e4-+. 34...g×h4 35.g×h4
♔e8+ 36.♖f2 ♔×e1 37.♖×e1 (D)



37...♖e5! 37...f4? allows the knight to
escape: 38.♔e2 ♖f5 39.h5 ♖g5 40.h6
♔d3 41.♖f2 b5 (D)

and now 42.c4! forces a draw: 42...b4
43.♔c1 ♔g6 44.♖f3=. 38.♔e2
38.h5 is met by the direct switch-back
38...♖f6-+. 38...♔×e2 39.♖×e2

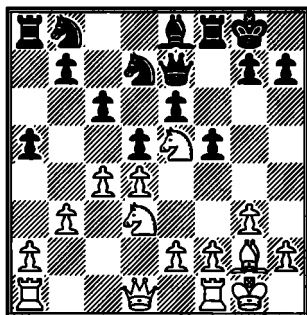


♖f4 40.c4 ♖g4 41.♖e3 f4+
42.♖e4 f3 43.♖e3 ♖g3 0-1

(3.7) The side with the space advantage
tries to avoid exchanges.

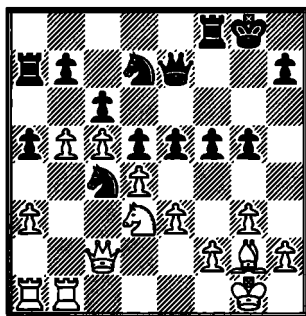
The reasoning behind this rule is clear:
a space advantage also means that more
space is not protected by pawns and
must be protected by pieces so more
pieces are needed. And less space
means that the house is overcrowded
by many pieces:

03.11 Lautier – Vaisser
FRA-ch Aix les Bains 2003 [W] (D)

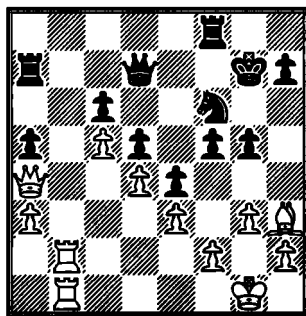


14.♔f3! "A standard reaction. White
is the side with the space advantage, so
he shouldn't exchange the knights."
(Roiz in CBM 97) 14...♔h5 15.♖c2
♔a6 16.a3 ♔×f3?! This is an excep-
tion to the guideline that Black should
exchange pieces as the price is too high.

But White is also for choice after, e.g., 16...♖c7. 17.♙xf3! 17.exf3! opens more dangerous roads and this more than compensates for compromising the structure here: 17...♜f6 18.♜b2 b5 (18...a4 19.cxd5 exd5 20.bxa4y) 19.cxb5 cxb5 20.♞fc1± (Roiz). 17...♖c7 18.♙g2 ♖e8 19.e3 g5 20.♞fb1 Lautier prepares the further advance of his queenside pawns. 20...♞a7 21.b4 ♖d6 22.c5 ♖c4 23.b5 e5 (D)

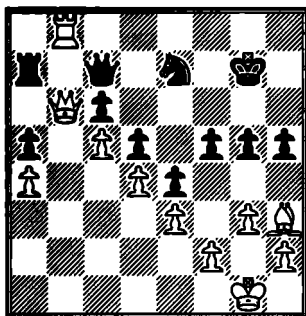


24.♖b2! The active black knight should of course be exchanged. 24...♖xb2 25.♞xb2 e4 26.♞ab1 ♖f6! The knight is needed to defend the queenside. 26...♜e6 is more precise. 27.♜a4 ♜d7 28.♙h3 ♜g7 29.bxc6 bxc6 (D)

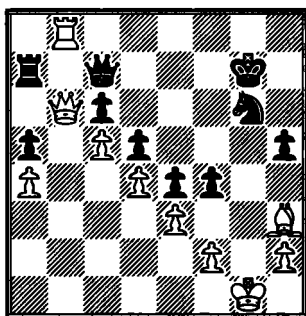


30.♞b8! "Black's rook on a7 is very passive, so white wants to exchange the second rook. That is a typical technical idea" (Roiz). 30...♞xb8 31.♞xb8 ♖g8 32.♜b3 ♖e7 33.♜b6 h5

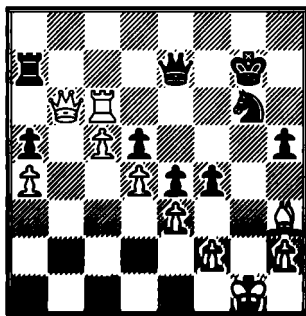
34.a4 ♜c7 (D)



35.♙f1! It would be a mistake to exchange queens: 35.♜xc7? ♞xc7 36.♞a8 ♞b7 37.♞a5 ♞b1+ 38.♙f1 f4 39.gxf4 gxf4 40.♞a7 ♜f6= (Roiz). 35...f4 36.gxf4 gxf4 37.♙h3 ♖g6 (D)

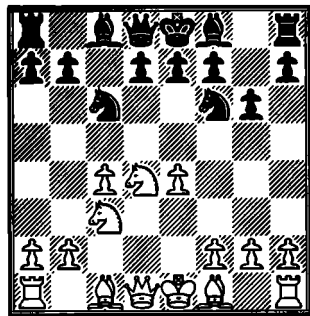


38.♞c8? Allowing Black to avoid exchanges and start a counterattack. After 38.♞d8! Black cannot escape: 38...♜e7 39.♜xa7 ♜xa7 40.♞d7+ ♜xd7 41.♙xd7 ♖e7 (41...fxe3 42.fxe3 ♖e7 43.h4±) 42.exf4± 38...♜e7! 39.♞xc6 (D)

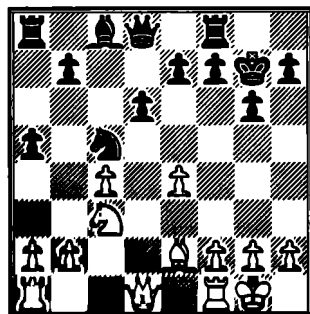


The Right Exchange

39...♖h4? Now Black has difficulties avoiding the exchange of queens. After the direct 39...♜g5+! White cannot win: 40.♕f1 (40.♕h1 ♖f7 41.♗b8 fxe3 42.fxe3 ♖f3 43.♖c7+ ♘e7 44.♖b7 ♖xh3 45.♗e8 ♖xh2+ 46.♕xh2 ♗h4+=) 40...♞e7 41.♖c7 (41.♗b8 fxe3 42.♗g3 e2+ 43.♕e1 ♗c1+ 44.♕xe2 ♗c2+ 45.♕f1 e3 46.fxe3 ♖f7+ 47.♕e1 ♗c1+ 48.♕e2 ♗c2+=) 41...fxe3 42.♖xe7+ ♘xe7 43.♗d6 exf2 44.♗g3 ♗xg3 45.hxg3 ♕f7 46.♘d7 ♘g8=. 40.♞e6! ♗g5+ 40...♗f7 41.♗d8! ♘f3+ 42.♕h1 ♖b7 43.♖b6 ♖xb6 44.cxb6+- (Roiz). 41.♕f1 ♖f7 42.♞e5! ♗g6 43.exf4 ♘f3 44.♗xg6+ ♕xg6 45.♖xd5 ♖b7 46.♖d6+ ♕f7 47.♖b6 ♖c7 48.c6 ♕e7 49.♖b7 ♕d6 50.♖xc7 ♕xc7 51.d5 ♘xh2+ 52.♕g2 1-0



plot his space advantage as Black does not have enough maneuvering room for his four minor pieces, or White wants to play with one or no minor pieces as Black then often has no real counterplay. On the other hand, Black can often live well with two or three minor pieces. But this guideline is not written in stone and has to be taken with a very large grain of salt. 6...♘xd4 The Gurgeniidze system is logical from the point of reducing the number of minor pieces. After 6...d6, 7.♘c2 is the one main line to keep all the minor pieces on the board, e.g., 7...♘g7 8.♘e2 0-0 9.0-0 ♘d7 10.♘d2 a5 11.♘a3 ♘c5 12.♘ab5 ♘d4. Black wants to exchange knights as he has no maneuvering room for all four minor pieces. 13.♘xd4 ♘xd4 14.♘h6 White now wants to exchange two minor pieces. First comes the dark-square bishop. 14...♘g7 15.♘xg7 ♕xg7 (D)



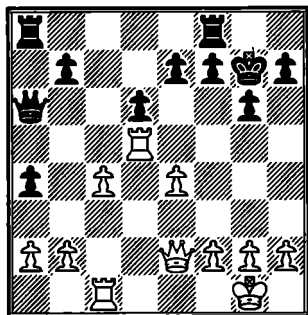
One of the main elements of a spatial advantage is how much capacity the position has for the pieces. A hedgehog position, for example, does not have a lot of space as the black pawns are, e.g., on a6, b6, d6, e6, f7, g7 and h7, but it nevertheless can accommodate all the pieces, including the four minor pieces, e.g., ♘b7, ♘e7, ♘d7 and ♘f6. So you should be aware of that and ask yourself how much capacity your position has and how much your opponent's has, and then you exchange pieces accordingly. Another structure where this theme is very important is the Maroczy bind:

03.12 Botvinnik – Toran Palma de Mallorca 1967

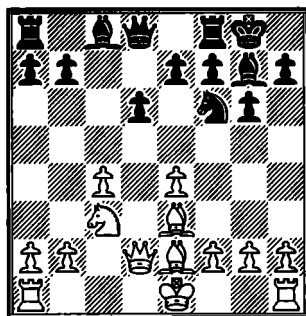
1.c4 g6 2.e4 c5 3.♘f3 ♘c6 4.d4 cxd4 5.♘xd4 ♘f6 6.♘c3 (D)

White has installed a typical Maroczy bind in the center. White either wants to play with four minor pieces, to ex-

16. ♖g4! Bologan exchanges his bad bishop, looking to continue play with one minor piece. 16... ♗xg4 17. ♜xg4 a4 18. ♜e2 ♜a5 19. ♞ac1 ♖d7 20. ♖d5 ♖f6 21. ♞fd1 ♖x d5 22. ♞x d5 ♜a6 (D)

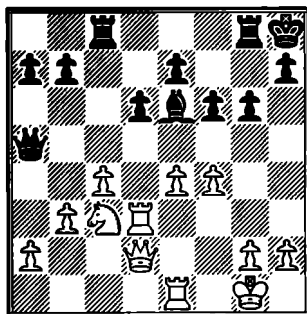


23. h4! ♞fc8 24. h5 e6 25. ♞d4 ♞c5 26. ♜d2 ♞xh5 27. ♞x d6 ♜a5 28. ♜xa5 ♞hxa5 29. ♞d7 ♞5a7 30. c5 b5 31. ♞d6 ♞b8 32. f4 ♜f6 33. ♜f2 g5 34. g3 ♞c7 35. ♜e3 gxf4+ 36. gxf4 ♞g8 37. ♞c2 ♞g1 38. e5+ ♜f5 39. c6 ♞g3+ 40. ♜d4 ♞f3 41. ♞d7 1-0 Bologan-Motylev, Russia 2003. 7. ♜x d4 d6 8. ♖e3 ♖g7 9. ♖e2 0-0 10. ♜d2 (D)

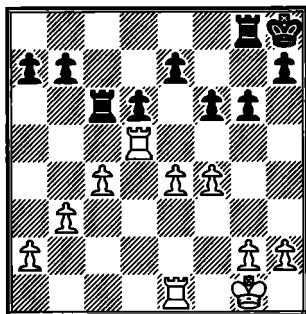


10... ♖g4?! Black follows the concept that the side with less space should exchange pieces. But here the drawbacks are too great. 10... ♖e6 is the main line. 11. ♖xg4 ♖xg4 12. ♖d4 White of course exchanges the dark-square bishops to halve Black's pair, adhering to the applicable guidelines. 12... ♖e6 13. ♖xg7 ♜xg7 14. 0-0 ♜g8 14... ♖xc4? longer to 15. ♜d4+ +-.

15. b3 ♜a5 16. f4 f6 17. ♞f3 ♜h8 18. ♞e1 ♞g8 19. ♞d3 ♞ac8 (D)



20. ♖d5!? Botvinnik heads for further exchanges to probe Black in the resulting double-rook ending. 20... ♜x d2 21. ♞x d2 ♖x d5 22. ♞x d5! After 22. exd5 ♞c7 23. ♞de2 ♞g7 White has great problems making progress. 22... ♞c6? The prophylactic 22... ♞c7 is more circumspect as 23. e5! can be met by 23... dxe5 24. fxe5 f5 25. ♞ed1 ♜g7 26. ♞d7 ♞gc8 27. ♞xc7 ♞xc7 28. e6 ♜f6 29. ♞d7 ♞c5 30. ♞xb7 ♞a5=. (D)



23. e5 dxe5 24. fxe5 ♞e6 25. ♜f2 ♞f8? This wins a pawn but activates White too much. 25... ♜g7 26. ♞d7 ♞b8 saves valuable time and gives some practical drawing chances. 26. ♞d7! fxe5+ 27. ♜e3 ♞b8 28. ♜e4 ♜g8 29. ♜d5 ♜f7 30. ♞xe5 ♞d6+?! 31. ♞xd6 exd6 32. ♜xd6 ♞d8+ 33. ♜c7 ♞d2

The Right Exchange

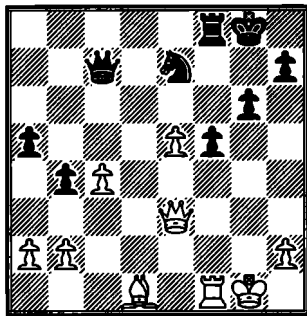
34. ♖×b7 ♜×g2 35. c5 ♜×h2 36. c6 ♜c2 37. b4 1-0

(3.8) When the opponent has static weaknesses, reduce his dynamic potential.

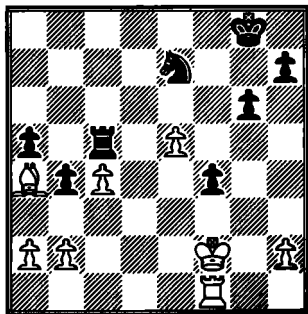
Often this is done by an exchange of queens:

03.13 Kobalia – Krasenkow

RUS-chT Dagomys 2008 [B] (D)



White's e5-pawn is weak so 28... ♜c8! 28... ♖c6? 29. ♖c5 ♜c8 30. ♜e1 ♖d8 31. ♖d5+ gives more dynamic options. 29. ♖a4 ♖c5 30. ♖f2 30. ♜f3?! g5 31. ♖d7?! f4 (Krasenkow in CBM124) plays into Black's hand. 30... f4 31. ♖×c5 ♜×c5 (D)



32. ♜e1?! With static weaknesses, one should not defend purely passively. So 32. ♜d1! was better, e.g., 32... ♜×e5 33. ♜d7 ♖f7 34. ♜a7 with practical drawing chances in view of White's

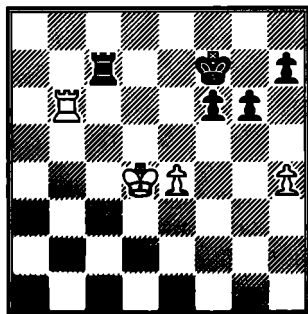
activity. 32... g5 33. ♖d7 33. ♖f3 ♖g7 34. b3?! ♖g6 35. e6 ♖f6+ (Krasenkow). 33... ♖f7 34. b3 h5 and Black's army of ants will roll all over White on the kingside: 35. e6+ ♖f6 36. ♜e4 ♖f5 37. ♜d4 g4 38. ♜d2 h4 39. ♜d4 ♜e5 40. ♜d2 g3+ 41. ♖g2 ♖g4 42. h3+ ♖g5 43. ♜d3 ♜e2+ 44. ♖f1 ♜×a2 45. c5 ♜c2 46. c6 ♜c3 0-1

(3.9) The defender exchanges pawns.

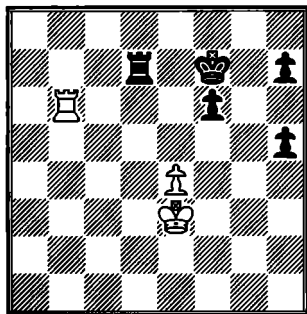
This guideline is often useful in endgames to reduce the winning potential. For example, in a position without pawns, a very large material superiority is usually needed to force a win. Please note that the guideline that the side with a material advantage should exchange pieces is quite bad in this case, and no examples are really needed. Quite often it collides with the guideline that the attacker does not want to exchange his attacking potential. Do not exchange pieces just because you are ahead material! By constantly following this guideline – if the position simply does not warrant exchanges – it is not unlikely that you will lose some of your advantage. But now back to the defender who wants to exchange pawns:

03.14 Rapport – Laznicka

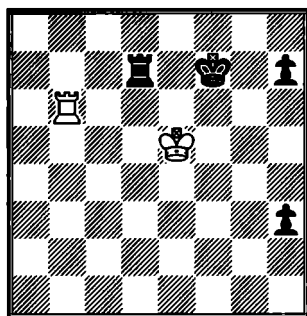
12th ch-EUR Aix-les-Bains 2011 [W] (D)



The young Hungarian grandmaster Richard Rapport gave another demonstration of Dr. Tarrasch's old maxim that all rook endings are drawn by defending actively: **49.h5!**? $\text{E}d7+$ **50.♖e3 g×h5** 50...g5 can also be met by 51.e5 f×e5 52.♖e4 ♞e7 53.♞a6=; 50...♞e7 51.h×g6+ h×g6 52.♖f3 is a theoretical draw because of the reduced number of pawns. (D)

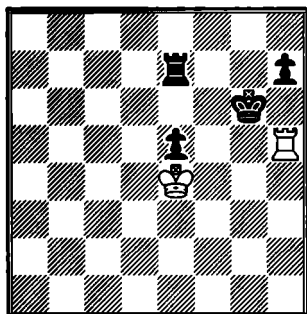


51.e5!! f×e5 **52.♖e4** ♞e7 After 52...h4 53.♖×e5 h3 (D)

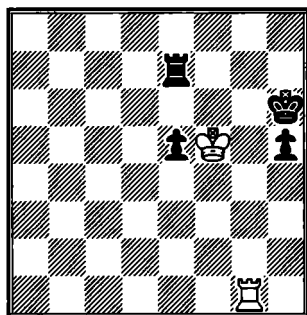


the easiest way is 54.♞b3!? (as 54.♞h6!? $\text{E}d3$ 55.♖e4? even loses to 55...♖g7 56.♞h4 ♞a3 57.♖f5 h5!!-+ and White's rook is in a tragicomic position) 54...h2 55.♞h3 $\text{E}d2$ 56.♖f4 ♖g6 57.♖g3 $\text{E}d3+$ 58.♖×h2=. **53.♞h6 ♖g7** **54.♞×h5 ♖g6** (D)

55.♞h1! The checking distance is far enough. Of course not 55.♞×e5?? $\text{E}×e5+$ 56.♖×e5 ♖g5 57.♖e4 ♖g4 58.♖e3 ♖g3 59.♖e2 ♖g2 and Black's



king has occupied a key square: 60.♖e3 h5 61.♖f4 h4 62.♖g4 h3-+. **55...h5** **56.♞g1+ ♖h6** **57.♖f5!**? (D)



57...♞f7+ After 57...e4 58.♖f6 ♞e8 59.♞g6+ ♖h7 60.♞g7+ ♖h8 61.♞g5 White wins the h-pawn first and the e-pawn later. 57...h4 58.♞g6+ ♖h5 59.♞g5+ ♖h6 60.♞g6+ ♖h7 61.♞g4 h3 62.♞h4+=. **58.♖×e5 h4** **59.♖e4 ♖h5** **60.♞g8 h3** **61.♖e3** ½-½ and a draw was agreed in view of 61...♖h4 62.♖e2 (62.♞h8+ is also playable but not 62.♞g6? h2 63.♞h6+ ♖g3 64.♞g6+ ♖h3 65.♞h6+ ♖g2 66.♞g6+ ♖f1 67.♞h6 ♞f2 68.♞h8 ♖g1 69.♞h7 ♞g2-+) 62...h2 63.♞h8+ ♖g3 64.♞g8+ ♖h3 65.♞h8+ ♖g2 66.♞g8+ ♖h1 67.♞g6=.

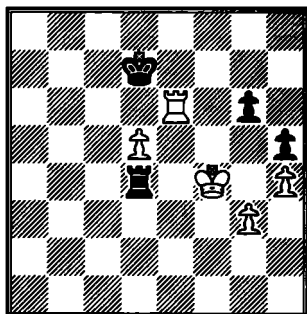
Sometimes the problems are highly tactical:

The Right Exchange

03.15 Onischuk – Safarli

TCh-TUR 2nd League Konya 2011 [W]

(D)



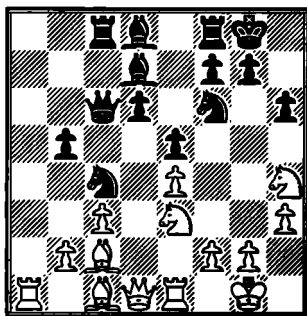
86. ♖f3? This gives Black a miracle escape by exchanging the pawns in the right way. 86. ♖e5? is also wrong because of 86... ♗g4 87. ♗a6 ♗xg3 88. ♗a7+ ♖e8 89. ♖d6 ♗g4=. But 86. ♖e3! does the job: 86... ♗g4 (86... ♗x d5 87. ♗xg6 ♖e7 88. ♗g5 ♖e6 89. ♗x d5 ♖x d5 90. ♖f4+-) 87. ♖f3 with the threat of trading rooks, so 87...g5 is forced, an invitation to exchange pawns, but Black's rook is forced into passivity: 88. ♗e4 gxh4 (88... ♗xe4 89. ♖xe4 gxh4 90. gxh4 ♖d6 91. ♖d4 ♖d7 92. ♖e5 ♖e7 and White wins according to Bähr's Rule as his passed d-pawn has not crossed the a2-f7 diagonal: 93. ♖f5 ♖d6 94. ♖g5 ♖x d5 95. ♖xh5 ♖e6 96. ♖g6 ♖e7 97. ♖g7+-) 89. gxh4 ♗g8 (89... ♗g1 90. ♗e5 ♖d6 91. ♗xh5 ♗d1 92. ♖e4 ♗e1+ 93. ♖f4 ♗f1+ 94. ♖g4 ♗g1+ 95. ♖f5 ♖x d5 96. ♖f6+ ♖d6 97. ♗f5 ♗g8 98. ♖f7 ♗g1 99. h5 ♗h1 100. ♗f6+ ♖e5 101. h6 ♗a1 102. ♖g7+-) 90. ♗e5 ♗h8 91. ♗f5 ♖d6 92. ♖f4 ♖c5 93. ♖g5 ♖d6 94. ♖g6 ♖c5 95. ♗xh5+-; 86. ♗e4? ♗x d5=. **86...g5!** The point of Black's defense. 86... ♗x d5? 87. ♗xg6 ♖e7 88. ♗g5 ♗xg5 89. hxg5 ♖f7 90. ♖c4! ♖g6 91. ♖f4 ♖g7 92. ♖f5 ♖f7 93. ♗b+

♖g7 94. ♖g5+- 87. hxg5 ♗x d5 88. ♗g6 ♖e7 89. ♖f4 ♖f7 90. ♗h6 ♗d4+ 91. ♖f5 ♗d5+ 92. ♖f4 ♗d4+ 93. ♖e5 ♗a4 94. ♗xh5 ♖g6 95. ♗h4 ♗a5+ 96. ♖f4 ♗f5+ ½-½

Exercises

E03.01 Computer Hydra – Adams

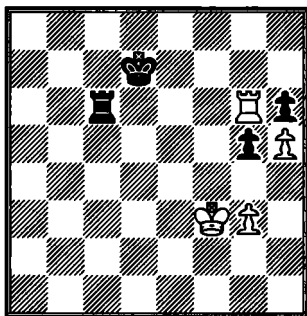
London Man-Machine 2005 [W] (D)



How did the computer exploit the weaknesses in Black's camp?

E03.02 Maryasin – Gunnarsson

European Senior Team Championship Thessaloniki 2011 [B] (D)



To exchange or not to exchange, that is the question.

Chapter 4
Domination

This is a very important strategic theme. You should always try to continue to restrict the enemy forces until they are suffocated and completely dominated. Then in the endgame, *zugzwang* often crowns the strategy. The piece which is most often restricted is the knight, so we start with methods to fight this.

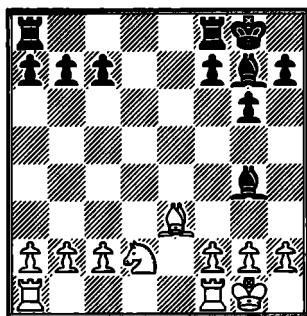
(4.1) Dominating a Knight

(4.1.1) Steinitz's Method of Restriction

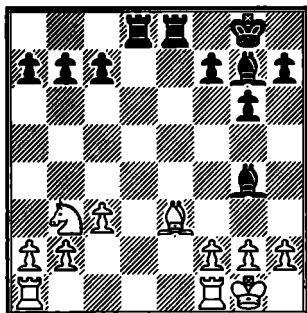
The knight is often a bit clumsy and has problems leaving one complex of squares and reaching another. So one option after the other should be taken away from the knight. The following classic illustrates Steinitz approach:

04.01 Englisch – Steinitz

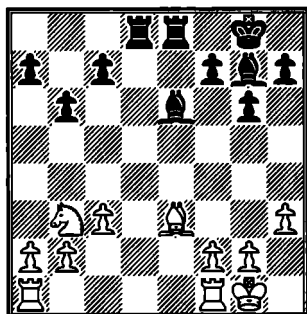
London 1883 [B] (D)



Black has the pair of bishops, is in full control and has the initiative; this is usually a deadly combination: **15...♖ad8** Of course not 15...♗xb2? 16.♖ab1 ♕e5 17.♖xb7 which activates White and gives outposts to his pieces. White's knight must be prevented from reaching greener pastures. **16.c3 ♖fe8** Activating another unit and threatening ♖xe3. **17.♗b3** 17.♗f3 b6 18.♖ad1 c5 is similar to the game. (D)



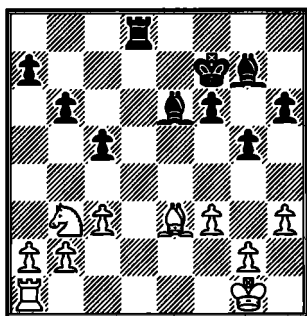
17...b6! Black starts to strengthen the unopposed g4-bishop, restricting both white minor pieces at the same time. A real multi-purpose pawn move! **18.h3 ♕e6** (D)



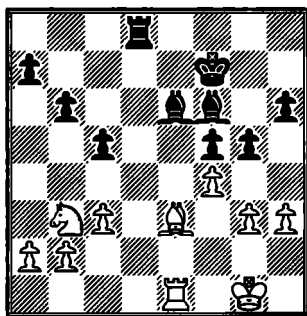
19.♖fd1? An automatic move which is weak. White's knight must try to escape the net with 19.♗d4! when White can still put up tenacious resistance, e.g., 19...♗d5 20.♖fe1 c5 21.♗b5 ♕c6 22.a4! and Black is better but White gets much more counterplay than in the game. But not 22.♗c7? in view of 22...♖xe3! when the bishops show their power: 23.♖xe3 ♕h6 (23...♖c8!?) 24.♖ee1 (24.♖e5? ♗f4 25.♖ae1 ♕xe5 26.♖xe5 ♖d1+ 27.♗h2 ♖d2+) 24...♗f4 25.♗a6 ♕b5 26.♕xc5 hxc5 27.♖ud1 ♖d6+., 22.♗u7 is also an option for White:

Domination

22...Qa4 23.b3 Qd7 (23...Ea8 24.bxa4 Exa7 25.Eac1 Exa4 26.Ec2) 24.Eed1 Qxc3 25.Eac1 Qb2 26.Ec2 Qf6 27.Ecd2 Qe6 28.Qb5 when White can still fight in both cases. 19...c5! Taking away the important d4-square from both white minor pieces and further restricting the knight in particular. 20.Qg5 f6 21.Qf4 Qf7 22.f3 g5 Steinitz uses his whole army to win more and more space everywhere on the board. 23.Exd8 Exd8 24.Qe3 h6 (D)



Now all the black pawns are placed on dark squares to complement the unopposed e6-bishop. In the next step the f-pawn advances to f4. 25.Ee1 f5 26.f4 Qf6 27.g3 (D)



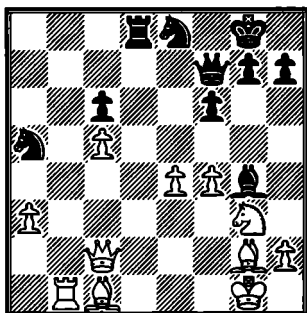
27...a5! With the help of the deadly threat a4-a3, undermining White's queenside, the knight is forced back even further. 28.Qc1 a4 29.a3 Qc4 Finally lassoing the knight. 30.Qf2 For the rest of the game see example 03.10.

(4.1.2) Prophylaxis

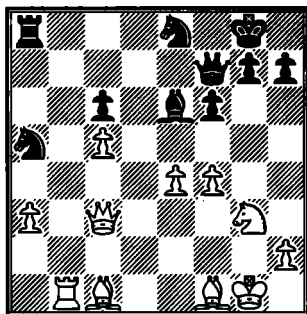
Playing for domination also often uses prophylactic moves:

04.02 Carlsen – Kramnik

London Chess Classic 2009 [W] (D)

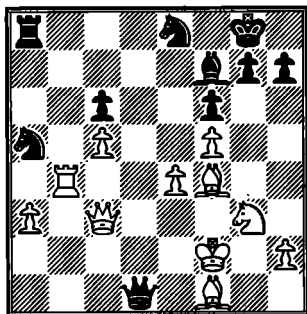


Magnus Carlsen further restricts Black with 35.Qf1! Qe6 36.Qc3 Ea8 (D)



37.Eb4! "Now White is in complete control, with a positional as well as a material advantage. The knight on e8 still has no prospects." (Carlsen in CBM 134) Of course the other knight on a5 is also almost dominated by Carlsen's strategy. 37...Qd7 37...Qb7?! 38.f5 Qa2 39.Qe2 Ea7 40.Qc2+- 38.f5 Carlsen restricts the bishop further. 38...Qf7 39.Qf4 Qd1 40.Qf2 (D)

40...Qb3?! "Desperation, but it was either this or losing slowly without counterplay." (Carlsen) 40...Eh8



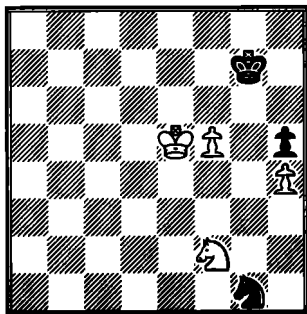
41. ♖e2 ♜d7 42. ♖e3 ♜e7 43. ♞b6
 ♞a8 44. ♖a6+- 41. ♖e2 ♜b1
 42. ♖c4 ♞xa3 43. ♖e2 1-0

(4.1.3) Geometrical Motifs

It is especially helpful to study the geometry of knights carefully. They change the color of the square they stand on with every move and can reach certain squares quickly, while other look so near and yet are so far. They are dangerous tactical pieces but they can also look completely helpless. A great master of fighting against knights is Anatoly Karpov. Study his games to learn the methods of restriction! But now back to the geometry:

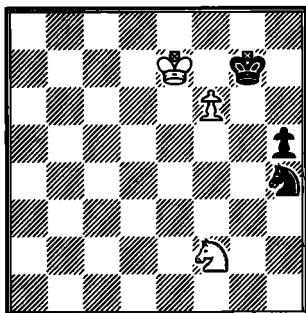
04.03 Markus – Palac

2nd Zlatni Rat Open 2011 [W] (D)

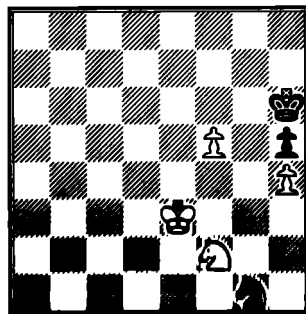


In the endgame, domination can often be seen in pure form: 55. ♖f4! With a

deadly double threat: 56. ♖g5 and 56. ♖e4 followed by 57. ♖e3 to dominate Black's knight. The direct move forward spoils it: 55. ♖e6? ♖f3 56. ♖e7 (56. f6+ ♖f8 57. ♖e4 ♖xh4 58. ♖g5 ♖g6 59. f7 ♖g7 60. ♖d7 ♖f8=) 56... ♖xh4 57. f6+ (D)

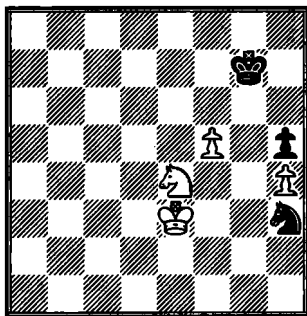


57... ♖g6 (After 57... ♖g8?? 58. f7+ ♖h7 59. ♖e8 [59. f8♖? ♖g6+=] 59... ♖g6 60. ♖h3 h4 the typical deflection 61. ♖f4+- wins) 58. f7 ♖f5+ 59. ♖e6 ♖g7+ 60. ♖e7 ♖f5+=; 55. f6+? ♖f7 56. ♖e4 ♖f3+ 57. ♖f5 ♖xh4+ 58. ♖g5 ♖f3+ 59. ♖xh5 ♖d2= 55... ♖h6 55... ♖f6 56. ♖e4+ ♖f7 57. ♖e3 ♖h3 58. ♖g5+ ♖xg5 59. hxg5 h4 60. ♖f3+-; 55... ♖e2+ 56. ♖g5 ♖g3 57. ♖d1 ♖f7 58. ♖e3 ♖g7 59. ♖d5 ♖f7 60. ♖f6 ♖e2 61. ♖xh5 ♖d4 62. ♖f4 ♖c6 63. ♖g3 ♖g7 64. ♖g5 ♖e5 65. f6+ ♖f7 66. ♖e4 ♖f3+ 67. ♖g4 ♖d4 68. h5 ♖e6 69. ♖f5 ♖d4+ 70. ♖f4 ♖c6 71. ♖g5 ♖e5 72. ♖f5 ♖d7 73. ♖g5+- . 56. ♖e3! (D)

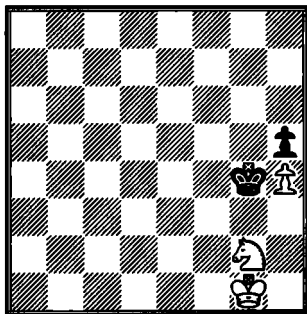


Domination

A typical geometrical pattern to fight against a knight with the king. You should know these patterns by heart and be able to use them intuitively! The knight has no square now but White's knight is in the way at the moment and must be regrouped first: 56...♖g7 57.♗e4 ♖h6 57...♗h3 (D)



58.♗g5 ♗g1 59.♖f2 and the knight is completely dominated and lost: 59...♖f6 60.♖xg1 ♖xf5 61.♖g2 ♖g4 62.♗f3 ♖f4 63.♗h2+- . 58.♗f6 ♗h3 59.♗d5 1-0 and Black resigned in view of 59...♖g7 60.♗f4 ♗g1 (60...♗xf4 61.♖xf4 ♖f6 62.♖e4 ♖f7 63.♖e5 ♖e7 64.f6+ ♖f7 65.♖f5 ♖f8 66.♖g6 ♖g8 67.♖xh5+-) 61.♖f2 ♖f6 62.♖xg1 ♖xf5 63.♗g2 ♖g4 (D)

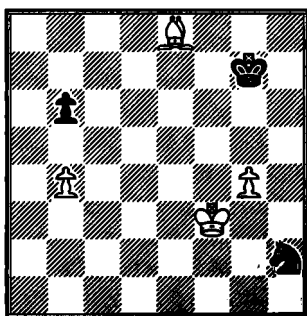


64.♖f2 (64.♖f1? ♖g3 65.♖g1 ♖f3 66.♖h2 ♖g4 is only drawn as White is in *zugzwang* and dominated in his own way.) 64...♖h3 65.♖f3 ♖h2 66.♗f4+- .

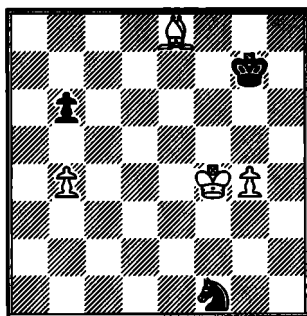
The following example illustrates more geometrical patterns and techniques. This time a bishop dominates the knight:

04.04 Beliavsky – Sebenik

19th Vidmar Memorial Ljubljana 2011 [W] (D)

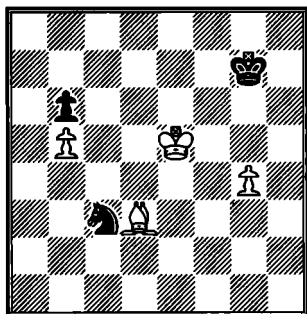


67.♖f4! The typical formation. The king restricts the knight forcefully. 67.♖g3?! is less precise: 67...♗f1+ 68.♖f4 (D)



Another typical pattern, which is usually good against the knight. 68...♗d2 69.♗b5 ♗b1 70.♗d3 ♗c3 71.♖e5 Another typical "diagonal formation." 71...♗a2 72.b5 ♗c3 (D)

and now 73.♗d4 wins (but not 73.♗d6? ♖f6 74.♖c6 ♖g5! 75.♗f5 ♗a4 76.♗d5 [76.♗c2 ♗c3 77.♖xb6 ♗xh5 78.♖xb5 ♖xg4=] 76...♗c3+ 77.♖c4 ♗a4 78.♗c2 ♗c5 79.♗d1 [79.♖f5 ♖xg4 80.♖c6 ♗e6 81.♖xb6

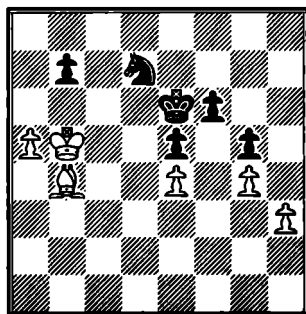


♖d4=] 79...♗e4! 80.♙d5 [80.♗e2
 ♖d6+ 81.♙d5 ♖×b5=] 80...♖c3+
 81.♙c6 ♖×d1 82.♙×b6 ♖c3=)
 73...♗a4 74.♗c2 ♖c5 75.♙d5 ♙f6
 76.♙c6 ♙g5 77.♗d1+-. Domination!
67...♗f1 68.♗b5! ♖d2 68...♗h2
 69.♙g3+- **69.♗d3 ♖b3 70.♙e3**
 The usual restricting pattern again.
70...♖c1 71.♗c4 The typical
 corralling. **71...b5 72.♗d5 1-0** Of
 course not 72.♗×b5?? ♗a2 73.♙d4
 ♖×b4 and the steed escapes: 74.♙c4
 ♖c2 75.♙d3 ♗e1+ 76.♙e2 ♖g2
 77.♙f3 ♗h4+=.

The following fortress can surprisingly be taken by using the sharp endgame weapon *zugzwang*:

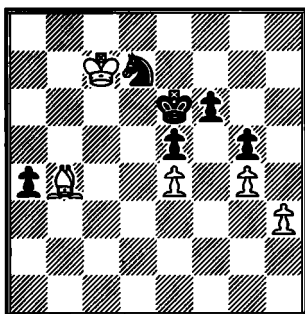
04.05 Anand – Hammer

Arctic Stars Kristiansund 2010 [W] (D)

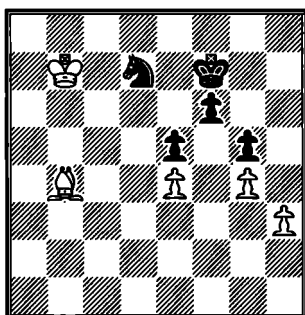


48.a6! Anand opens a road for his king.
48...b×a6+ 49.♙×a6? But now he is

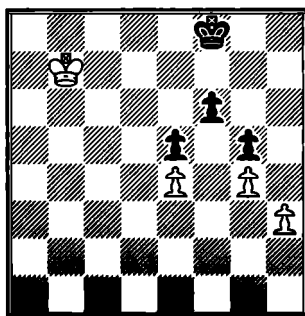
too greedy. He should invade the other
 way: **49.♙c6!** surprisingly blows
 Black's house away: **49...a5 50.♗a3**
 ♖b8+ **51.♙b7 ♖d7 52.♙c7 a4**
53.♗b4 (D)



and Black is in deadly *zugzwang* and
 will lose the knight sooner or later.
49...♙f7 50.♙b7 (D)



50...f5? Hammer throws himself onto
 his own sword. He probably assumed
 that the pawn ending after **50...♗f8!**
51.♗×f8 ♙×f8 (D)

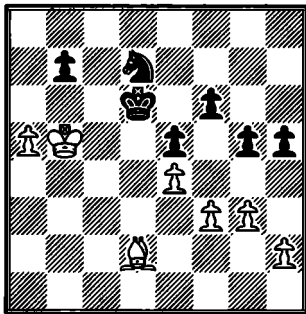


Domination

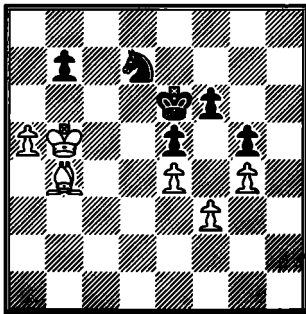
is lost, which in fact would be the case if the h3-pawn were on f3, but as matters are, a counterattack would save him: 52.♖c6 ♗e7 53.♖c7 ♗e6 54.♗d8 ♗d6! 55.♗e8 ♖c5 56.♗e7 ♗d4 57.♗xf6 ♗xe4 58.♗xg5 ♖f3 and Black draws easily as he queens first. 51.exf5 e4 52.♖c6 ♖e5+ 53.♗d5 ♖d3 54.♗d2 ♖f2 55.♗xg5 ♖xh3 56.♗e3 1-0 and Hammer resigned as his knight is dominated.

The following game is very similar, as Yannick Pelletier has pointed out to us. We also use his analysis from CBM 105:

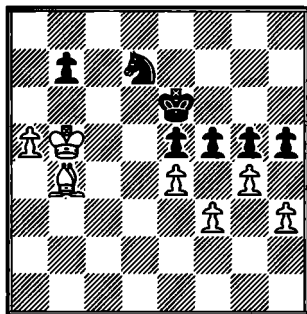
04.06 Pelletier – San Segundo ESP-chT Sanxenxo 2004 [W] (D)



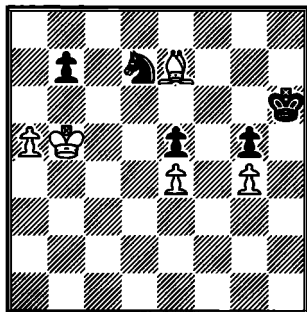
40.♗b4+ ♖e6 41.h3 f5 41...♖f7 loses to 42.g4 h×g4 43.h×g4 ♖e6 (D)



44.a6! h×a6+ 45.♖a6 (45.♖c6!+-) 45...♗f7 46.♗b7+- 42.g4! (D)



Pelletier fixes the g5-weakness on a dark-square. Now he will always be able to overload the defenders as his king can invade via the center or the queenside and the bishop can attack e5 and g5. 42...f×g4 42...h×g4 43.h×g4 f4 44.♖c4 ♖b8 45.♖c5 ♖d7+ 46.♖b5 ♖f7 47.♗d6 ♖e6 48.♗c7 ♖e7 49.♖c4 ♖e6 50.♗d8+- (Pelletier). 43.f×g4 h×g4 44.h×g4 ♗f7 45.♗d2 ♗g6 46.♗c1 ♗h6 47.♗a3 ♗g7 48.♗e7 ♗g6 49.♗d8 ♗h6 50.♖c4 ♗g6 51.♖b4 51.♗d5 wins as well, e.g., 51...♖b8 (51...♖f6+ 52.♗xf6 ♖xf6 53.♗d6+-) 52.♖c5 ♖c6 (52...♖d7+ 53.♗d6 ♖b8 54.♖c7 ♖c6 55.a6+-) 53.a6 ♖xd8 54.a7+- 51...♗h6 52.♖b5 ♗g6 53.♗e7 ♗h6 (D)



54.a6 b×a6+ 55.♖c6! Of course not the greedy 55.♖a6? ♗g6 56.♖b5 ♖f7 (56...♖f6? 57.♗xf6 ♖xf6 58.♖b6+-) 57.♗xμ5 ♖f8 58.♖c6 ♖e6 59.♖c7 ♖μ(-) 59...♖b8+ 56.♖c7 1-0

(4.1.4) The Fischer Endgame

The endgame rook and bishop versus rook and knight is called the Fischer endgame when the side with the bishop has the advantage, as a result of the many instructive games of the American world champion. The following guidelines should help you too see if the side with the bishop is better or not:

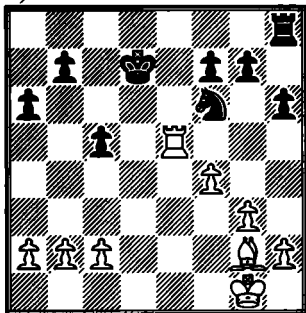
- (1) Rook and bishop usually cooperate as long-range pieces better than rook and knight. Often they benefit from an open position. Furthermore, the rook somewhat compensates for the bishop's handicap of only being able to control squares of one color.
- (2) Pawns only on one wing are often good for the slower knight.
- (3) Fluid pawn structures are often good for the bishop as it can then choose the way to use them to restrict the knight. Broken structures and weak color complexes can help the knight to find outposts.
- (4) The knight always wants to have control so that the knight has time for its slow maneuvers.
- (5) If the bishop has the advantage it will often use *zugzwang*, restriction methods and exchanges to make progress.

So, often the pawns should be placed to complement the bishop and to restrict the knight further, all implemented so that the pawns are not in the way of the bishop. In the following famous classic, Fischer gives an instructive demonstration of these principles:

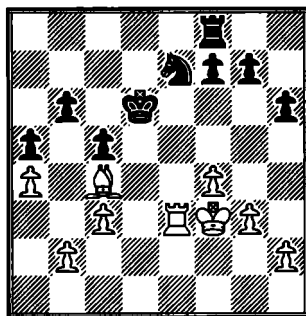
04.07 Fischer – Taimanov

WCh Quarter-finals Vancouver 1971

[B] (D)

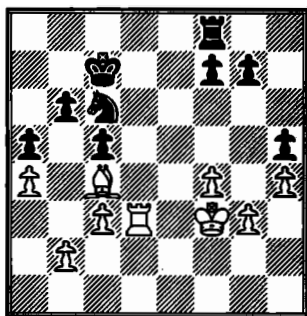


24...b6? This weakens the light-squares too much. Kasparov gives 24...♖d6! 25.a4 (25.♙e3 ♜b8; 25.♙x b7 ♜b8 26.♙x a6 ♜x b2) 25...b5 26.a5 c4 27.c3 (27.♙b7? ♜b8 28.♙x a6? runs into 28...♞d5) 27...♜b8 with good drawing chances. 25.♙f1! Fischer immediately exploits the mistake and increases the pressure on the light-squares. 25...a5 26.♙c4 ♜f8 27.♜g2 ♞d6 28.♜f3 ♞d7 29.♙e3 ♞b8 30.♙d3+ ♜c7 31.c3! Fischer restricts the knight and complements his bishop – a typical attacking strategy. 31...♞c6 32.♙e3 ♞d6 33.a4 ♞e7 (D)

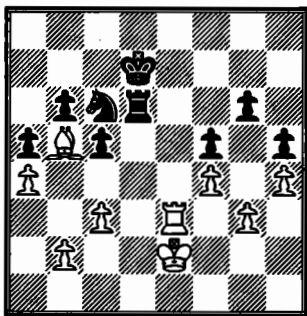


34.h3 Such a move in the “do not rush style” has a strong psychological impact. Black can only sit and wait. 34...♞c6 35.h4 With the plan h5, g4, ♜g3-h4, ♙g followed by ♜g4. 35...h5 36.♙d3+ ♜c7 (D)

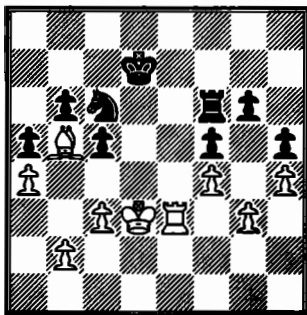
Domination



37. $\text{E}d5!$ Fischer forces Taimanov to place more pawns on light-squares 37... f5 38. $\text{E}d2$ $\text{E}f6$ 39. $\text{E}e2$ $\text{G}d7$ 40. $\text{E}e3$ g6 41. $\text{Q}b5$ $\text{E}d6$ Taimanov's sealed move. 42. $\text{G}e2$ (D)

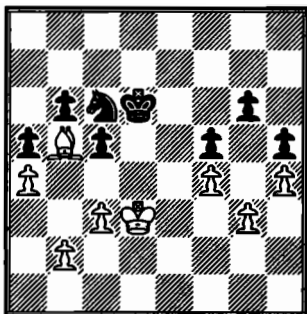


42... $\text{G}d8?$ This allows Fischer to simplify into a won bishop versus knight endgame. Andrew Soltis' suggestion is 42... $\text{E}f6$ 43. $\text{G}d3$ (D)

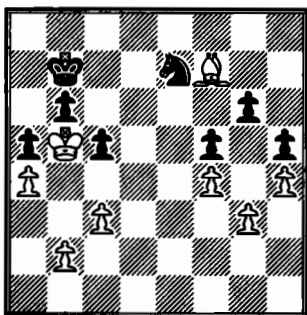


and now not 43... $\text{G}d8?$ (but 43... $\text{E}d6+$ 44. $\text{G}c4$ $\text{E}f6$ when White should be winning in the long run, but matters are not that easy) 44. $\text{Q}xc6!$ $\text{E}xc6$ 45. $\text{G}c4$ $\text{E}d6$

46. $\text{G}b5$ $\text{G}d7$ (46... $\text{E}d2$ 47. $\text{G}xb6$ $\text{E}xb2+$ 48. $\text{G}xc5$ $\text{G}d7$ 49. $\text{E}d3+$ $\text{G}e7$ 50. $\text{E}d6+-$) 47. b3 $\text{G}c7$ 48. c4 $\text{G}d8$ 49. $\text{G}a6$ $\text{E}c6$ 50. $\text{G}b7$ $\text{E}f6$ 51. $\text{E}d3+$ $\text{G}e7$ 52. $\text{G}c7$ $\text{E}e6$ 53. $\text{E}d7+$ $\text{G}e8$ 54. $\text{E}d6$ $\text{E}e3$ 55. $\text{E}xg6$ $\text{E}xb3$ 56. $\text{E}xb6$ $\text{E}b4$ 57. $\text{E}b5$ $\text{E}xa4$ 58. $\text{E}xc5+-$. 43. $\text{E}d3!$ $\text{G}c7$ 44. $\text{E}xd6$ $\text{G}xd6$ 45. $\text{G}d3$ (D)

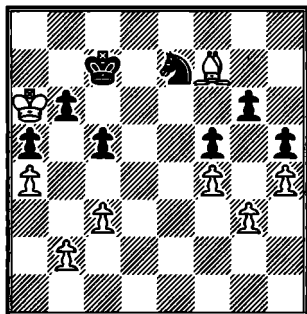


Black would have a fortress if he could transfer his knight to d6, but as he is not in control, he does not find the time for the regrouping. 45... $\text{G}e7$ 46. $\text{Q}e8$ $\text{G}d5$ 47. $\text{Q}f7+$ $\text{G}d6$ 48. $\text{G}c4$ $\text{G}c6$ 49. $\text{Q}e8+$ $\text{G}b7$ 50. $\text{G}b5$ $\text{G}c8$ 51. $\text{Q}c6+$ The hasty 51... $\text{Q}xg6??$ runs into 51... $\text{G}d6*$. 51... $\text{G}c7$ 52. $\text{Q}d5$ $\text{G}e7$ 53. $\text{Q}f7$ $\text{G}b7$ (D)



Now Fischer repeatedly uses the sharp endgame weapon *zugzwang*. 54. $\text{Q}b3$ $\text{G}a7$ 55. $\text{Q}d1$ $\text{G}b7$ 56. $\text{Q}f3+$ $\text{G}c7$ 57. $\text{G}a6$ $\text{G}c8$ Activating the knight with 57... $\text{G}xh8$ 58. $\text{Q}d5$ $\text{G}f6$ 59. $\text{Q}f7$ $\text{G}c4$ does not help as the bishop is far

superior in the coming fight on both wings, e.g., 60.♖xg6 ♜xg3 61.♗e8 ♜e2 62.♗xh5 ♜xf4 63.♖f3 ♜g6 64.h5 ♜e5 65.h6+- . 58.♗d5 ♜e7 59.♗c4 ♜c6 60.♖f7 ♜e7 (D)

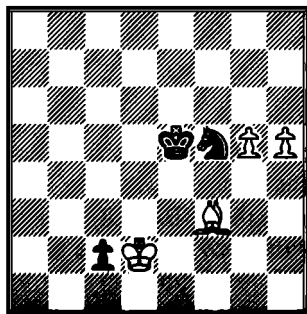


Now comes the final zugzwang: 61.♗e8! ♜d8 62.♗xg6! ♜xg6 63.♜xb6 ♜d7 64.♜xc5 ♜e7 65.b4 axb4 66.cxb4 ♜c8 67.a5 ♜d6 68.b5 ♜e4+ 69.♜b6 ♜c8 70.♜c6 ♜b8 71.b6 1-0

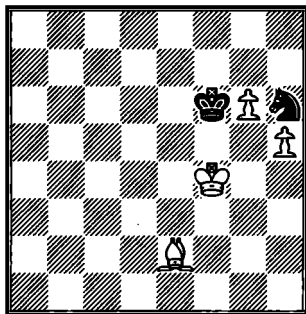
(4.1.5) A Knight Fights against Domination

Against a bishop, the defender can often hope to construct a fortress, especially if a wrong rook's pawn is still on the board, but zugzwang and domination are dangerous typical weapons against this idea:

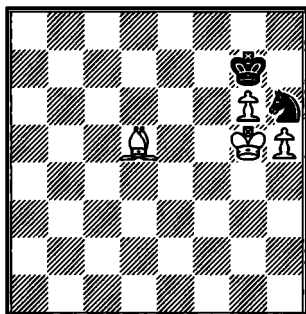
04.08 Inarkiev – Kurnosov
64th ch-RUS HL Taganrog 2011 [B] (D)



68...♜e7? Now the knight will be dominated. The more active 68...♜d6! draws: 69.♜xc2 (69.h6 ♜f7 70.h7 ♜f5 71.♗e4+ ♜xg5=) 69...♜f4 70.g6 ♜f5 71.♗e2 (71.g7 ♜h6=) 71...♜h6 72.♜d3 ♜e5 73.♜e3 ♜f6 74.♜f4 (D)

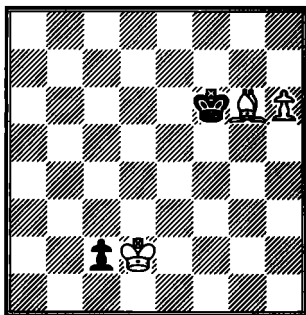


74...♜g8 and Black draws but again only active defense will do. (The passive 74...♜g7? is insufficient, e.g., 75.♜e5 ♜f7+ 76.♜e6 ♜h6 77.♗d1 ♜g8 78.♗c2 ♜h6 79.♗b3 ♜g4 80.♜f5 ♜h6+ 81.♜g5 ♜h8 82.♗d5 ♜g7 (D)



83.♗e6 – domination by corralling – 83...♜h8 84.♜f6+- .) 75.♜e4 ♜h6 76.♜d5 ♜g8 77.♜d6 ♜h6 78.♗c4 ♜g4 79.♗b3 ♜e3 (79...♜e5? 80.♗c2 ♜f3 81.♗f5+-) 80.♜d7 ♜f5 81.♗d1 ♜g7 82.♗e2 ♜e6 83.♜e8 ♜f4 84.♜f8 ♜xg6+ 85.♜g8 ♜e7+ 86.♜h7 ♜g5 87.♜g7 ♜f5+= 69.h6 Of course not 69.g6? ♜g8 70.♜xc2 ♜h6=. 69...♜g6 69...♜f5 70.♗h5 ♜xg5 71.h7+-; 69...♜e6 70.♗h5+- 70.♗h5 ♜h8 70...♜f5 71.♗xg6+ ♜xg6 72.♜xc2+- 71.g6 ♜xg6 72.♗xg6 ♜f6 (D)

Domination



73. ♖h5 1-0 This domination of the king will lead to a decisive *zugzwang* so Black resigned. The greedy 73. ♖xc2? blows it after 73... ♜f7 74. ♖h7 ♜f6=

(4.2) Dominating a Bishop

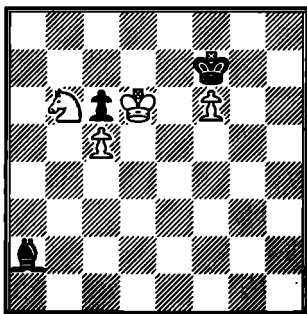
(4.2.1) Knight Dominates Bishop

(4.2.1.1) Domination Duel in the Pure Endgame

The side with the knight always wants to have full control and this is very important to play the domination game:

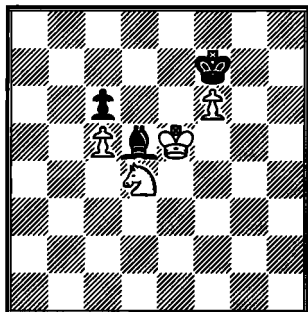
04.09 Anand – Topalov

20th Amber Blindfold Monaco 2011 [W] (D)

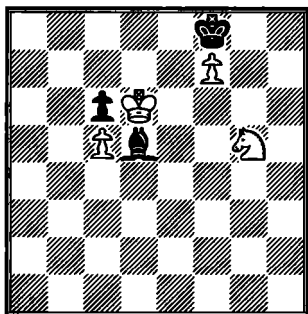


Anand's job is not easy despite the reduced material as the bishop is supe-

rior to the knight in open positions: 63. ♜xc6? Anand gives up his passed f-pawn too early and frees the bishop from its duty of defending the c6-pawn. He should first bring his knight to the kingside. As he has full control of the situation, he has time for the long maneuvering required: 63. ♖d7 ♖d5 (63... ♖e6 64. ♜xc6+-) 64. ♜e5 ♜e8 65. ♖b8 ♖g2 66. ♖a6 ♜f7 67. ♖b4 ♖h1 68. ♖c2 ♖d5 69. ♖d4 (D)

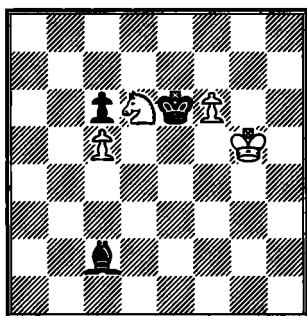


and Black will be overrun sooner or later, e.g., 69... ♜e8 70. ♖e6 ♖c4 71. ♖g5 ♜d7 (71... ♜f8 72. ♜d6 ♖d5 73. f7 (D)

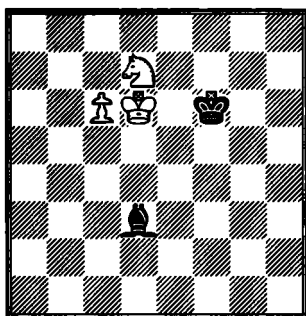


and Black is in *zugzwang*: 73... ♖g2 74. ♜e6+-.) 72. ♜f5 ♖d3+ 73. ♖e4 ♜e8 74. ♜e5 ♜d7 (74... ♜f7 75. ♖g5+ ♜f8 76. ♜d6 ♖b5 77. f7+-) 75. ♖g3 ♖c4 76. ♖f5 ♖d5 77. ♖d6 ♖b3 78. ♜f5 ♖c2+ 79. ♜g5 ♜e6 (D)

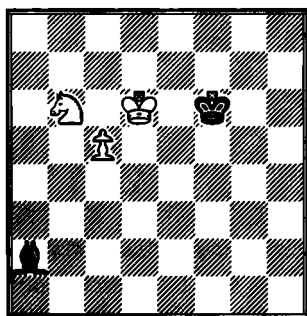
and now White uses the principle of two weaknesses to win: 80. ♖h7 ♖e4



81. $\text{d}8+$ $\text{c}6$ 82. $\text{f}6$ $\text{c}6$ 83. $\text{f}7+-$
 63... $\text{c}6$ $\text{f}6$ 64. $\text{c}6$ (D)



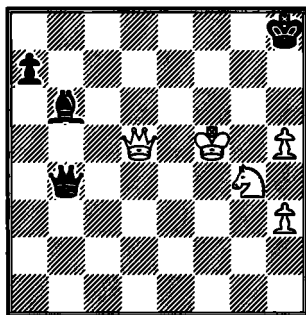
In the next example we start a bit earlier, so as not to miss the beginning of the mating attack that comes out of the blue:



64... $\text{a}6!$ The right way to stop the pawn. 64... $\text{a}6?$ runs into 65. $\text{d}7+$ $\text{f}7$ 66. $\text{c}6$ $\text{a}4$ 67. $\text{e}5+-$; 64... $\text{f}7?$ 65. $\text{c}6$ $\text{a}6$ 66. $\text{c}7$ $\text{a}5$ 67. $\text{d}7+-$. 65. $\text{c}6$ $\text{a}3?$ This runs up against a beautiful refutation. 65... $\text{a}4!$ was the only defense as given by Golubev in *Chess Today* 3777: 66. $\text{d}5+$ (66. $\text{c}7$ $\text{a}6$ 67. $\text{d}7$ (67. $\text{d}7+$ $\text{f}7$ 68. $\text{c}5$ $\text{a}8=)$ 67... $\text{e}5!$ 68. $\text{c}4+$ $\text{d}5$ 69. $\text{d}6$ $\text{a}6=)$ 66... $\text{f}7$ 67. $\text{c}7$ $\text{a}5$ 68. $\text{b}6$ $\text{e}8!$ and the bishop cannot be dominated. 66. $\text{d}7+$! (D)

and Black's forces are dominated: 66... $\text{g}7$ 66... $\text{f}7$ 67. $\text{e}5+-$; 66... $\text{f}5$ 67. $\text{c}5+-$ 67. $\text{c}5$ 1-0 and Topalov resigned in view of 67... $\text{a}5$ 68. $\text{e}7$ $\text{a}8$ 69. $\text{d}8$ $\text{a}5$ 70. $\text{c}7$ $\text{f}7$ 71. $\text{d}7+-$.

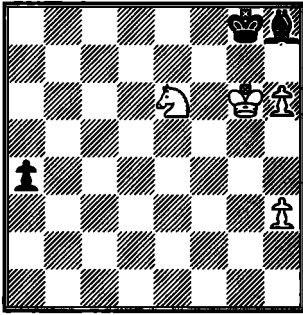
04.10 Cordova – Guimaraes
 Zonal 2.4 - Open Araruama 2011 [B] (D)



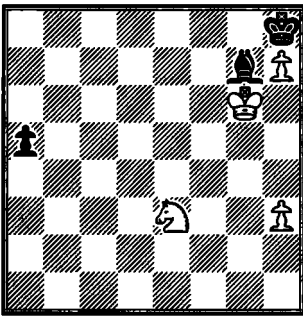
Even an exchange of queens is no insurance against an attack: 75... $\text{c}5?!$ 75... $\text{f}8+$ 76. $\text{e}4$ $\text{b}4+$ draws easily. 76. $\text{c}5$ $\text{a}5$ 77. $\text{g}6$ Contrary to the middlegame, in the endgame the king often joins its attacking forces. 77... $\text{d}4$ 77... $\text{a}8?$ 78. $\text{h}6$ $\text{a}5$ 79. $\text{e}5$ $\text{a}6$ 80. $\text{f}6$ $\text{a}4$ 81. $\text{c}4$ $\text{g}8$ 82. $\text{g}6+-$ 78. $\text{h}6$ 78. $\text{h}6$ $\text{a}5$ 79. $\text{f}7+$ $\text{g}8$ 80. $\text{h}6$ $\text{f}8$ (even 80... $\text{a}4$ is playable: 81. $\text{g}5$ $\text{h}8$ [81... $\text{a}3?$ 82. $\text{h}7+$ $\text{f}8$ 83. $\text{e}6+$ $\text{e}7$ 84. $\text{d}4$ $\text{a}2$ 85. $\text{h}8$ $\text{a}1$ $\text{g}8$ 86. $\text{d}5+-$] 82. $\text{e}6$ (D)

82... $\text{a}6!$ The surprising point. [82... $\text{a}3??$ 83. $\text{h}7+$ 84. $\text{f}6$ $\text{h}7$

Domination

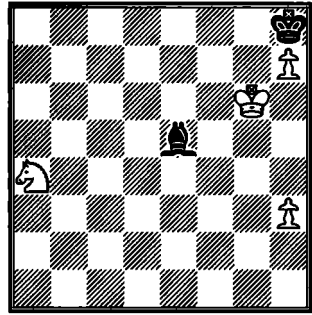


84. ♖g5 a3 85. ♘d4 [85. ♖f8+ ♖h8
86. h7 ♖g7 87. ♘e6+ ♖h7 88. ♘d4 a2
89. ♘c2=] 85... a2 86. ♘c2 ♖g8=
81. ♘d8 ♖c3 82. h7 ♖h8 (82... a4?
83. ♘e6+ ♖e7 84. ♘g7+-) 83. ♘e6+
(83. ♖f7 ♖d4 84. h8♙+ ♖h8 85. ♘d6
[85. ♘xh8? a4 +- backfires completely]
85... a4 86. ♘b5=) 83... ♖e7 84. ♘c5 ♖c3=
78... a5 79. h7 ♖g7 80. ♘e3 (D)



80... a4? Black becomes impatient. The
bishop has to fight the domination duel
with 80... ♖e5! 81. ♘c4 (81. ♘g4
♖g7=) 81... ♖c7 82. ♘d2 a4 (82... ♖e5
83. ♘e4 ♖f4=) 83. ♘e4 ♖f4 84. ♘c5
♖e5 (84... a3? 85. ♘e6 a2 86. ♘d8 a1♙
87. ♘f7*) 85. ♘xa4 (D)

85... ♖d4! Domination! 86. h4 ♖f2
87. h5 ♖d4 88. h6 ♖e3 89. ♘c3 ♖h6
90. ♘d5 (90. ♖xh6 stalemate)
90... ♖g5= 81. ♘c4 1-0 and Black
resigned in view of 81... a3 82. ♘d6 a2
83. ♘f7*.



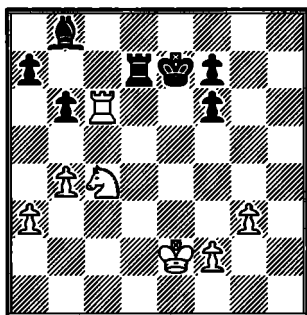
(4.2.1.2) The Andersson Endgame

The endgame rook and knight against
rook and bishop, in which the side with
the knight has the advantage, is
sometimes called “The Andersson
Endgame” as a result of the many
impressive victories of the famous
Swedish grandmaster (when the side
with bishop has the advantage, it is
sometimes called the “Fischer
endgame” – see 04.07). The following
guidelines shall help you to determine
if the knight has the advantage:

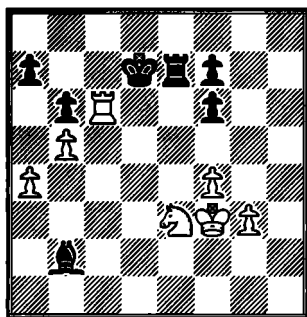
- (1) The side with the knight has full
control, so that the knight has time for
its maneuvers;
- (2) The bishop is restricted by its own
pawns or “hits only the air”;
- (3) The color complex not controlled
by the bishop is weak; and
- (4) The knight finds strong outpost
squares because of the pawn structure.
Often a broken pawn structure favors
the knight, whereas a fluid one favors
the bishop.

So the following position is better for
White as he has full control, Black’s
structure is broken and the light-
squares in his camp are weak:

04.11 Moiseenko – Goloshchapov
UKR-ch Kharkov 2004 [W] (D)



32. ♖e3! ♔e5 33. f4 ♚b2 34. a4
♜d8 35. b5 ♞e7 36. ♜f3 ♜d7? This
destroys the harmony in Black's camp.
After 36... ♞d7 (Mikhalevski) it is
not clear if White can convert his
advantage. (D)

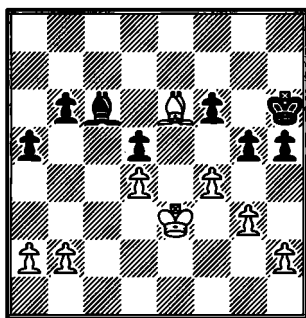


37. ♜c4! Now the bishop is so
restricted that it can be hunted,
allowing White to invade: 37... ♚a1
After 37... ♚c3 White transforms one
advantage into another with 38. ♜xb6+
a×b6 39. ♞xc3± (Mikhalevski) as
Black cannot activate his pieces.
38. ♞d6+ ♜e8 39. ♞d1 ♚c3
40. ♜d6+ ♜f8 41. ♜f5 ♞e8
42. ♞d7 ♞a8 43. ♜h6 ♜g7
44. ♜xf7 a6 45. ♜d6+ ♜g8
45... ♜g6 46. g4 a×b5 47. ♜f5+
(Mikhalevski) 46. ♜g4 a×b5
47. a×b5 1-0

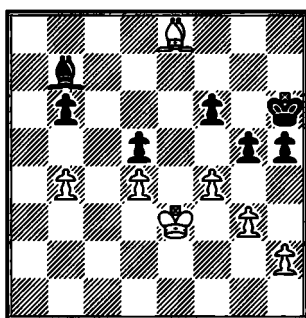
(4.2.2) Bishop dominates bishop.

Here the attacker will often put his
pawns on the same color as the
defending bishop to restrict it:

04.12 Lopez – San Segundo
ESP-ch Gp B Cala Mencia 2001 [W] (D)

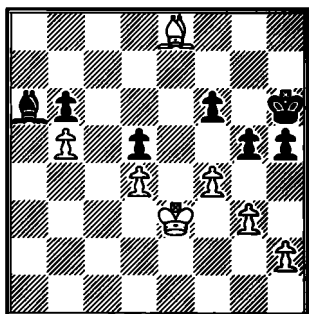


34. ♚f7! At first the king is forced to
remain passive. 34... ♚b7 35. ♚e8
♚a8 36. a3 ♚b7 37. b4 a×b4
38. a×b4 (D)

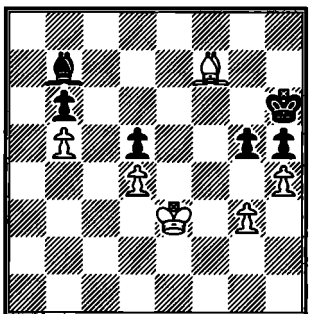


38... ♚a6! After 38... g4? 39. ♚d7!
(39. b5? ♚c8 40. ♚f7 [40. ♚c6 ♚e6=]
40... ♚d7 41. ♚xd5 ♚xb5 42. ♚f7 ♜g7
43. ♚xh5 f5 44. d5 ♚d7 45. ♜d4
♜f6=). Black's bishop is completely
dominated. 39... ♜g7 40. b5 ♜f7 41. ♚f5
♜f8 42. ♜f2 ♜g7 43. ♜g2 ♜h6 44. h3
g×h3+ 45. ♜h2 ♜g7 46. ♜xh3 ♜h6
47. ♜h4+- 39. b5! (D)

Domination

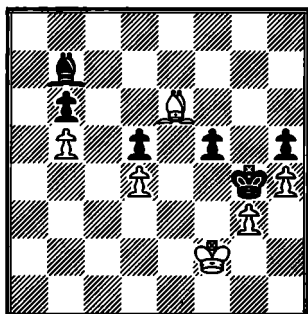


Often it is a strong attacking strategy to put the pawns on the squares of the bishops to restrict the defender further. 39...Qc8 40.Qf7 Qb7? 40...Qd7 was the last chance to fight and exploits the typical disadvantage of the strategy of putting the pawns on the same color as the bishop. 41.fxg5+ Qxg5?! After 41...fxg5!? White has to act very precisely in view of the drawish nature of same-color bishop endings, e.g., 42.h4 (D)



Here it is good to place the pawn on a dark square to fix the h5-weakness on a light square: 42...Qc8 (42...g×h4 43.g×h4 Qc8 44.Q×d5 Qg6 45.Qf3 Qd7 46.Qc6 Qg4 47.Qe4 Qf6 48.Qd5 Qe7 49.Qe5+-) 43.Q×d5 Qg6 44.h×g5 Q×g5 45.Qe4 Qf6 (45...Qg4 46.Qe5 Q×g3 47.Qd6 h4 48.Qc7 Qg4 49.Q×b6 Qf3 50.Q×f3 Q×f3 51.Qc6 h3 52.b6+-) 46.Qc6 Qe6 47.Qc4 Qc4 (47...Qg4 48.Qd5

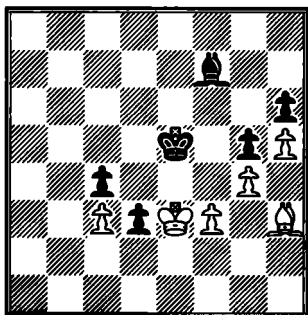
Qe7 49.Qc6 Qd8 50.Qe5 Qe7 51.d5 Qe2 52.d6+ Qd8 53.Qf4 Qd3 54.Qf3 Qd7 55.Qe5 Qg6 56.Qc6+ Qd8 57.Qe6 Qd3 58.Qf3 Q×b5 59.Q×h5+-) 48.Q×h5 Q×b5 49.Qd5 Qf5 50.Qf3 Qf1 51.Qc6 b5 52.Qc5 Qc4 53.g4+ Qf4 54.Qd1 Qe3 55.d5+- . 42.Qe6 f5 43.h4+ Qg4 44.Qf2 1-0 (D)



and Black resigned as his king and bishop are dominated after 44...Qa8 45.Qc8+-.

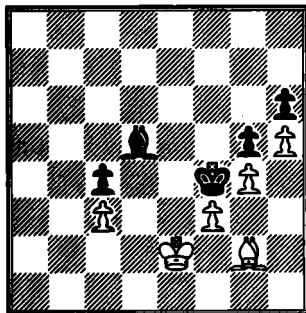
But the attacker can also put the pawns on the other color, especially if the defender has many pawns fixed on the same color as the bishops:

04.13 Edouard – Haimovich Biel MTO Open 2011 [B] (D)



In bishop endings fortresses often play an important role. At first sight this seems to be a case in point. But this is deceptive. Black takes advantage of the

fact that White's bishop looks like an overgrown pawn with **84...d2!!** Opening an inroad is more important than the mighty protected passed pawn. **85.♖xd2** 85.f4+ does not help either: 85...gxf4+ 86.♖xd2 ♔d5 87.♖e2 (87.g5 h×g5 88.h6 ♔g8 89.♔f1 ♖f6→) 87...♖f6 88.♖f1 ♖g5 89.♖f2 ♖h4 90.♔f1 ♖×g4 91.♔e2+ f3 92.♔d1 ♖×h5 93.♔xf3+ ♔xf3 94.♖xf3 ♖g5 95.♖e4 h5 96.♖d4 h4→. **85...♖f4** **86.♖e2** 86.♔f1 ♖×f3 87.♔e2+ ♖f4 88.♔d1 ♔e6 89.♔e2 ♔×g4 90.♔×c4 ♔×h5→ **86...♔d5** **87.♔g2** (D)

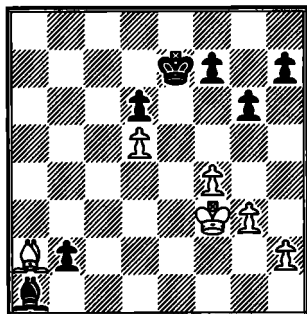


87.♖f2 ♔xf3 88.♔f1 ♔×g4 89.♔×c4 ♔×h5→ **87...♖g3** The king attacks the overgrown g2-pawn. **88.♔f1** After 88.♔h1 ♖h2 a tragicomic picture arises. The bishop in the corner is a sorry sight. 89.f4 ♔×h1 90.f×g5 h×g5 91.♖e3 ♔d5 92.h6 ♔g8 93.♖e4 ♖g3 94.♖f5 ♖h4 95.♖g6 ♖×g4 96.♖g7 ♖h5 97.♖×g8 ♖×h6→ **88...♔xf3+** **89.♖d2** 89.♖e3 ♔×g4 90.♔×c4 ♔×h5 91.♔d5 ♔g4 92.c4 h5 93.c5 h4 94.c6 h3 95.c7 ♔c8 96.♖d4 g4 97.♖e5 h2 98.♔e6 h1♖ 99.♔×c8 ♖c6→ **89...♔×g4** **90.♔×c4 ♔×h5** **91.♔d5 ♔e8** **92.c4 h5** **93.c5 h4** **94.c6 h3** **95.♖e2** 95.c7 ♔d7 96.♖e3 g4→ **95...g4** **96.♖f1 ♖h2** **97.♔e6** 97.c7 ♔d7 98.♔b7 g3 99.c8♖ ♔×c8 100.♔×c8 g2→→

97...g3 **98.c7 ♔b5+** **99.♖e1 ♔a6** 0-1 and White resigned in view of 100.c8♖ (100.♔c4 ♔c8→) 100...♔×c8 101.♔×c8 g2→.

The following example is another tragicomicomedy; pure opposite-color bishop endings have a very large drawish tendency, but only if the defending bishop has scope of course:

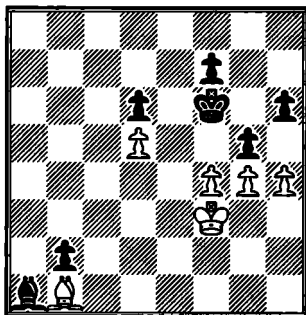
04.14 Petrovic – Zivkovic
25th Belgrade Trophy Obrenovac 2011
[B] (D)



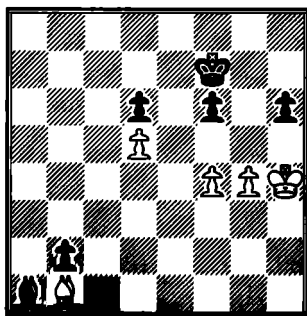
42...♖f6? Taking Black to the brink of an abyss. 42...b1♖ 43.♔×b1 h5 (Baburin) is the easiest way to draw. **43.♔b1!** "Fritz claims that Black is slightly better, but Black is actually lost! His bishop's only function is to protect the b-pawn, but nobody will attack it anyway." (Alex Baburin in *Chess Today* #4053) **43...h6** **44.♖e4 ♖e7** **45.g4 ♖f6** Erecting a pawn wall with 45...f6 46.♖d4 ♖d7 47.♖c4 ♖c7 48.♖b5 ♖b7 is handled by Baburin's 49.h4 (Of course not 49.♔×g6? b1♖+ 50.♔×b1 ♔b2=) 49...f5 50.g×f5 g×f5 51.h5 ♖c7 52.♖a6+-. After 45...♖d7 White opens a path into the kingside with 46.g5 h×g5 (46...h5 47.f5 ♖e7 48.f×g6 f×g6 49.h4 ♖d7 50.♖d4 ♖c7 51.♖c4 ♖b6 52.♔×g6+-) 47.f×g5 ♖e7 48.♖f4 ♖f4 49.♖g4 ♖g7 50.h4 ♖g8 51.h5 ♔×h5+ (51...♖g7 52.h6+ ♖h7 53.♖f4 ♖g8 54.♖e3 ♖h7

Domination

55.♔d4 f5 56.gxf6 ♖xh6 57.♚c4 g5
 58.♔d4+-) 52.♚xh5 ♖g7 53.♖g4
 ♚f8 54.♚f5 ♖g7 55.♚e4 ♖g6
 56.♚f4+ ♖g7 57.♚f5+- . **46.♔d4!**
g5 Now Black cannot close the
 kingside anymore. His only choice was
 between Scylla and Charybdis as after
 46...♚e7 47.♚c4 White invades on the
 queenside: 47...♔d7 (47...g5 48.f5 ♚f6
 49.♚b5 ♚e5 50.♚c6 f6 51.h3+-)
 48.♚b5 ♚c7 49.♚a6+- . **47.♚e4**
♖g6 48.♚f3+ ♚f6 48...♖g7 49.h3
 f6 (49...♖g8 50.h4 f6 51.fxg5 fxg5
 52.hxg5 hxg5 53.♚e4 ♖g7 54.♚f5
 ♚h6 55.♚e6+-) 50.♚e4 ♖g6 51.h4.
 This puts Black into fatal *zugzwang*.
 51...gxh4 52.♚f3+ f5 53.gxf5+ ♚f6
 54.♚g4+- **49.h4!!** (D)



And the opening of the kingside decides
 the day: **49...gxh4 49...gxh4 50.♚xf4**
 h5 51.gxh5 ♖g7 52.♚g5+- **50.♚g2**
♖g7 51.♚h3 f6 51...♖g8 52.♚xh4
 ♚h8 53.♚h5 ♖g7 54.g5 hxg5 55.fxg5
 ♖g8 56.♚h6 ♚h8 57.g6 fxg6
 58.♚xg6+- **52.♚xh4 ♚f7** (D)



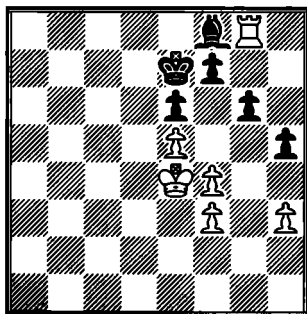
53.g5? White rushes. His king must
 advance first: 53.♚h5 ♖g7 54.g5
 hxg5 55.fxg5 fxg5 (55...f5 56.g6 ♚f6
 57.♚h6+-; 55...♚f7 56.g6+ ♖g7
 57.♚g4+-) 56.♚xg5 (Baburin)
 56...♚f7 57.♚f5 ♚e7 58.♚g6. White
 has reached a key square. The pieces
 in the southwest corner play no role.
 This can be treated as a pawn endgame.
 58...♚e8 59.♚f6 ♚d7 60.♚f7 ♚d8
 61.♚e6 ♚c7 62.♚e7+- **53...hxg5+**
54.fxg5 ♚f8?? After 54...fxg5+
 55.♚xg5 ♖g7! Black can win the fight
 for the opposition and hold the
 position: 56.♚g4 ♖g8= (Baburin).
 But not 56...♚f6? 57.♚f4 ♖g7 58.♚g5
 ♚f7 59.♚f5 ♚e7 60.♚g6+-
 (Baburin); we can add that 56...♚f8
 draws as well as 57.♚h5 can be met
 by 57...♚f7=.) **55.g6 ♖g7 56.♚h5**
1-0

(4.2.3) Rook dominates bishop.

Especially in the endgame a rook is
 much stronger than a bishop. But when
 the pawns help the bishop, fortresses
 do arise:

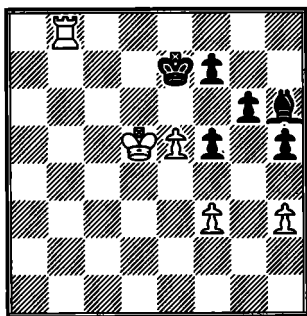
04.15 McShane – Danin

9th Aeroflot Open A Moscow 2010
 [W] (D)

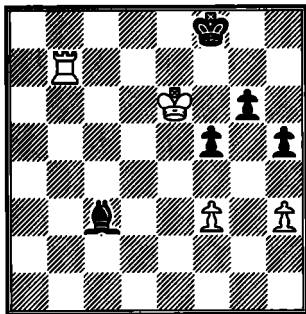


White cannot win, but Luke McShane
 tried hard with **55.f5!** to open the

gates: 55...exf5+ 56.♔d5 ♖h6
57.♞b8 (D)

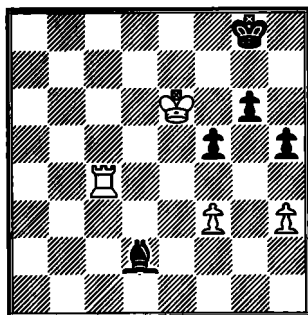


57...♖g5? The d8-h4 diagonal is too short. We could not find a win against 57...♖d2!, for example, 58.♞c8 ♖f4 59.♞c4 ♖g3 60.♞b4 ♖e1 61.♞b7+ ♖f8 62.e6 fxe6+ 63.♖xe6 ♖c3 (D)

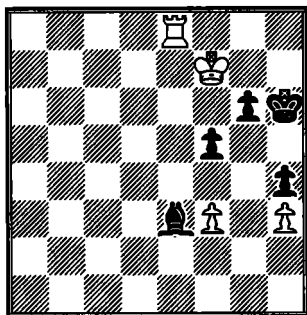


and Black's bishop will defend on the long diagonal forever. 58.♞b7+ ♖f8 59.e6 fxe6+ 60.♖xe6 ♖g8 61.♞b4 61.♞c7 wins as well: 61...♖f8 62.♞c4 ♖g7 63.h4 ♖e3 64.♞c7+ ♖h6 65.♖f7 g5 66.♞c6+ ♖h7 67.hxg5 ♖xg5 68.♖e6 ♖g6 69.♖e5+- 61...♖d2 61...f4 62.♞b7 ♖h4 63.♖e5 ♖g5 64.♞b1 ♖g7 65.♞g1+- 62.♞c4! (D)

The rook dominates the bishop in typical style. It cannot reach the all-important long diagonal. 62...♖g7 63.♞c7+ ♖h6 64.♖f6 h4! Normally the defender should not place his pawns on the same color as the bishop



as the dominance of the rook on the other color complex increases. But in this case Black has no good alternative: 64...♖g5+ 65.♖f7 ♖e3 66.♞c4 f4 67.♖f6 ♖d2 68.♞c8 ♖h7 69.♖g5+- 65.♞c8 ♖g5+ 66.♖f7 ♖e3 67.♞e8 (D)



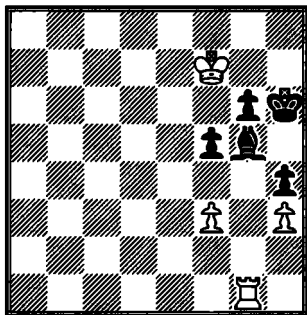
67...♖d2?!

Now McShane can stop all counterplay. 67...♖d4 was much more tenacious: 68.f4 (68.♞g8? ♖g5 69.♞xg6+ ♖f4 is of course not in the spirit of White's strategy as he wants to keep full control.) 68...g5 69.♞d8 ♖b2 70.♞d6+ ♖h5 71.♞d5 ♖c1 72.♖f6 gx f4 73.♞xf5+ ♖h6 74.♞c5 ♖e3 (74...♖d2 75.♞c8 ♖h7 76.♖e5 ♖e3 77.♖e4 ♖g6 78.♞g8+ ♖f7 79.♞g4+-) 75.♞c4 ♖h5 76.♞e4 ♖d2 77.♞e2 ♖e3 78.♖f5 ♖h6 79.♖g4 ♖h6 80.♞h2 ♖h6 (80...♖f6 81.♖f3 ♖c5 82.♞h4+ ; 80...♖h7 81.♞a2

Domination

♖g7 82.♟f3 ♖g6 83.♞a6+ ♖g7 (83...♟f7 84.♞h6+-) 84.♞e6+-) 81.♞c2 ♖g6 (81...♖g7 82.♞a2 ♟f6 83.♞g2 ♖e5 84.♟f3+-) 82.♞e2 ♟f6 83.♞g2 ♖e5 84.♟f3 ♖b6 85.♞g5+ ♟f6 86.♞h5 ♖e3 87.♞xh4+-.

68.♞e2 ♖c1 69.♞g2 ♖g5 After 69...g5 70.♟f6 Black first loses a pawn first and then the game, e.g., 70...g4 71.hxg4 fxg4 72.fxg4 ♖g5+ 73.♟f5 ♖d8 (73...♖c1 74.g5+ ♟h5 75.g6 h3 76.g7 hxg2 77.g8♟+-) 74.♞d2 ♖e7 75.♞d7+- . **70.♞g1! (D)**



Putting Black in deadly *zugzwang*.

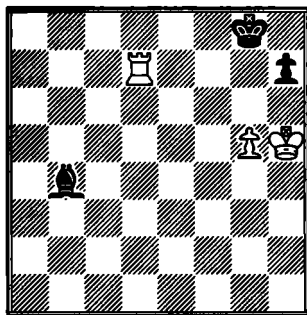
70...♟h5 71.♖g7 ♖h6+ 72.♟f6 1-0

Matters can become quite complicated and require long maneuvers. The following position was thought to be drawn until Noam Elkies proved in 1993 that White always wins:

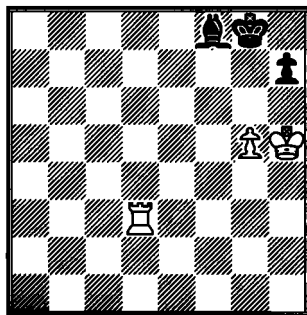
04.16 Mastrovasilis – Potapov

12th ch-EUR Aix-les-Bains 2011 [W] (D)

75.♖g4! White must combine the following plans: to invade with the king via f6 or h6 or play the advance g5-g6 to invade via g6. But first the bishop must be dominated. The immediate 75.g6? is too early as Black's king can



leave the dangerous corner: 75...hxg6+ 76.♖xg6 ♟f8! =; 75.♟h6?! can be met by 75...♖f8+. **75...♖c3 76.♞b7 ♖d4 77.♟f5 ♖c3 78.♞b3 ♖d4 79.♞b8+ ♟f7 80.♞d8 ♖c3 81.♞d7+ ♖g8 82.♖g4 ♖b2 82...♖b4!?** is more tenacious, but White will win in any case, e.g., 83.♟f5 ♖a5 (83...♖c3 84.♞d3 ♖b2 85.♖g4+-) 84.♞d5 ♖b4 85.♞d4 ♖a3 86.♞d3 ♖b4 (86...♖b2 87.♖g4 ♖g7 88.♞d8+ ♟f7 89.♖h5 ♖f8 90.♞d7+ ♖e7 91.♟h6+-) 87.♟f6 ♖a5 88.♞b3 ♖d8+ 89.♟f5 ♖a5 90.♖g4 ♖d2 91.♟h5 ♖f4 92.♞b5 ♖d6 93.♖g4 ♖a3 94.♟f5 ♖d6 95.♟f6 ♖c7 96.♞d5 ♖b6 97.♞d7 ♖a5 98.♞g7+ ♟h8 99.♟f7+- . **83.♞d3 ♖g7 84.♟h5 ♖f8 (D)**



84...♖b2 85.♞d8+ ♖g7 86.♞d7+ ♟h8 87.g6 (87.♟h6?! is met by 87...♖g7+) 87...h6 88.♖xh6 ♖g7+ 89.♖g5 ♖c3 and now 90.g7+ wins quickest as

Black's king cannot leave the dangerous corner: 90...♖h7 91.♖f7 ♘d4 92.g8♙+ ♜xg8 93.♜g6 ♘g1 94.♖f1 ♘h2 95.♖f2 ♘g3 96.♖g2 forces the bishop to leave the shadow of the kings. 85.g6! Finally everything is ready for this advance. 85...h×g6+ After 85...h6 White can exchange into a pawn endgame: 86.♖d8 ♜g7 87.♖xg8 ♜xg8 88.♜xh6 ♜g8 89.g7 ♜f7 90.♜h7+- . 86.♜xg6 ♘e7 87.♖c3 1-0

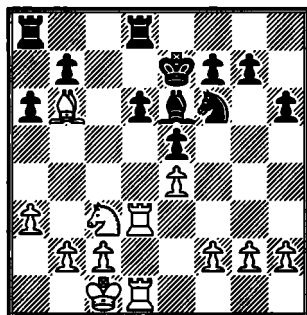
(4.3) Restricting the Whole Army

This is a very good strategy and when it works, one's opponent often has no real chance:

04.17 Nisipeanu – Polgar

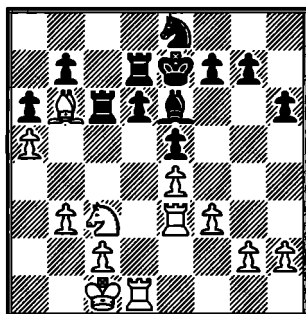
World Cup Khanty Mansiysk 2009

1.e4 c5 2.♖f3 ♘c6 3.d4 c×d4 4.♖×d4 e5 5.♖b5 a6 6.♖d6+ ♘×d6 7.♙×d6 ♙f6 8.♙×f6 ♖×f6 9.♖c3 ♖b4 10.♘d3 h6?! 10...d5 is played most often. 11.♘e3 d6 12.0-0-0 ♘e6 13.a3 ♖×d3+ 14.♖×d3 ♜e7 15.♖hd1 ♖hd8 16.♘b6 (D)

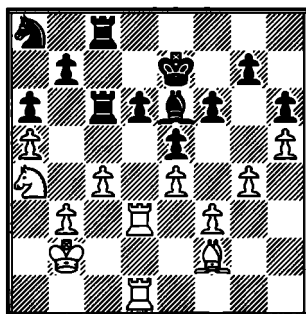


“White has a very pleasant edge in this endgame and by simply pushing his pawns according to ‘the book’ will create big practical problems for Black.

My ideal pawn configuration on the queenside would be a5, b3, c4 and on the kingside e4, f3, g4, h5 and if White can get it Black will suffocate surely.”(Nisipeanu in CBM 134) 16...♘d7 17.f3 ♖c8 18.a4 ♖c6 19.a5 ♘c4 20.♖e3 Prophylaxis against plans with d6-d5. As White has full control and a clear long term plan he has all the time in the world as Black has no counterplay. 20...♖e8 21.b3 ♘e6 (D)



22.g4 “No f7-f5 please!” (Nisipeanu) 22...♖c8 23.♜b2 ♖f6 24.♖ed3 ♖e8 25.h4 f6 26.h5 ♖c7 27.♖1d2 Nisipeanu uses a “do not rush strategy.” Black can do nothing. 27...♖a8 28.♖a4 ♖c6 29.♘f2 ♖dc7 30.c4 ♖c8 31.♖d1 (D)



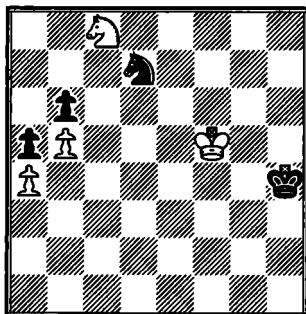
“Since Black is in a sort of strange zugzwang, it makes no sense to hurry, especially in a rapid game. Anyway, this move opens the way for the bishop to reach h4.”(Nisipeanu) 31...♖c7? This

Domination

loses material directly. 31...♖8c7
 32.c5 dxc5 33.♗d8 ♖c8 34.♗xc5+
 ♜f7 35.♖xc8 ♖xc8 36.♗b4
 (Nisipeanu) 36...♗c7 37.♗c5 ♖a8
 38.♗d6±. 32.♗b6 ♖b8 33.♗d5+
 ♜f7 34.♗b4 ♗e8 35.♗xc6 bxc6
 36.♜c3 ♜e7 37.b4 ♖c8 38.♗b6
 ♖a8 39.c5 d5 40.exd5 ♗xd5
 41.♖xd5 cxd5 42.♖xd5 ♜e6
 43.♜c4 ♖c8 44.♗d1 f5 45.gxf5+
 ♜xf5 46.b5 1-0

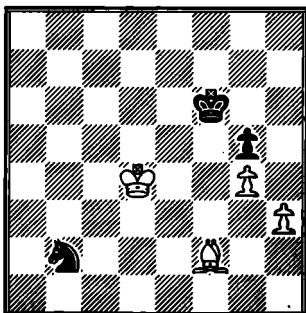
Exercises

E04.01 Aleksandrov – Flear
 12th ch-EUR Aix-les-Bains 2011
 [W] (D)



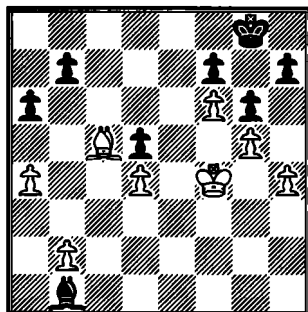
Is White dominated or Black ?

E04.02 Adams – Golod
 German Bundesliga 2011 [W] (D)



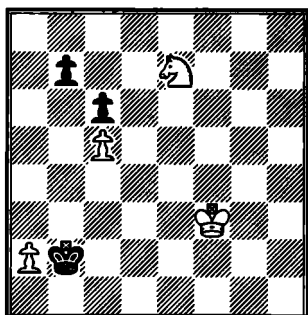
How to snare the steed ?

E04.03 Ponomariov – Nielsen
 Sportaccord WMG Rapid Beijing 2011
 [B] (D)



Can Black escape from his prison ?

E04.04 Mareco – Rodriguez
 X Mario Covas Santos 2011 [B] (D)



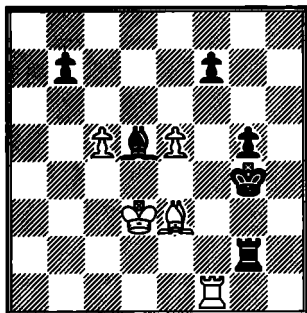
Can Black save himself ?

Chapter 5
Do Not Rush

This is an important endgame principle. When one side has a secure static advantage, stopping counterplay and keeping control is often more important than quick action. But of course the dynamics of the position must always be taken into consideration and come first. Only when the opponent has no real counterplay does “do not rush” strongly come to the fore. The defender must be careful with pawn moves and exchanges:

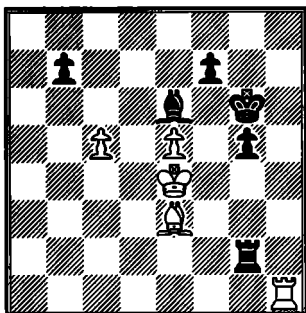
05.01 Giri – Kramnik

20th Amber Rapid Monaco 2011 [W] (D)

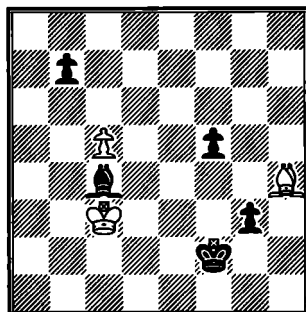


Opposite-color bishop endings have a very large drawish tendency – this is definitely correct. But the defender must be able to bring his pieces into the fortress first: 57. ♖g1? Now White’s king will play no real role. It had to be activated first: 57. ♔d4! ♕e6 (57... ♖f3 58. ♖xg5=) 58. ♖e4 (58. ♖g1? is still too early: 58... ♖xg1 59. ♖xg1 ♖f3 60. ♖c3 ♖g2 61. ♖d4 ♖f1 62. ♖b4 g4 63. ♖b5 ♖d5 →) 58... ♖g3 (After 58... ♖h5 59. ♖h1+ ♖g6 (D)

White can finally realize his main plan to exchange the rooks: 60. ♖g1 ♖h3



61. ♖xg2 ♖xg2+ 62. ♖d4 ♖f5 63. ♖f2 ♖g4 64. ♖e3 ♖h4 65. ♖f2+ ♖h3 66. ♖e3 ♖c6 67. ♖e1=) 59. ♖d4 (59. ♖g1? is still wrong: 59... ♖f5+ 60. ♖d5 ♖xg1 61. ♖xg1 ♖f4 →) 59... ♖f5 60. ♖f2= and Black cannot free himself. 57... ♖xg1 58. ♖xg1 ♖f3! The decisive bodycheck. 59. ♖d2 g4 60. ♖d4 g3 61. ♖e1 ♖c4 62. e6 62. ♖d2 ♖g2 63. e6 ♖xe6 64. ♖e5 ♖f2 → 62... ♖xe6 63. ♖f6 ♖c4 63... g2 wins as well as White falls in *zugzwang* after 64. ♖d4 f5 65. ♖g1 ♖g3 66. ♖e2 f4 67. ♖e1 f3 →. 64. ♖d2 ♖f2 65. ♖h4 f5 66. ♖c3 (D)



66... ♖f4! Black’s bishop is not needed any more. 67. ♖xc4 ♖e2 0-1 and Giri resigned as Black’s army of ants cannot be stopped, e.g., 68. ♖f6 g2 69. ♖d4 f3 70. ♖h5 f2 71. ♖xf2 ♖xf2

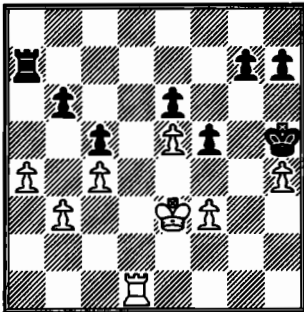
Do Not Rush

72.♖b6 g1♙ 73.♖xb7 ♗g7+ 74.♖b6
♗d4 75.♖b5 ♖e3 76.c6 ♗a7--.

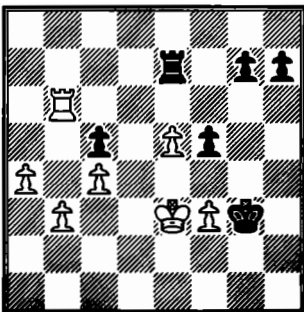
Prophylaxis and restriction of counterplay are often combined with the principle "do not rush":

05.02 Zubarev – Eljanov

Rector Cup Kharkov 2001 [W] (D)

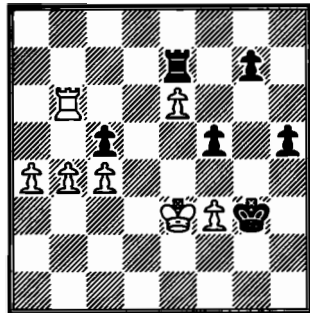


On the one hand, activity is of utmost importance in rook endings, but on the other hand, the opponent's activity should be restricted: **35.♞d6!** This violates the "do not rush" principle. White has two more promising options. Neither is sufficient to win, but Black must solve unpleasant problems: 35.f4 ♖xh4 36.♖f3 ♖h5 37.♞d6 ♞e7 38.♞xb6 ♞a7=; 35.♖f4 ♞f7 36.♞d6 ♖xh4 37.♞xe6 g5+ 38.♖e3 ♖g3 39.♞f6 ♞g7=. **35...♖xh4 36.♞xe6 ♖g3 37.♞xb6 ♞e7** (D)

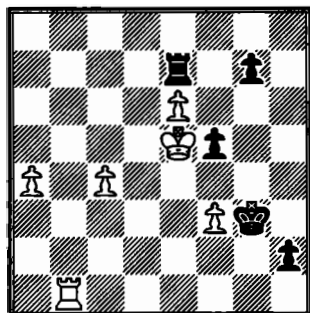


38.e6? White must already be very careful not to lose. One way to draw

was 38.f4 g5 (Golod) 39.fxg5 ♞xe5+ 40.♖d2 f4 41.g6 hxg6 42.♞xg6+ ♖h3 43.♞h6+=. **38...h5 39.b4** (D)



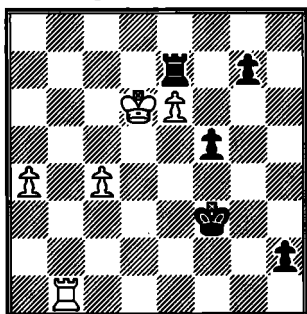
39...cxb4? This loses a valuable tempo in the race for promotion which can be won by 39...h4! 40.bxc5 h3 (Golod) 41.♖d4 h2 42.♞b1 ♞xe6 43.♖d5 ♞h6 44.c6 h1♙ 45.♞xh1 ♞xh1 46.c7 ♞h8 47.♖c6 g5 48.♖b7 g4 49.fxg4 f4 50.g5 f3 51.g6 f2 52.g7 ♞g8 53.c8♗ ♞xg7+ 54.♖a6 f1♙--. **40.♖d4 h4 41.♖e5 h3 42.♞xb4 h2 43.♞b1** (D)



43...♖xf3! 43...♖g2? rushes the win of White's rook too much: 44.c5 h1♙ 45.♞xh1 ♖xh1 46.♖d6 ♞e8 47.♖d7 ♞h8 48.c6 g5 49.c7+- (Golod) **44.♖d6** (D)

44...♞b7! An important *zwischenzug* to gain valuable time. In such a race the principle "do not rush" does not apply of course. On the contrary, every single tempo is very valuable. **45.♞c1 ♞b6+ 46.♖d7 ♞h7+ 47.♖d8 g5 48.c5**

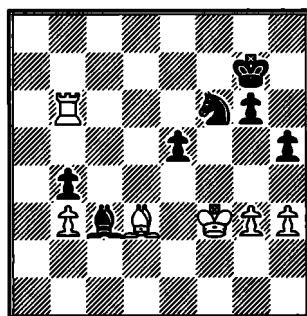
g4 49.c6 ♖b8+ 50.♔d7 g3 51.c7 ♜h8 52.e7 g2 53.e8♖ (D)



53...h1♖? Black rushes and reaches a lost fourth phase of the game as White has the all-important first check. 53...♞xe8 54.♔xe8 h1♖ 55.c8♖ ♖h8+ 56.♔d7 ♖xc8+ 57.♔xc8 ♔f2 58.a5 g1♖ 59.♞xg1 ♔xg1 60.a6 f4 61.a7 f3 62.a8♖ f2= (Golod) as White's king is outside the winning zone. 54.♞c3+ ♔f4 55.♞c4+ 1-0

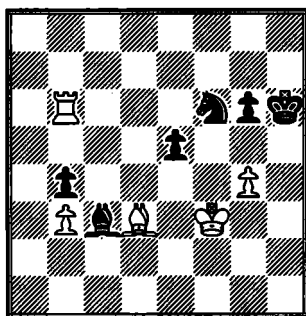
Pawn moves must always be checked carefully:

05.03 Bisguier – Mednis
USA-ch New York 1969 [W] (D)



52.g4? Bisguier rushes and loses control over the dark squares completely. White can win, but only by establishing full control first and invading with the king later: 52.♞e4 ♞d2 53.♞b7+ ♔h6 54.♞f7 ♚h7 (54...♚xe4 55.♔xe4 ♞c1 56.♞f3 ♞c3 57.♞xc3 bxc3

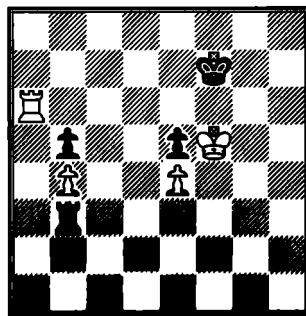
58.♔d3+-) 55.h4. This pawn move is much better as it restricts both black minor pieces and controls a dark square now to complement the bishop. 55...♞c3 56.♔e2 ♞d4 57.♔d3 ♞b2 58.♔c4 ♞c3 59.♔d5 ♞e1 60.♞f3 ♔g7 61.♔e6 ♚f8+ 62.♔e7 ♚h7 63.♞b1 ♞d2 64.♞f7+ ♔h6 65.♔e8 ♞c3 66.♞e7 ♞d4 67.♞e6+- 52...hxc4+ 53.hxc4 ♔h6!! (D)



and Black's king will reach g5 to install an impregnable fortress: 54.♞e4 54.♞xf6?! e4+ 55.♞xe4 ♞xf6= 54...♔g5 55.♞e6 ♞d4 56.♞c2 ♞c3 57.♔g3 ♞e1+ 58.♔h3 ♞c3 59.♔g2 ♚xc4 60.♞xc6 ♔f4 61.♞h5 ♚e3+ 62.♔f2 ♚f5 63.♞f6 ½-½

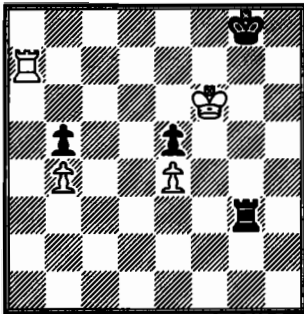
A *zwischenzug* (in-between move) especially a rook *zwichenschach* (in-between check) is often called for:

05.04 Salov – Yudasin
St Petersburg 1997 [W] (D)



Do Not Rush

64. ♖a7+!? 64. ♜xe5?! ♜xb4 65. ♖a7+ ♜g6 66. ♜d5 ♖a4 67. ♖b7 ♖a6 68. ♜xb5 ♜f7 69. ♖b7+ ♜e8 70. e5 ♖h6= 64... ♜g8 64... ♜e8 65. ♜e6 ♜d8 66. ♜d6 ♜c8 67. ♜c6 ♜d8 68. ♜xb5 ♖e3 69. ♜c6 ♖xe4 70. b5 ♖c4+ 71. ♜b7 ♜d7 72. b6 ♜d6 73. ♖a5 ♖b4 74. ♜a7 ♜c6 75. ♖a6 ♜d5 76. b7 ♖xb7+ 77. ♜xb7 e4= 65. ♜g6 ♖g3+ 66. ♜f6 (D)

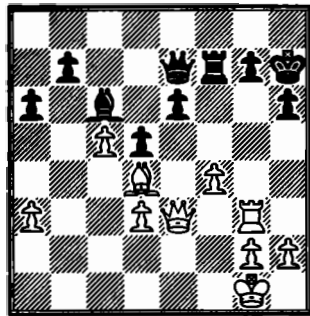


66... ♖b3? Yudasin misses a *zwischenzschach*. He should give one himself: 66... ♖f3+! 67. ♜xe5 ♖b3 68. ♜f6 (68. ♜d6 ♖xb4 69. e5 ♖d4+ 70. ♜e7 ♖a4 71. ♖b7 ♜g7 72. ♜e8+ ♜g6 73. e6 ♜f6 74. e7 ♖a8+ 75. ♜d7 ♜f7 76. ♖xb5 ♖a7+=) 68... ♖xb4 69. e5 ♖f4+ 70. ♜e6 ♖a4= 67. ♖g7+! ♜h8 67... ♜f8 68. ♖b7 ♖f3+ 69. ♜xe5+- 68. ♖b7 1-0 and Black resigned in view of 68... ♖xb4 (68... ♜g8 69. ♖xb5+-) 69. ♜g6+- (Ribli in CBM 59).

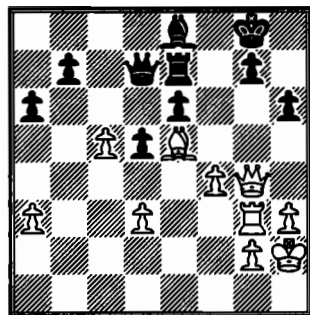
The following impressive performance by Svidler is an application of the principle “do not rush” when in full control:

05.05 Svidler – Sakaev
St Petersburg-ch 1996 [W] (D)

Svidler calmly improves his king first as Black is doomed to complete passivity: 26. h3!? ♖d7 27. ♜h2 ♖e8 28. ♜e2 ♜g8 29. ♜g4 ♜d7 (D)



Just look at Black’s bishop! An additional bonus of playing slow moves in “do not rush” style is that your opponent often will do your job for you since waiting passively in a position without prospects is very depressing for most people and this may lead to mistakes. 30. ♖e5! Svidler again applies “do not rush.” The direct 30. ♜g6? ♖xf4 31. ♜xg7+ ♜xg7 32. ♖xg7 ♜h7 sells White’s advantage too cheaply. 30... ♖e7? 30... ♜h8! was the best defense. To win the h6-pawn, White must then exchange rooks, which gives Black more chances to fight: 31. ♜h5 ♖f6 32. ♜h4 ♖g6 33. ♖xg6 ♖xg6 34. ♜xh6+ ♖h7. (D)



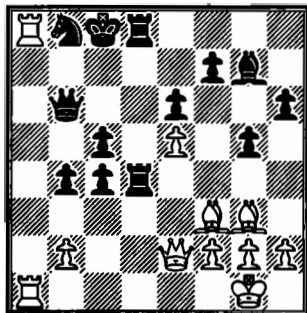
Now the time for the decisive invasion has come: 31. ♖f6! ♖f7 32. ♜g6 and Black loses an important pawn protecting his king: 32... ♜f8 33. ♖e5 ♜g8 34. ♜xh6 ♜e7 35. ♖g4 ♖b5 36. ♜g6 ♖e8 37. ♖g5 With the decisive threat ♖h5. 37... ♖xf4 38. ♜xg7+ ♜xg7

39. ♖xg7+ ♜f8 40. ♖xb7 ♖a4 1-0 and faced with 41. ♖b6 ♖xa3 42. c6 ♖a2 43. ♖b8 ♖c2 44. c7+- Sakaev resigned.

Sometimes the attacker can stop in the middle and safeguard his own king first:

05.06 Babula – Hoffmann

German Bundesliga 2011 [W] (D)



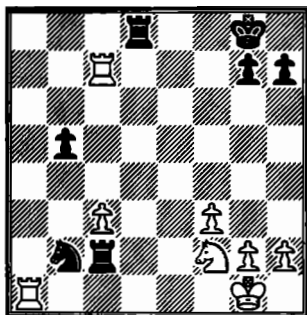
24. h3! b3 25. ♖1a4 ♜b5 25...c3? 26. ♖4a6+-; 25...♖8d7 26. ♜h2 ♖f8 27. ♜f1 with the idea ♖a1 (Babula and Meyer in CBM 142). 26. ♜h2 “Prophylaxis is over; the next plan is to penetrate with the queen.” (Babula and Meyer) 26...♖8d7?! 26...♜b6!? 27. ♜f1 h5 28. ♖xh5 ♖8d7 29. ♜c1 ♖f8 30. ♖e2+- 27. ♜e1 ♖d3 28. ♖4a5 ♜b6 29. ♜e4 c3 29...♖3d4 30. ♜h7+- 30. ♖xb8+ 30. ♜c4 ♖7d4 31. ♜xc5+ ♜xc5 32. ♖xc5+ ♜d7 33. bxc3+- 30...♜xb8 31. ♖a8 ♖7d5 32. ♜a4 1-0

Of course do not rush can also be applied in a domination strategy when using the sharp endgame weapon zugzwang:

05.07 Bruzon – Ponomariov

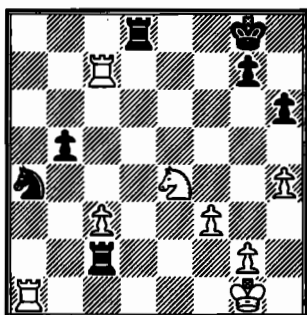
Calvia ol (Men) Mallorca 2004 [W] (D)

28. h4! Black’s forces are almost dominated so this move, which makes *luft* for the king and brings another at-



tacker forward, is very annoying.

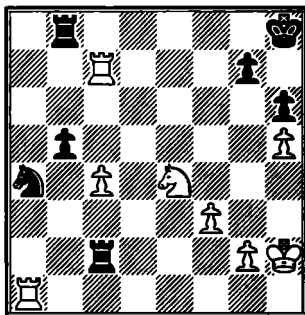
28...♖a4 29. ♖e4 h6 (D)



30. c4! Bruzon acts now, which is strong. Continuing the “do not rush” strategy with 30. ♜h2± was the alternative. 30...♜h8 30...♖b8 31. ♜h2 ♖a8 32. ♖d6 bxc4 33. ♖f5 ♖a5 34. ♖xg7+ ♜f8 35. ♖c7 ♖xf5 36. ♖xa4+- 31. h5? Returning to the “do not rush” approach is not called for. White has started to act and should continue with 31. ♖c6+- . 31...♖b8! 31...♖c3? runs into 32. ♖d6! ♖f8 (32...♖xd6? 33. ♖a8+ ♜h7 34. ♖cc8+-) 33. ♖a7+- . (Postny in CBM 104) 32. ♜h2 (D)

32...♖f8? Black wants counterplay too quickly and miscalculates. The last chance was to fight against the invasion of White’s rooks with 32...♖b6, for example, 33. ♖aa7 ♖c8 34. ♖cb7 ♖xb7 35. ♖xb7 ♖xc4 36. ♖xb5 ♖c7 and Black can continue to put up a fight. 33. ♖c6! ♖h2 34. ♖a4 34. cxb5+-

Do Not Rush

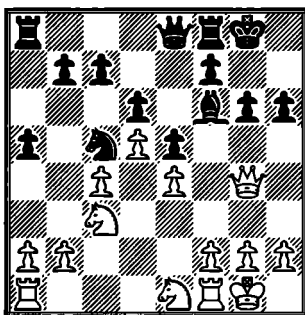


34.c×b5 ♖×c6 35.b×c6 ♖c8
 36.♖c1 ♖c7 37.♘d6 ♘d3
 38.♘b5 ♖c8 39.♖c3 1-0

The Makogonov principle was dealt with in more detail in chapter 1 (see example 01.16). In a nutshell it is as follows: in a quiet strategic position you should improve your worst-placed piece first. This has some similarity to the “do not rush” approach, so we present one more example:

05.08 Ivanov – Benjamin

USA-ch Jacksonville 1990 [B] (D)

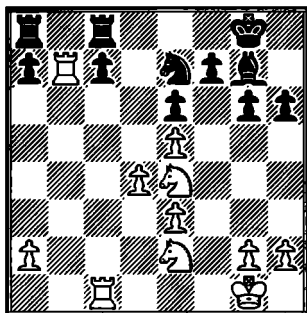


Black’s f6-bishop is obviously not well-placed, so Benjamin played 14...♘d8! 15.♖e2 c6 16.♖d1 ♘c7 and quickly achieved good play after 17.h4?! ♖e7 18.g3 ♖g7 19.♘f3 a4 20.h5 ♘a5 21.♖c1 ♖d7 22.♖f1 ♖ae8 23.♖g2 f5 and Black won after some further moves.

Exercises

E05.01 Beliavsky – Ftacnik

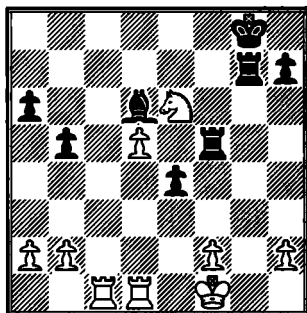
Turin ol 2006 [W] (D)



Should you take the c7-pawn or not?

E05.02 Robson – Kuipers

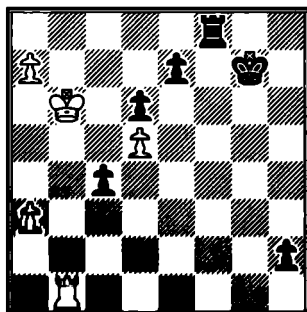
Corus C Wijk aan Zee 2010 [B] (D)



Why does 29...e3? violate the “do not rush” principle? What should Black play instead?

E05.03 Kempinski – Fedorchuk

German Bundesliga 2011 [W] (D)



45.♗b7 or 45.♖h1 ?

Chapter 6
Converting an Advantage

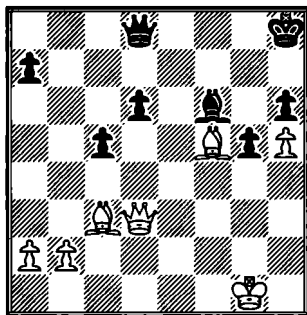
This is a very important practical ability. We have already dealt with “restriction” and “do not rush” strategies in the previous chapters. The principle of two weaknesses also plays an important role and the question of the right exchange is also often very relevant for the side that wants to convert a static advantage. All of them will be mentioned in this chapter very often.

(6.1) Material Advantage

(6.1.1) Converting an Extra Minor Piece

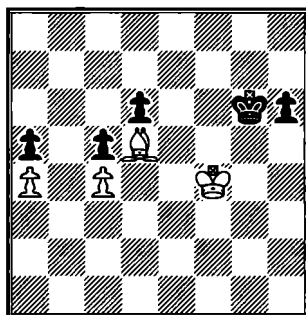
Here we want to warn you not to follow the guideline that the side which is ahead on material exchanges pieces:

06.01 Jones – Miller
Turin ol 2006 [W] (D)

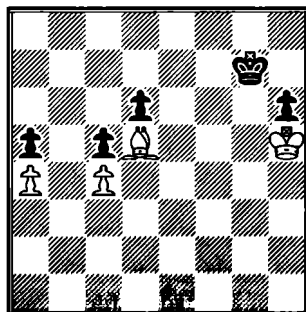


Theoretically speaking there is nothing wrong with White’s approach to simplify into a won endgame. But as he is the attacker it is much better to preserve the attacking potential. **35. ♖f2?!** After 35. ♖e6 ♖xc3 36. ♗xc3+ ♖h7 37. ♗d3+ ♖h8 38. ♗g6 ♗f8 39. ♖f5 White wins easily: 39... ♗g7 40. ♗e8+ ♗g8 41. ♗c7 ♗g7 42. ♗d8+ ♗g8

43. ♗d6 ♗g7 44. ♗b8+ ♗g8 45. ♗a7 ♗g7. Now White can simplify of course as the resulting ending is completely trivial: 46. ♗b8+ ♗g8 47. ♗xg8+ ♖xg8 48. a4+- . **35... ♗f8!** **36. ♖xf6+ ♗xf6** **37. ♗c3 ♗xc3** **38. bxc3 ♖g7** **39. ♖e3 ♖f6** **40. ♖e4 ♖e5** **41. c4 a5** **42. a3 g4** **43. a4 g3** **44. ♖d5 ♖f5** **45. ♖f3 ♖g5** **46. ♖xg3 ♖xh5** **47. ♖f4 ♖g6 (D)**



48. ♖g4?! 48. ♖e4 is better technique: 48...h5 49. ♖e6 ♖f6 50. ♖d5 ♖e7 51. ♖h3 h4 52. ♖e6+- and Black is in zugzwang. **48... ♖f6** **49. ♖h5 ♖e5** After 49... ♖g7 50. ♖e6 ♖f6 51. ♖g8 ♖g7 (51... ♖e5 52. ♖xh6 ♖d4 53. ♖g7 ♖c3 54. ♖f6 ♖b4 55. ♖e7 ♖xa4 56. ♖xd6 ♖b4 57. ♖d5 a4 58. ♖h7 a3 59. ♖b1 ♖b3 60. ♖xc5 ♖b2 61. ♖b4 ♖xb1 62. ♖xa3+-) **52. ♖d5 (D)**



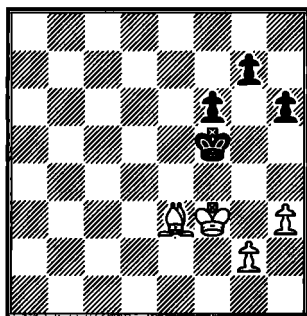
Do Not Rush

White wins by using the sharp endgame weapon *zugzwang* – the typical method to convert an extra piece in the endgame. 52...♠h7 53.♙f3 ♖g7 54.♗g4 ♕f6 55.♗f4 ♕e6 56.♗e4+-

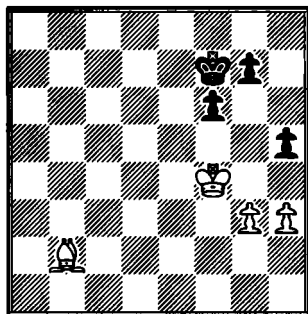
50.♗xh6? Losing an all-important tempo in the race. 50.♗g6!! wins: 50...h5 (50...♗d4 51.♗f6 ♗c3 52.♗e7 ♗b4 53.♗xh6+-) 51.♗f7 h4 52.♗e7 h3 53.♗d7 h2 54.♗c6 ♗d4 55.♗b5+- **50...♗d4 51.♗g6 ♗c3 52.♗f6 ♗b4 53.♗e6 ♗xh4** The guideline that the side which is behind in material should exchange pawns is quite good and in any case much better than the guideline that the side that is ahead material should exchange pieces. 54.♗xh6 54.♙c6+ ♗b4 55.♗d5 ♗b3 56.♙b5 ♗b4= 54...♗b4 55.♙c6 ♗xc4 56.♙a4 ♗b4 57.♙d1 c4 58.♗d5 ½-½

The next example shows a typical method to convert an extra bishop in a pure endgame:

06.02 Radjabov – Ponomarev
27th ECC Rogaska Slatina 2011 [W] (D)



Radjabov uses *zugzwang* again and again: 61.♙d2 h5 62.g3 ♕e5 63.♙c3+ ♗f5 64.♙b2 ♗g5 65.♗e4 ♗g6 65...f5+ 66.♗f3 h4 67.♙xg7 hxg3 68.♗xg3 f4+ 69.♗g2 ♗h4 70.♙f6+- 66.♗f4 ♗f7 (D)

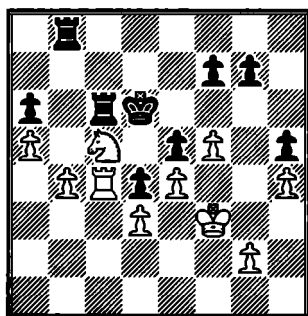


67.♗f5! Forcing Black to move a pawn or to allow the invasion of White's king. 67...g6+ 68.♗e4 ♗e6 69.♙c3 ♗f7 70.♗d5 ♗e7 71.♙d4 ♗f7 72.♗d6 g5 73.g4 1-0 and Black resigned in view of 73...hxg4 74.hxg4 f5 75.gxf5 g4 76.♗e5 g3 77.f6 g2 78.♗f5+-.

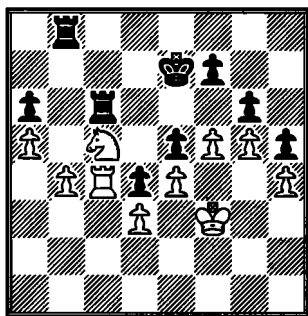
(6.1.2) Converting an Extra Exchange

A rook is a very strong piece in open positions. The important question is whether or not it has long-term prospects:

06.03 Kasparov – Portisch
Debrecen 1992 [B] (D)



30...♗b5?! Black should open an in-road on the kingside with 30...♗e7! 31.g3 (31.g4? g6 32.g5 (D)

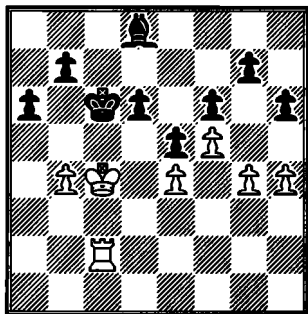


and now 32..f6-- penetrates.) 31...g6 32.♖e2 ♖g8 33.♖f3 g5 34.h×g5 ♖×g5 with good winning chances as the black rooks cannot be kept under control. 31.g4 g6? Allowing Kasparov to close the kingside. 31...h×g4+ 32.♖×g4 ♖e7 33.♖g3 ♖b8 followed by g6 to open a second front was better. 32.g5! ♖b8 33.f6 ♖b5 34.♖e2 ♖c×c5 35.b×c5+ ♖c6 36.♖a4 ♖×c5 37.♖a2 ♖b5 ½-½

Often a pawn sacrifice is justified to activate the rook:

06.04 Leko – Shirov

Moscow Tal Memorial 2008 [W] (D)



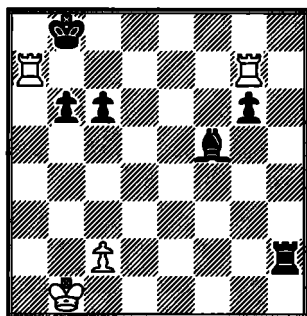
41.b5+! a×b5+ 42.♖b4+ ♖d7 42...♖b6 43.♖c8 ♖c7 44.♖e8! ♖c6 45.♖e7 ♖b8 46.♖×g7 d5 47.exd5+ ♖×d5 48.♖×b7 (Ftacnik in CBM 126) 48...♖d6+ 49.♖b3 b4 50.♖b5+ ♖e4 (50...♖c6 51.♖c4+-) 51.♖c4 ♖f4

52.♖d5+- 43.♖×b5 ♖e7 44.♖d2 ♖c7 45.♖d1 1-0 and Black resigned as White's pieces will penetrate sooner or later, e.g., 45...♖d8 46.♖a1 ♖b8 47.♖c4 ♖b6 48.♖d5 ♖f2 49.♖h1 ♖c5 50.g5+-.

In a pure endgame, a rook is usually much stronger than a bishop:

06.05 Li Chao - Zhou Weiqi

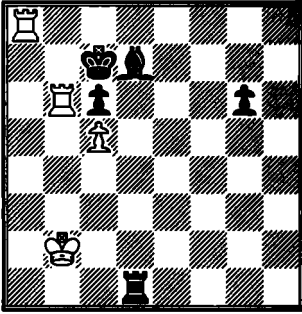
1st GM Danzhou 2010 [W] (D)



39.♖af7! Do not rush! A strong move which forces Black's rook onto the backrank. Only afterwards does White deal with the weak queenside pawns. 39...♖h8 40.♖b7+ ♖a8 41.♖a7+ ♖b8 42.♖gb7+ ♖c8 43.♖×b6 43.♖c7+ ♖b8 44.♖ab7+ ♖a8 45.♖×b6 ♖e4 46.♖e7 ♖d5 47.♖b2 ♖b8 48.♖×b8+ ♖×b8 49.♖g7 ♖e4 50.♖b3 ♖c8 51.c3 ♖d8 52.♖c4 ♖e8 53.♖d4 ♖f5 54.♖e5 ♖f8 55.♖c7+- 43...♖h1+ 44.♖b2 ♖d7 45.c4 ♖d1 45...g5 46.♖ba6 ♖d8 47.♖a5 ♖g1 48.♖e5+- 46.♖a8+ ♖c7 47.c5 (D)

Black's king is caught in a net. 47...♖d2+ 48.♖c3 ♖d5 49.♖c4 ♖d1 49...♖e6? 50.♖a7+ ♖d8 51.♖b8+ ♖c8 52.♖g7+- 50.♖b2!? 50.♖ba6!? ♖h1 (50...♖e6+ 51.♖c3 ♖c1+ 52.♖d4 ♖c4+ 53.♖e5 ♖c8 54.♖u5 ♖5 55.♖f6 ♖4 56.♖5a7+ ♖b7

Do Not Rush



57. Bg8+) 51. B6a7+ Bb7
 52. Bd4!+- 50...g5 50...Ae6+
 51. Cc3 Bd5 52. Ba7+ Cc8
 53. Cb4+- 51. Ba7+ Cd8 52. Bh2
 Ce7 52...g4 53. Bh7 Bd2 54. Bg7
 (54. Ba8+ Ce7 55. Bg8+-) 54...Bd1
 55. Ba3 Bd2 56. Bd3 Bxd3
 57. Cxd3+- 53. Bh6! The rooks
 dominate Black's forces. 53...Bc1+
 54. Cd4 Bd1+ 55. Ce4 Be1+
 56. Cf3 g4+ 57. Cf2 Bd1 58. Bxc6
 Ba1 59. Bb7! Bb1 60. Bcb6 Bxb6
 61. cxb6 Cd6 62. Bc7 1-0

(6.2) Positional Advantage

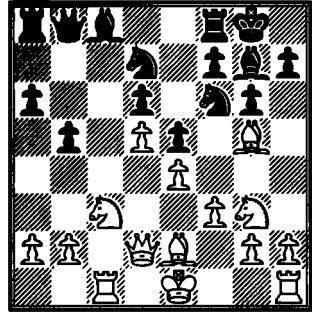
(6.2.1) Spatial Advantage

We have already dealt with this theme in the third chapter on the right exchange. The following game could also have been placed in the chapter on two weaknesses:

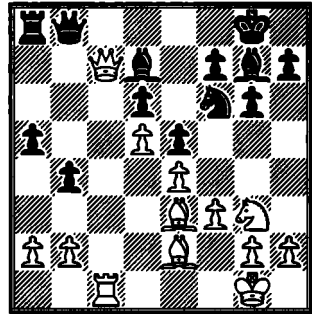
06.06 Golod – Heberla

EU-Cup 19th Rethymnon 2003

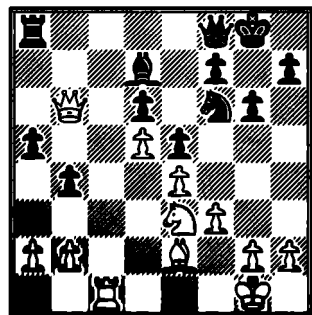
1.d4 e6 2.c4 g6 3.f3 Ag7 4.e4
 0-0 5. Cc3 d6 6. Ag5 Cbd7
 7. Cge2 e5 8. Cd2 c6 9. Bd1 Cc7!
 10.d5 cxd5 11.cxd5! White keeps
 the knights on the board as he has more
 space. 11...a6 12. Bc1 Cb8
 13. Cg3 b5 14. Ae2 (D)



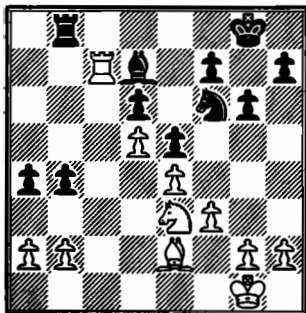
14...b4?! This exposes the pawn too
 much, but White's space advantage is
 unpleasant in any case. 15. Ca4 Cb6
 16. Cxb6 Cxb6 17. Ae3 Cb8
 18. 0-0 Ad7 19. Bc4 a5 20. Bfc1
 Bc8 21. Bxc8+ Qxc8 22. Cc2
 Qd7 23. Cc7 (D)



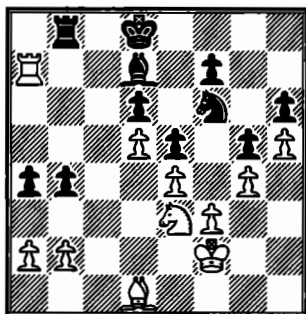
23...Cf8! Black correctly avoids the
 exchange of queens to be able to gener-
 erate counterplay. 24. Cf1 Ah6
 25. Cb6 Qxe3+ 26. Cxe3 (D)



26...♖b8? Without queens, Black has no counterplay and cannot defend. 26...♖b8! was the last chance to fight, e.g., 27.♗xa5 ♖h6 28.♗a7 ♖b7 29.♗a8+ ♖g7 30.♖d1 ♗xc1 31.♗xb7 ♗c5+ 32.♖h1 (32.♖f1 ♖a4 33.b3 ♖d7 34.♗a6 ♖h5 35.♗c4 ♗b6) 32...♗c2 33.♗a6 ♖h5 34.g3 f5 35.♗d3 ♗c1 in both cases with practical drawing chances. 27.♗xb8+ ♖xb8 28.♖c7 a4 (D)

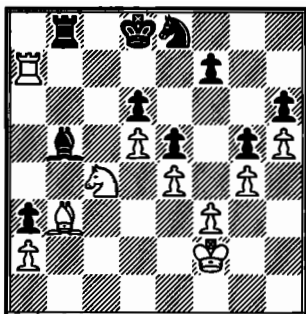


29.g4! This typical advance gains space and plans to create a second weakness. 29...h6 30.h4 g5 31.h5! Golod gains more space and fixes the h6-weakness. 31...♖f8 32.♖f2 ♖e8 33.♖a7 ♖d8 34.♖d1 (D)

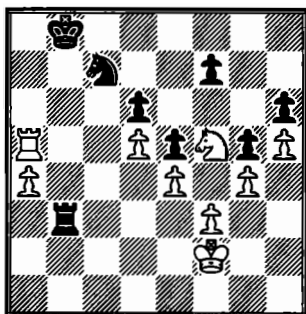


34...a3? Making it relatively easy for White. After 34...b3 35.axb3 axb3 he has the difficult choice between 36.♖c4 and 36.♖a3 (Golod in CBM 98) 35.bxa3 bxa3 36.♖b3! Golod first improves his pieces before taking

the a-pawn. The direct 36.♖a3 wins as well. 36...♖e8 37.♖c4 ♖b5 (D)



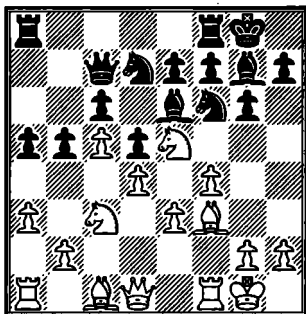
38.♖xa3! Golod keeps control. 38.♖xf7? runs into 38...♖xc4 39.♖xc4 ♖b4!! 40.♖d3 ♖b2+ 41.♖e3 ♖xa2 42.♖a7= (Golod). 38...♖c7 39.♖e3 ♖d7 40.♖a4 ♖b4 41.♖xd7 ♖xd7 42.♖d3 ♖b2 43.♖c4 ♖f2 44.♖e3 ♖c2 45.♖d3 Golod repeats the position. This is a good technique; it shows who is boss and gains time on the clock. 45...♖f2 46.♖e3 ♖c2 47.♖b6+ ♖d8 48.a4 ♖c3+ 49.♖e2 ♖c2+ 50.♖d3 ♖f2 51.♖e3 ♖b2 52.♖c4 ♖b3+ 53.♖f2 ♖d7 54.♖e3 ♖c8 55.♖f5 Finally the knight has arrived at the dominating outpost. 55...♖b8 56.♖a5 (D)



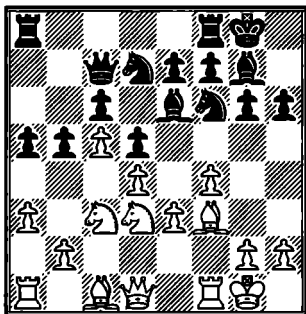
56...♖b6 56...♖b7 57.♖xd6+ ♖b6 58.♖c4+- (Golod). 57.♖xh6 ♖b7 58.♖xf7 ♖b2+ 59.♖g3 ♖b6 60.♖xd6 ♖c2 61.h6 1-0

06.07 Gelfand - Wang Yue
Bazna Kings Medias 2010

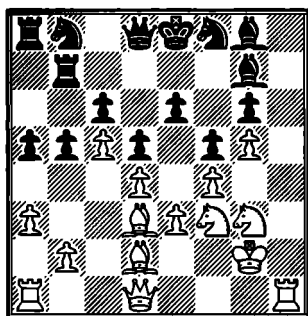
1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.♖c3 ♘f6 4.e3
a6 5.♗f3 b5 6.c5 g6 7.♗e5 ♙g7
8.f4 a5 9.♙e2 ♗c7 10.0-0 0-0
11.a3 ♙e6 12.♙f3 ♗bd7 (D)



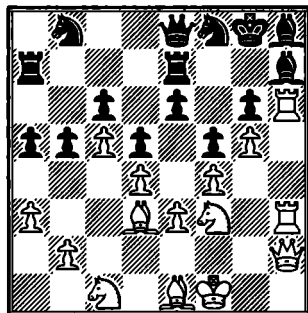
13.♗d3! "Of course, White is avoiding any exchanges as Black's pieces are very cramped and he does not have enough space for them." (Gelfand in CBM 137) 13...h6? 13...♙f5 was necessary to exchange the bishop. (D)



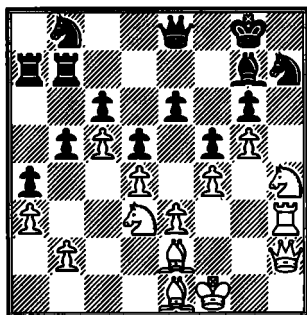
14.g4! Now White's space advantage is really serious as Black's position does not have the capacity for many pieces (see 03.12). 14...♗h7 15.h4 f5 16.g5 h×g5 17.h×g5 ♗f7 18.♗g2 ♙fb8 19.♙d2 ♗hf8 20.♙e2 ♗e8 21.♗e1 ♙g8 22.♗f3 ♙b7 23.♙d3 ♗b8 24.♗e2 ♗d8 25.♗g3 e6 26.♙h1 (D)



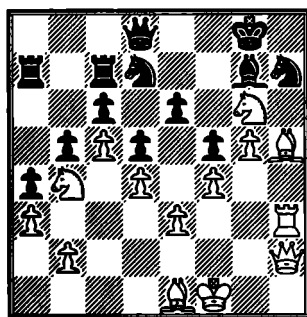
26...♙h7? The beginning of a wrong plan. Black should probably wait but his position is very difficult to play. 27.♗c2 ♗f7 28.♙h3 ♗g8 29.♙ah1 ♙aa7 30.♗f1 ♗e8 31.♙e1 ♙h8 32.♙h6 ♙g7 33.♙6h4 ♙h8 34.♙1h3 ♙e7 35.♗h2 Gelfand has installed Alekhine's gun by tripling on the h-file. In the next step he will regroup his knights to storm Black's kingside castle. 35...♙eb7 36.♙h6 ♙e7 37.♗e2 ♙eb7 38.♗c1 ♙e7 (D)



39.♗b3! "It is important to force Black to play a4, as it gives White the b4-square and the possibility to open the position by b3, if necessary. Even though the main action would most likely take place on the kingside, you should never neglect such a detail." (Gelfand). 39...a4 40.♗c1 ♙eb7 41.♙e2 ♙e7 42.♗d3 ♙eb7 43.♗h4! ♙g7 44.♙×h7 ♗×h7 45...♙×h7? (19.4) ♙f7+- (Gelfand). (D)

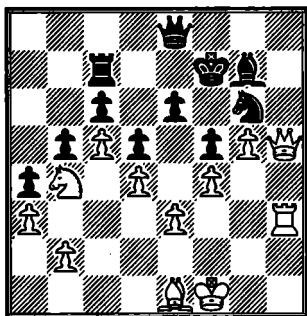


45. $\text{d}\times\text{g}6$ $\text{d}\text{d}7!$ 45... $\text{c}\times\text{g}6?$
 46. $\text{d}\text{h}5+-$ (Gelfand) 46. $\text{d}\text{h}5$ $\text{c}\text{d}8$
 47. $\text{c}\text{b}4$ $\text{c}\text{c}7$ (D)

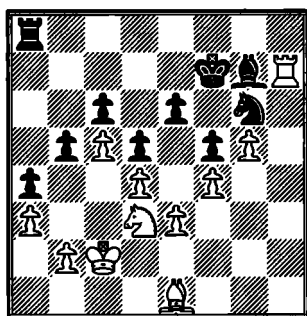


48. $\text{d}\text{h}8!!$ "A beautiful way to launch the final attack. I got really excited when I saw this possibility. Strangely enough no engine on my computer indicates it, even set to a depth around 20 ply" (Gelfand). 48... $\text{d}\text{d}\text{f}8$ 48... $\text{c}\times\text{h}8$
 49. $\text{d}\text{f}7$ $\text{c}\text{d}\text{f}8$ 50. $\text{c}\times\text{h}7+$ $\text{c}\times\text{h}7$ 51. $\text{g}6$
 $\text{d}\text{h}6$ 52. $\text{c}\times\text{h}6$ $\text{c}\times\text{f}7$ 53. $\text{g}\times\text{f}7$ $\text{c}\times\text{f}7$
 54. $\text{c}\times\text{c}6$ $\text{c}\text{e}8$ 55. $\text{d}\text{e}5$ $\text{c}\text{a}7$ 56. $\text{d}\text{b}4+-$
 (Gelfand); 48... $\text{d}\times\text{h}8$ runs into
 49. $\text{d}\text{f}7+!!$ $\text{c}\times\text{f}7$ 50. $\text{c}\times\text{h}7+$ $\text{d}\text{g}7$
 51. $\text{g}6+!$ $\text{c}\text{f}8$ 52. $\text{c}\times\text{g}7+-$ (Gelfand).
 49. $\text{c}\text{f}7$ $\text{c}\times\text{f}7$ 50. $\text{d}\times\text{f}7+$ 50. $\text{c}\times\text{c}6$
 wins as well. 50... $\text{c}\times\text{f}7$ 51. $\text{c}\times\text{h}7$
 $\text{c}\text{e}8$ 51... $\text{c}\times\text{h}7$ 52. $\text{g}6!$ $\text{c}\text{c}7$ 53. $\text{c}\times\text{h}7+$
 $\text{c}\text{f}8$ 54. $\text{d}\text{h}4!$ $\text{c}\text{e}8$ 55. $\text{d}\text{g}5$ $\text{c}\text{d}7$
 56. $\text{d}\text{h}6$ $\text{d}\times\text{h}6$ 57. $\text{c}\text{h}8+$ $\text{c}\text{e}7$
 58. $\text{c}\times\text{h}6$ $\text{c}\text{e}8$ 59. $\text{c}\text{h}7+$ $\text{c}\text{d}8$
 60. $\text{g}7+-$ (Gelfand). 52. $\text{c}\text{h}3$ "Already here I saw it till the end. White ex-

changes queens, plays b3, then a4, exchanges rooks on a line and penetrates by bishop and knight into the enemy's camp" (Gelfand). 52... $\text{c}\text{g}6$ 53. $\text{c}\text{e}2$
 $\text{c}\text{c}7$ 54. $\text{c}\text{h}5$ $\text{c}\text{f}7$ (D)



55. $\text{c}\text{h}7$ Gelfand wants to exchange queens and this cannot be prevented. 55... $\text{c}\text{g}8$ 55... $\text{c}\text{d}8$ runs into 56. $\text{c}\text{h}6$
 $\text{c}\text{f}8$ 57. $\text{c}\times\text{c}6$ $\text{c}\times\text{c}6$ 58. $\text{g}6+-$
 (Gelfand). 56. $\text{c}\times\text{g}8+$ $\text{c}\times\text{g}8$
 57. $\text{c}\text{d}3$ $\text{c}\text{a}7$ 58. $\text{c}\text{e}2$ $\text{c}\text{f}7$
 59. $\text{c}\text{b}4$ $\text{c}\text{e}7$ 60. $\text{c}\text{d}1$ $\text{c}\text{a}8$
 61. $\text{c}\text{c}2$ $\text{c}\text{g}8$ 62. $\text{c}\text{d}3$ $\text{c}\text{a}8$ 63. $\text{c}\text{h}7$
 $\text{c}\text{g}6$ (D)



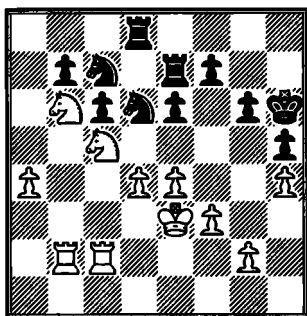
64. $\text{b}3!$? Gelfand opens a second front. 64... $\text{c}\text{f}8$ 65. $\text{c}\text{h}2$ $\text{a}\times\text{b}3+$ 66. $\text{c}\times\text{b}3$
 $\text{c}\text{e}8$ 67. $\text{c}\text{a}2$ $\text{c}\text{d}7$ 67... $\text{c}\text{a}4$ 68. $\text{c}\text{b}2$
 $\text{c}\text{a}7$ 69. $\text{a}4+-$ 68. $\text{a}4!$ $\text{b}\times\text{a}4+$
 69. $\text{c}\times\text{a}4$ $\text{c}\times\text{a}4$ 70. $\text{c}\times\text{a}4$ $\text{c}\text{c}8$
 71. $\text{d}\text{a}5$ $\text{c}\text{g}6$ 72. $\text{c}\text{b}4$ $\text{c}\text{d}7$
 72... $\text{c}\text{b}7$ 73. $\text{d}\text{d}8$ $\text{d}\text{f}8$ 74. $\text{d}\text{f}6$ $\text{c}\text{e}7$
 75. $\text{c}\text{d}3$ $\text{c}\text{g}6$ 76. $\text{c}\text{a}5$ $\text{c}\text{a}7$ 77. $\text{c}\text{e}5$
 $\text{c}\times\text{e}5$ 78. $\text{d}\times\text{c}5+-$ 73. $\text{c}\text{a}6$ $\text{c}\text{c}8$
 74. $\text{d}\text{c}7$ $\text{d}\text{f}8$ 75. $\text{c}\text{a}5$ $\text{c}\text{b}7$

Do Not Rush

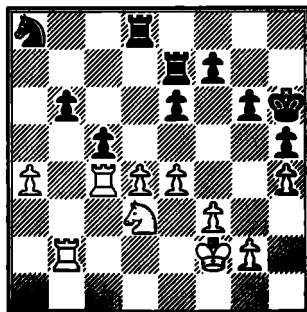
76. ♖d6 ♗e7 77. ♖xe7 77. ♘c7? runs into 77... ♗d8 (Gelfand). 78. ♗e5 ♖xc7+ 79. ♖xc7 ♘xc7 80. ♖a6= 77... ♘xe7 78. ♘b4 ♖g8 79. ♘d3 ♘e7 80. ♘e5 ♖g8 81. g6 ♘f6 82. g7 1-0

The Ukrainian grandmaster Ivanchuk created another strategic masterpiece using his strong feel for the initiative and exploiting his space advantage:

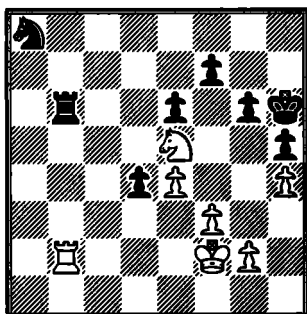
06.08 Ivanchuk – Vachier-Lagrave
39th Olympiad Khanty-Mansiysk 2010
[W] (D)



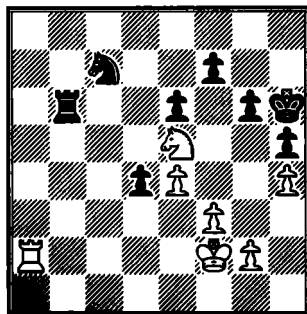
49. ♖f2! A very strong prophylactic move. The direct 49. ♘c4 allows Black to reduce the pressure by 49... ♘xc4+ 50. ♖xc4 b5. 49... ♘a8 Now it is too late for 49... e5? because of 50. dxe5 ♖xe5 51. ♘xb7 ♘xb7 52. ♘c4+- . 50. ♘c4?! 50. e5 ♘f5 51. a5± is even stronger. 50... ♘xc4 51. ♖xc4 b6 52. ♘d3 c5 (D)



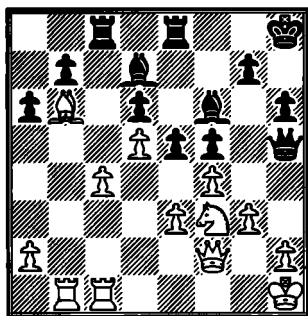
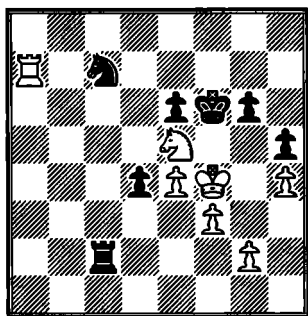
53. a5! A spectacular undermining shot. 53... ♖xd4? This gives White a very dangerous initiative, which Ivanchuk handles masterfully. 53... cxd4 was probably the best chance, e.g., 54. axb6 ♖b7 55. ♖c6 ♖db8 56. ♘e5 (56. ♖a2!?) 56... ♘xb6 57. ♘xf7+ ♖xf7 58. ♖bxb6 ♖xb6 59. ♖xb6 and in view of the large drawish tendency of rook endings, Black still has hope to survive. 53... bxa5? 54. ♘xc5± 54. ♖xd4 cxd4 55. axb6 ♖b7 56. ♘e5! ♖xb6 After 56... f6?! 57. ♘c4 Black's knight is imprisoned. (D)



57. ♖a2! Ivanchuk does not exchange his active rook, which is an excellent practical decision. The technical endgame 57. ♘xf7+? ♖g7 58. ♖xb6 ♘xb6 59. ♘e5 is by no means easy to assess. 57... ♘c7 (D)



58. ♖a7! Activity is of utmost importance in this type of endgame with rook and knight versus rook and knight as neither piece likes to defend passively.



and Black is completely dominated and went on to lose: 62...♙e7 63.g3 63.♜xg6+ ♚d6 64.g3+- 63...♞c5 63...♞f6 does not help because of 64.♞b7 d3 65.♜xd3 e5+ 66.♞e3 ♞c3 67.♞d2+-; 63...♞d6 64.♞a4 ♜b5 65.♞a6+ ♞e7 66.♞b6 ♞c5 67.♜xg6+ ♞f6 68.♞f8+- . 64.♞b7 ♚d6 65.♞b6+ ♞e7 66.g4 h×g4 67.f×g4 g5+ 68.h×g5 ♞b5 69.♞c6 ♞b7 70.♞c4 ♜b5 71.♞c8 ♜c3 72.♞h8 ♜e2+ 73.♞f3 ♞b5 74.g6 ♜g1+ 75.♞g2 ♞×e5 Vachier-Lagrave gives up the exchange as 75...♞f6 runs into 76.♞f8+ ♞g7 77.♞f7+ ♞g8 78.♜d7+- . 76.g7 ♞g5 77.g8♙ ♞×g8 78.♞×g8 d3 79.♞a8 d2 80.♞a1 ♜e2 81.♞d1 ♜c3 82.♞×d2 ♜×e4 83.♞e2 ♜g5 84.♞g3 ♞f6 85.♞h4 ♞g6 86.♞e3 ♞h6 87.♞a3 ♞g6 88.♞a8 ♜f3+ 89.♞g3 ♜e5 90.♞a6 ♞g5 91.♞a5 1-0 and Black resigned in view of 91...♞f6 92.g5+ ♞f5 93.g6 ♞f6 94.♞×e5 ♞×e5 95.g7+- .

The prospects of both sides are also important:

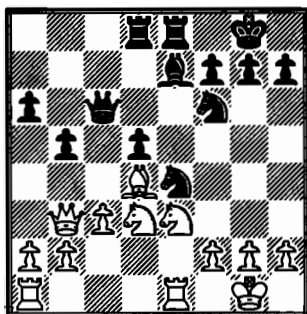
06.09 Nakamura – Karjakin
Corus Wijk aan Zee 2010 [B] (D)

31...♞e7 “The clue to the position is that Black has possibilities to improve

it (e.g., preparing ...g7-g5), and White has none. For instance, any retreat of the b6-bishop allows ...b7-b5. Therefore White takes the opportunity to break through immediately (objectively it was better to wait).” (Krasenkow in CBM 135) 32.c5?! This opens the position for Black. But 32.fxe5 dxe5 33.♞b3 f4 is also dangerous. 32...exf4 33.gxf4 dxc5 34.♞xc5 ♞e4?! 34...♞ee8! is more precise: 35.♞×b7 (35.♞d4 ♞×c1+ 36.♞×c1 ♞d4 37.♜xd4 ♞f7 38.♞f3 ♞e4) 35...♞b5 36.♜e5!? ♞e7! 37.♞×e7 ♞×e7 38.e4 fxe4 (Krasenkow) and Black is better in both cases. 35.♞×b7? 35.♞d6! ♞×c1+ 36.♞×c1 (Krasenkow) 36...♞a4 37.♜e5 ♞b5 38.♞g1 ♞h7 is the lesser evil. 35...♞b5 36.♞g2 36.♜d2 ♞c4 37.♞b4 ♞d5 38.♜×e4 ♞×e4+ 39.♞×e4 fxe4 40.♞a3 ♞×c1+ 41.♞×c1 ♞d1+ 42.♞g1 ♞c2+- 36...♞c4! 37.♞g1 ♞c2! 38.♞g3 38.♞×c2 ♞×f3+ 39.♞g2 ♞×g2+ 40.♞×g2 ♞×c5+- (Krasenkow) 38...♞e2! 39.♜e1 ♞2×c5 40.e4 f×e4 41.♞×g7 ♞f3+ 42.♜×f3 ♞×f3+ 43.♞×f3 exf3 44.♞7g6 ♞g7! 45.♞×a6 45.♞×g7 f2+- (Krasenkow) 45...♞c1 46.♞c6 ♞×g1+ 47.♞×g1 ♞d4+ 48.♞h1 ♞b8 0-1

(6.2.2) Exploiting Weaknesses

A weakness is a square that cannot be controlled by a friendly pawn. We have already dealt with the principle of two weaknesses in chapter 2. Furthermore, the guideline that a defender of a weakness – especially of a weak color complex – should be exchanged was investigated in chapter 3. As this theme is very important we want to deal with a few more examples here.



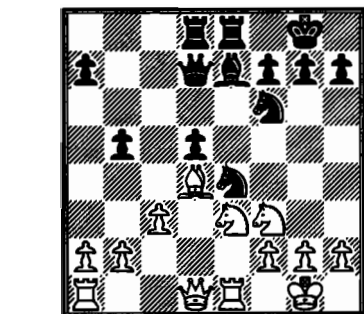
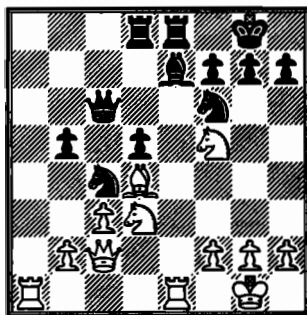
20.♞c2 ♖c4 21.a×b5 a×b5
21...♗×e3 22.♞×e3 a×b5 23.♞e2 ♔f8
24.♗e5± 22.♗f5 (D)

(6.2.2.1) Opening Another Front

06.10 Rublevsky – Bareev

RUS-ch Superfinal Moscow 2005

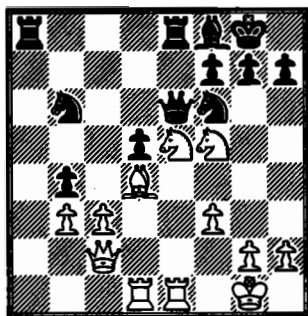
1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♗d2 c5 4.♗gf3
♗f6 5.exd5 exd5 6.♔b5+ ♔d7
7.♔×d7+ ♗b×d7 8.0-0 ♔e7
9.♞e1 0-0 10.d×c5 ♗×c5 11.♗f1
♞e8 12.♔e3 b5?! 12...a5 is the main
line. 13.c3 ♞d7 14.♔d4 ♞ad8
15.♗e3 ♗ce4 (D)



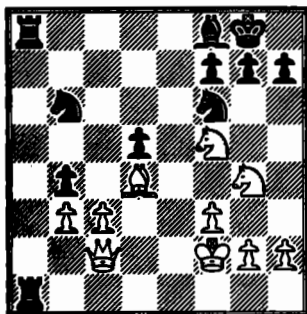
16.♞b3 “As usual, the best results are obtained by playing for small advantages, by not overreacting!” (Psakhis in CBM 111) 16...a6 17.♗e5 ♞b7 18.♗d3 ♞c6 (D)

19.a4! White opens another front. 19...♗d2?! 19...♗c5, to reduce the pressure by exchanges, was called for.

“White’s got a clear plan to improve his position, while it is not so easy for Black to come up with active counter-play.” (Psakhis). This is a typical advantage of playing against weaknesses and one of the reasons why the defender should not play purely passively. 22...♔f8 22...♞d7? 23.♗f4 ♞a8 24.♞×a8 ♞×a8 25.g3+- 23.b3 ♗b6 24.♗e5 24.♞d2!? is even slightly stronger: 24...♗e4 25.♞f4 f6 26.♗b4 ♞b7 27.h4±. 24...♞e6 25.f3!? Rublevsky restricts Black’s knight. 25...♞a8 26.♞ad1 White of course avoids the exchange of attacking potential. 26...b4? Black’s last chance to offer resistance was to bring another defender to the kingside with 26...♗bd7 . e.g., 27.h4 ♗×e5 28.♞×e5 ♞c6 (D)



27. $\text{d}4\text{g}4!$ Opening the front on the kingside to start a decisive attack:
 27... $\text{e}1\text{x}e1+$ 28. $\text{e}1\text{x}e1$ $\text{e}1\text{x}e1+$
 29. $\text{f}2\text{e}1$ $\text{e}1\text{a}1$ (D)



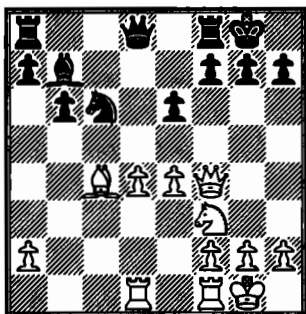
30. $\text{d}4\text{f}6+!$ The final blow.
 30... $\text{g}8\text{h}8$ 31. $\text{d}4\text{x}f7+$ $\text{g}8\text{g}8$
 32. $\text{d}4\text{f}6+$ $\text{g}8\text{h}8$ 33. $\text{d}4\text{x}f6$ $\text{g}8\text{x}f6$
 33... $\text{e}1\text{a}2?$ 34. $\text{d}4\text{f}7*$ 34. $\text{g}8\text{f}5$ $\text{d}4\text{g}7$
 35. $\text{d}4\text{f}7+$ $\text{g}8\text{g}8$ 36. $\text{g}8\text{e}6$ 1-0

(6.2.2.2) A weakness that cannot be exploited is no weakness at all

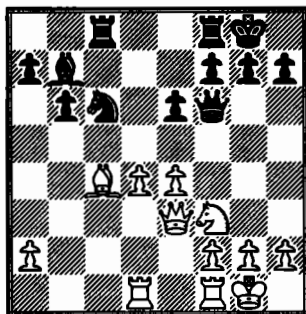
Chess is a difficult game and one crucial ability to develop is the intuitive feeling for the trading off between static and dynamic factors. So a concept like always avoiding weaknesses is misguided or as Fischer put it "to get squares you have to give squares." What is important is if the weakened squares or pawns can be exploited or not:

06.11 Gschnitzer – Ribli
 German Bundesliga 2005

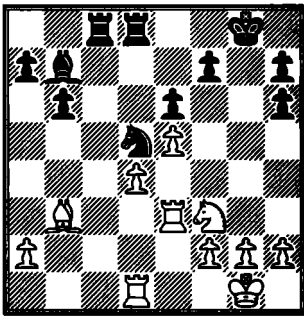
1. $\text{d}4$ $\text{e}6$ 2. $\text{c}4$ $\text{e}6$ 3. $\text{d}3$ $\text{d}5$ 4. $\text{c}3$ $\text{c}5$
 5. $\text{c}3\text{x}d5$ $\text{d}3\text{x}d5$ 6. $\text{e}4$ $\text{d}3\text{x}c3$
 7. $\text{b}3\text{x}c3$ $\text{c}3\text{x}d4$ 8. $\text{c}3\text{x}d4$ $\text{d}3\text{c}6$ 9. $\text{d}2\text{c}4$ $\text{d}2\text{b}4+$
 10. $\text{d}2\text{d}2$ $\text{d}2\text{x}d2+$ 11. $\text{e}1\text{x}d2$ 0-0
 12. 0-0 $\text{b}6$ 13. $\text{e}1\text{a}d1$ $\text{d}2\text{b}7$
 14. $\text{g}4\text{f}4$ (D)



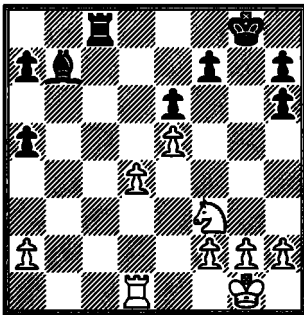
14... $\text{g}4\text{f}6!$ 15. $\text{g}4\text{e}3$ 15. $\text{g}4\text{f}6?!$ $\text{g}4\text{x}f6$
 16. $\text{d}5$ $\text{a}5$ is already slightly more comfortable for Black, as the weaknesses on his kingside cannot be exploited. 15... $\text{e}1\text{a}c8$ (D)



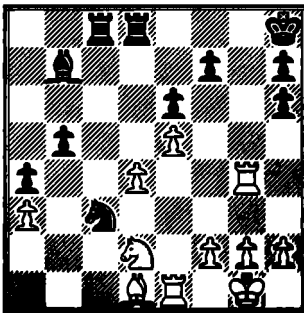
16. $\text{e}5?$ This runs into a mighty positional shot which underlines the fact that d5 is now a strong black outpost. 16. $\text{c}1\text{c}1$ $\text{f}8\text{d}8$ 17. $\text{f}8\text{f}1$ $\text{h}6\text{h}6$ is called for. 16... $\text{g}4\text{h}6!!$ 17. $\text{g}4\text{x}h6$ $\text{g}4\text{x}h6$
 18. $\text{e}1\text{f}e1$ $\text{d}2\text{b}4$ 19. $\text{d}2\text{b}3$ $\text{f}8\text{d}8$
 20. $\text{e}3\text{e}3$ $\text{d}5$ (D)



21. ♖e4? White's play on the kingside is harmless, while Black will win on the queenside thanks to White's weaknesses there. 21. ♖×d5 ♗×d5 22. ♗a3 was better, but Black even has 22... ♗a5 23. ♗×a5 b×a5 (D)



with good winning chances. Black's doubled pawns are not really weak as a weakness that cannot be exploited is no weakness at all. 21... ♖c3 22. ♗g4+ ♖h8 23. ♗e1 a5 24. ♖d2 b5 25. a3 a4 26. ♖d1 (D)

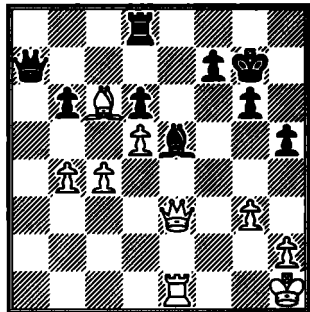


26... ♖×d1? Ribli exchanges an important defender against the invasion of his rooks. 27. ♗×d1 ♗c3 28. ♖b1 ♗c2 29. h3 ♗dc8 30. ♖d2 ♗c1 31. ♗f1 31. ♗×c1 ♗×c1+ 32. ♖h2 ♗c2 33. ♖e4 h5 34. ♗f4 ♖×e4 35. ♗×e4 ♗c3-+ 31... ♗×f1+ 32. ♖×f1 b4! 33. d5 ♗c1+ 34. ♖e2 ♖a6+ 35. ♖f3 ♗c3+ 36. ♖f4 b×a3 37. ♖e4 a2 0-1

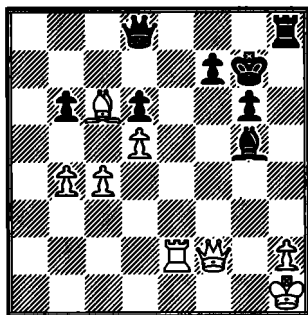
(6.2.2.3) A Weak Color Complex

This is very dangerous for the defender. So pieces defending an entire color complex should be exchanged. Opposite-color bishops are in this respect an extreme case and favor the attacker strongly if the color complex of his bishop is weak:

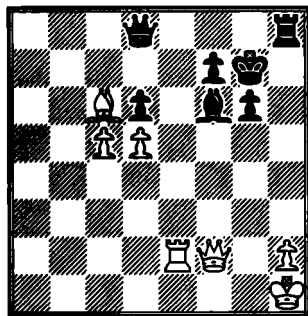
06.12 Polgar – Anand
Mainz 2003 [B] (D)



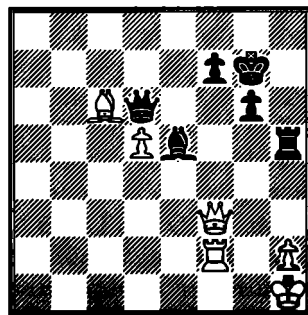
Black is better as he can launch a long-term attack on the dark squares: 34... h4! A strong blow to increase the pressure on the dark squares. 35. g×h4 35. g4 ♖a2 36. ♖e2 ♖b3 37. b5 ♗c8 with the idea ♗c7-a7 (Stohl in CBM 97) also gives Black good play. 35... ♗h8 36. ♖f2 ♖f6 37. ♗f1 ♖e7 38. ♗e1 38. ♖×b6?? ♖e4+ 39. ♖g1 ♖d4+ -+ (Stohl). 38... ♖d8 39. ♗e2 ♖×h4 39... ♖c5!? 40. ♖f4 ♖g9 41. ♖f2 (D)



41...**Qf6!** A very strong regrouping.
 42.c5?! Desperation, but good advice
 is hard to give, e.g., 42.♖e1 Qd4
 43.♗e8? ♖f6-+. 42...bxc5 43.bxc5
 (D)



43...♖b8?! 43...Qe5!? applies more
 pressure as 44.♗e5 dxe5 45.d6 can
 be met by 45...♖a5 46.Qg2 ♖b4
 47.♖e3 ♖b1+ 48.♖g1 ♖d3 49.♖a1
 ♖f6-+. 44.cxd6 44.♖g3? Qe5-+
 44...♖xd6 45.♖e3 ♗h5 46.♗f2
 Qe5 47.♖f3 (D)

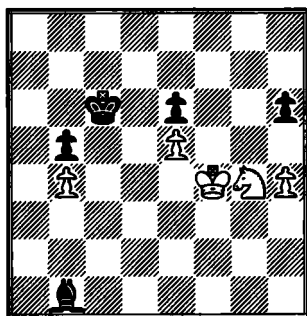


47...♖e7? Anand wants to avoid
 47...Qxh2 48.♖xh5 (48.♖xf7+?
 ♖h6-+) 48...g×h5 49.♗xh2 ♖f4-+
 (Stohl) but objectively he had to go for
 it. 48.♗e2? In a rapid game defending
 such a position is next to impossible.
 48.Qb5 was forced. 48...♖g5
 49.♖f1 ♖g3 50.♖f2 50.♖g2 ♖d3
 51.♗f2 ♖b1+ 52.♖g1 ♖e4+ 53.♗g2
 ♗h8-+ (Stohl). 50...♖d3 51.h4
 ♖h3+ 52.♖g1 ♗xh4 0-1

(6.2.2.4) The Knight Wants Control

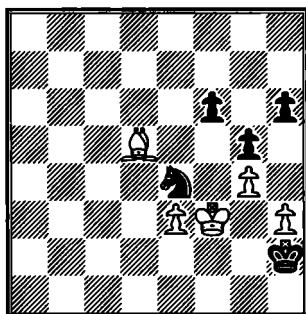
The knight often wants to stay in full
 control to have time for its slow
 maneuvers:

06.13 Strutinskaya – Chernikov 11th European Senior Championship Courmayeur 2011 [W] (D)

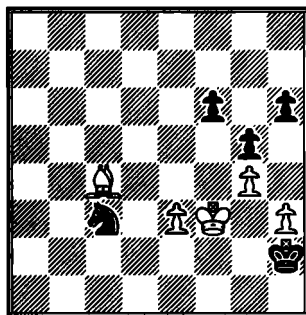


68.♗f6! White condemns Black to
 total passivity. 68.♗xh6? violates the
 important endgame principle “do not
 rush”: 68...♖d5 69.♗f7 (69.♖g5 ♖c4
 70.♖f6 ♖xb4 71.♖xe6 ♖c3 72.♗f5 b4
 73.♗e3 b3 74.♖f6 Qd3 75.e6 Qb5
 76.e7 ♖d2 77.♗c4+ ♖c3 78.♗a3
 Qe8-) 69...♖c4 (D)

as given by Baburin in *Chess Today*
 #3807 and Black's counterplay secures
 the draw: 70.Qg5 ♖xb4 71.h5 ♖c4
 72.Qxe6 (72.h6 h4 73.h7? backfires
 completely: 73...Qh7 74.♗xh7

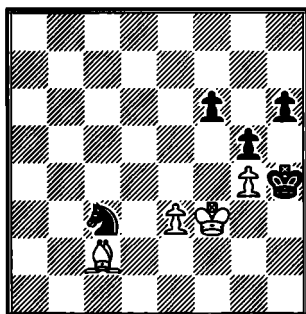


67...c3! Black must win a tempo. (After 67...d6? 68.h4 g×h4 69.♟f2 and after 67...c5? 68.♞c4 ♜×h3 69.♞f1+ ♜h4 70.♞e2 h5 71.g×h5 ♜×h5 White has good drawing chances.) 68.♞c4 (D)

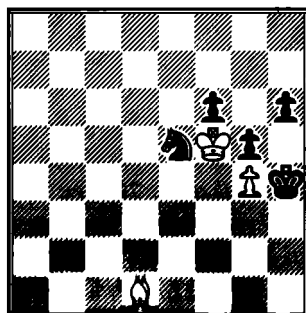


68...b1!! The point. The knight will either sacrifice itself on d2 or return with gain of time. (68...♜×h3? is met by 69.♞f1+ ♜h4 70.♞d3) 69.♞e2 ♜×h3 70.♞d3 (70.♞e6 ♞c3+ 71.♟f3 ♞a4 72.♞c4 ♜h4 73.♞f1 ♞b6 74.♞e2 ♞d5 75.♞d1 ♞c3 76.♞c2 ♞b5 77.♞a4 ♞d6 78.♞b3 f5-+) 70...c3+ 71.♟f3 ♜h4 72.♞f1. If White stays on the b1-h7 diagonal with 72.♞c2, Knaak. (D)

then the following knight maneuvers win. Black's king also has to move from time to time to put White in *zugzwang*: 72...b5 73.♞f5 (73.♞h7 ♞d6 74.♞g6 ♞c4-+) 73...d6 74.♞e6 ♜h3 75.♞b3 (75.♞a2 ♞c8 76.♞c4 ♞e7 77.♞e6 ♞c6 78.♞e4 ♞e5 79.♟f5 ♞×g4 80.♟g6 ♞h4 81.e4 ♞e3-+)

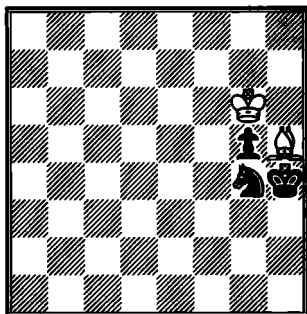


75...b7 76.♞d1 ♞c5 77.♞e2 ♜h4 78.♞b5 ♞b3 79.♞e2 ♞d2+ 80.♟f2 ♞e4+ 81.♟g2 ♞c3 82.♞f3 ♞a2 83.♞e2 ♞c1 84.♞d1 ♞d3 85.♟f3 ♞e5+-+ or 72...b1 73.♞d3 ♞d2+ 74.♞e2 ♜×g4 75.♜×d2 ♜h3 76.♞e2 g4 77.♟e1 h5 78.♟f1 ♜h2-+. 59...♜d2!! Carlsen puts Kramnik in *zugzwang*. Now his king will reach the white kingside pawns. 60.♞c6 60.♞a6?! is refuted by 60...d1 61.e4 d4-+. 60...♟e1 61.♞b7 ♟f1 62.♞a8 ♟g1 63.♟g3 ♞e4+ 64.♟f3 ♞d2+ 65.♟g3 65.♟e2 ♞c4 66.♞×d5 ♞e5 67.♞e4 ♜h2 68.♟f2 ♜×h3 69.♞f5 ♜h4-+. 65...d1+ 66.♟f3 ♞d2+ 67.♟g3 ♞c4 68.♞×d5 ♞×e3 69.♞b7 ♞f1+ 70.♟f3 ♜h2 71.♟f2 71.h4 ♜h3 72.h×g5 f×g5 73.♞c8 ♞h2+ 74.♟f2 ♞×g4+ 75.♟f3 h5-+ 71...d2 72.♞g2 ♞c4 73.♞f1 ♞e5 74.♟e3 ♟g1 75.♞e2 75.♟e2 ♞d3 76.♜×d3 ♜×f1-+ 75...♟g2 76.♟e4 ♜×h3 77.♟f5 ♜h4 78.♞d1 (D)



Do Not Rush

78...♖c4! 79.♗e4 After 79.♗xf6
 ♖e3 80.♙e2 ♖xg4+ 81.♗g6 h5
 82.♙d1 ♖e3 83.♙xh5 ♖g4+ (D)



White is in *zugzwang*. A tragicomic picture. Kramnik also had no chance in the game: 79...♖d6+ 80.♗d5
 80.♗f3 h5 81.gxh5 ♗xh5 82.♗g3+
 ♗g6+ 80...f5! 0-1 The final point;
 Kramnik resigned in view of 81.♗xd6
 f×g4 82.♗e5 g3 83.♙f3 ♗h3 84.♗f5
 g2 85.♙xg2+ ♗xg2+.

A very impressive endgame performance by Magnus Carlsen!

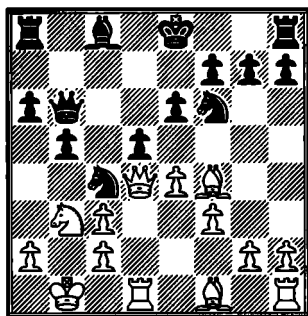
(6.3) Transformation of One Advantage into Another

Flexibility is very important in chess. You should never think, "I have the pair of bishops, so I will win with them later, so I will never exchange one of them." This attitude will obviously lead to disaster. Always keep an open mind for transformations. Take a look at this example by Hungarian grandmaster Peter Leko:

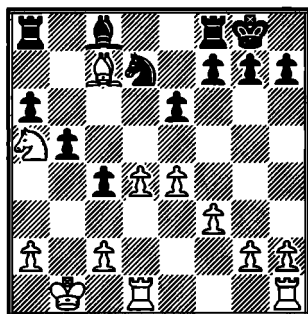
06.15 Leko – Anand

ARM-Rest of the World Moscow 2004 [W] (D)

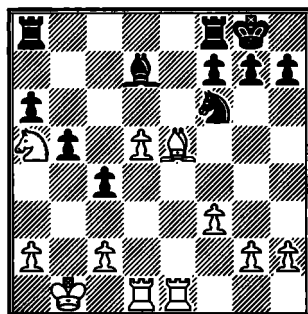
15.♙xc4! Leko gives up the pair of bishops but gets a strong initiative on the dark squares in return. 15...♗xd4



16.cxd4 dxc4 17.♖a5! ♖d7
 18.♙c7 0-0 (D)

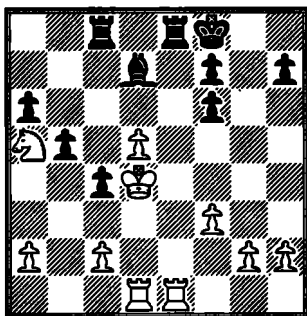


Now Leko gives up his ideal e4-d4 pawn center and gets a strong passed pawn in return: 19.d5! exd5 20.exd5 ♖f6
 21.♗he1 ♙d7 22.♙e5 (D)

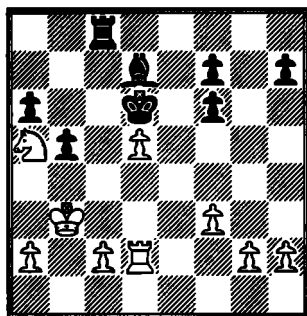


Leko already indicates the next transformation. White's strong bishop shall be exchanged to weaken the kingside pawn structure and to emphasize the advantage of good knight versus bad bishop. 22...♗fe8 23.♗b2! Leko

does not rush. First he activates his king to keep full control. 23...♖ac8 24.♕xf6 gxf6 25.♖c3 ♖f8 26.♖d4 (D)

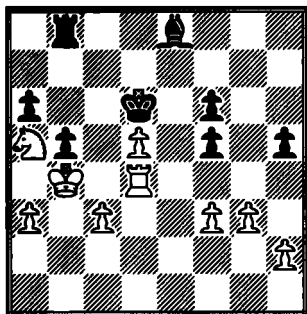


26...c3?! Desperation. Black should stop the d-pawn with 26...♕f5 27.c3 ♖ed8 28.♖b7 ♖d7 29.♖c5 ♖d6 30.♖e4 ♖xe4 31.fxe4±. 27.♖xe8+ ♖xe8 27...♖xe8 28.♖e1+ ♖f8 29.g4 h6 30.a3 f5 31.h3 f×g4 32.f×g4± 28.♖xc3 ♖c8+ 29.♖b3 ♖e7 30.♖d2 ♖d6 (D)

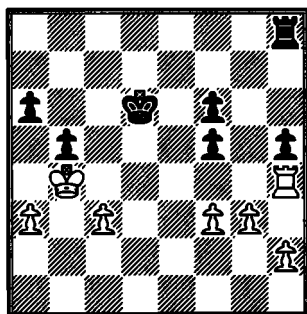


31.♖b4 Leko continues his slow approach to keep full control. The direct 31.♖b7+!? ♖c7 32.♖c5 a5 33.♖e4+– (Huschenbeth) was even stronger. But not 31.c4?! because of 31...b×c4+ 32.♖xc4+ ♖c5. 31...♖b8 32.c3 f5 33.a3 f6 34.♖d4 h5 35.g3 ♖e8 (D)

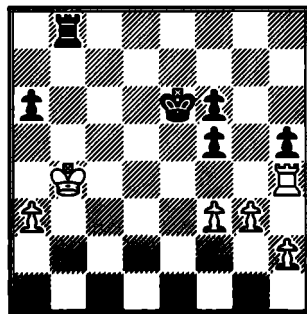
White is well-placed, but how to make progress? Leko solves this typical problem again by the transformation of advantages: 36.♖c6! ♖c8 36...♖xc6



37.dxc6+ ♖xc6 38.♖f4+– 37.♖a5 ♖b8 38.♖c6 ♖c8 39.♖a5! Leko forces Anand to take the Trojan horse. 39...♖xc6 40.dxc6+ ♖xc6 41.♖h4 ♖d6 42.♖b4 ♖h8 (D)

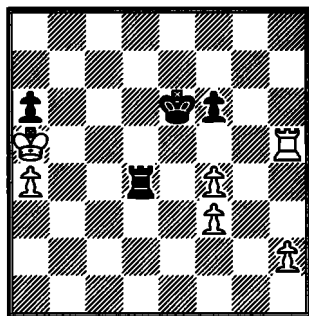


43.c4! Good technique. As Leko has full control and all the time in the world, he first gets rid of his weak c-pawn before taking one of Black's weak ones. 43...b×c4 44.♖xc4 ♖e6 45.♖b4 ♖b8+ (D)

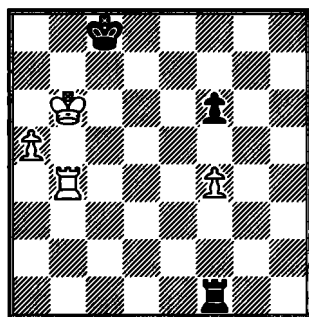


Do Not Rush

46. ♖a4! Leko does not rush and stops the activation of Black's rook.
46... ♗d8 47. ♖a5 ♗d2 48. a4 f4
49. gxf4! ♗d6 50. ♖xh5 ♗d4 (D)



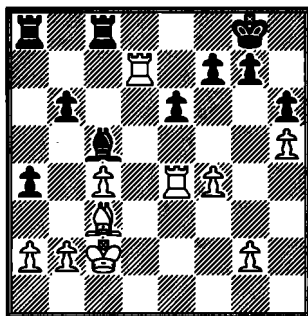
Leko now puts his money on his a-pawn:
51. ♖c5 ♖xf4 52. ♖c3 ♖h4 53. ♖b3
♗d7 54. ♖b4 ♖xh2 55. ♖xa6 ♖c2
56. ♖b6 ♖c6+ 57. ♖b5 ♖e6
58. ♖e4 ♗d6 59. ♖c4 ♗d5+
60. ♖b4 ♗d3 61. f4 ♗d1 62. a5
♖b1+ 63. ♖a4 ♖a1+ 64. ♖b5
♖b1+ 65. ♖b4 ♖f1 66. ♖b6 ♖c8 (D)



and now the last transformation of the game decides it: 67. ♖c6 ♖e1
68. ♖d6 1-0 and as White will win with the f-pawn Anand resigned.

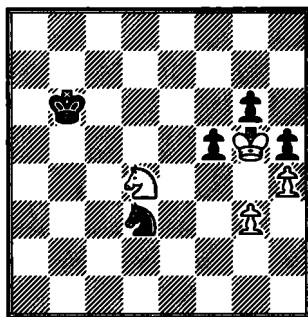
Exercises

E06.01 Hracek – Dautov
Lippstadt 2000 [W] (D)



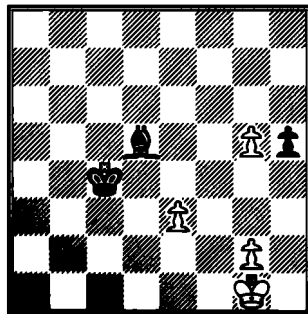
How did Hracek proceed?

E06.02 Bu Xiangzhi – Y.Hou
2nd GM Danzhou 2011 [W] (D)



How did Bu convert his advantage?

E06.03 Siebrecht – Berger
German Bundesliga 2011 [B] (D)



How to preserve Black's only pawn?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

Tests

Score Chart

You have one hour for each of the twelve tests, which is probably best measured with a chess clock to get a more game-like atmosphere. Solve them from the diagrams and write your solutions on a sheet of paper. To get a more precise value, we advise you to take your average over all 12 tests. Of course the values (your “Positional Elo”) must be taken with a very large grain of salt.

0–1: Study the chapters again!

2-3: below 1500

4-5: 1500

6-7: 1700

8-9: 1900

10–11: 2100

12: 2300

13: 2500

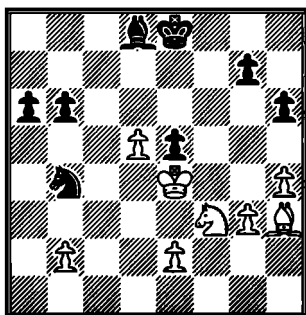
14: Challenge the World Champion!

Even more important than the result of this calculation is that you really try hard to solve them and to enjoy yourself while doing so. There is a paradox here: If on the one hand you are comfortably reading a chess book, feeling you understand everything, you may in fact not be learning anything. If on the other hand you really put a lot of effort in and feel stupid because you couldn't solve the exercise (“looking for the edges of your comfort zone” in Rowson's words), in reality you may be learning something. Another idea is to compete with your friends to add spice to the task.

Test 1

T01.01 Aronian – Vescovi

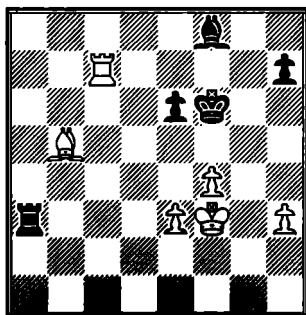
WchT 7th Bursa 2010 (D)



[W] What is White's first priority?

T01.02 Vitiugov – Bacrot

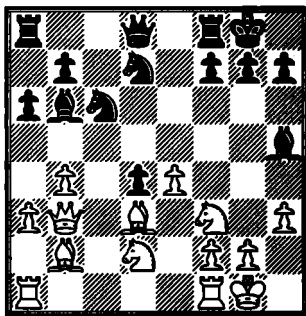
EU-Cup 25th Ohrid 2009 (D)



[W] What in the most precise way to proceed?

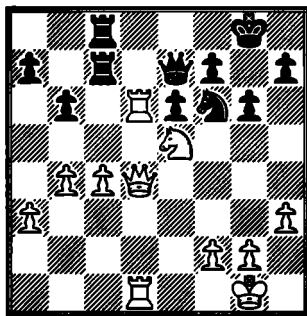
Tests

T01.03 Epishin – Cherniaev
Hastings 2004 (D)



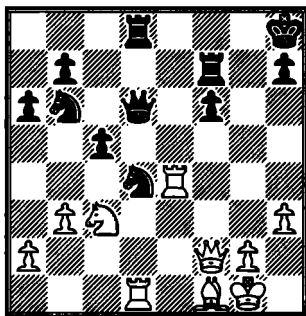
[W] How to use White's initiative?

T01.04 Ernst – Nordstrom
Avesta 1995 (D)



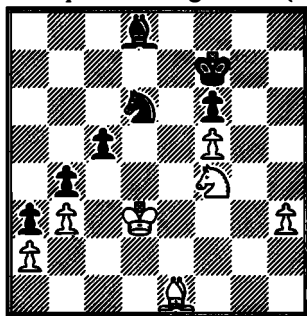
[W] How to increase White's obvious advantage?

T01.05 Anand – Svidler
Moscow Tal Memorial 2009 (D)



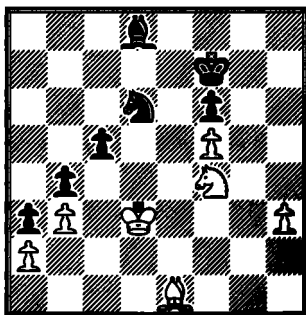
[W] Where is Black's Achilles' Heel?

T01.06 Kreiman – Becerra Rivero
USA-ch GpB San Diego 2006 (D)



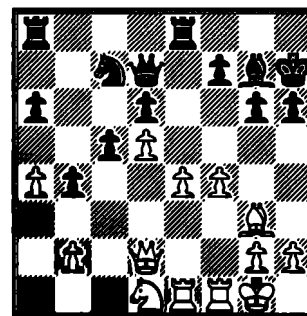
[W] It seems that Black has all inroads under surveillance. But Kreiman found a way through. Can you do the same?

T01.07 Eljanov – Radjabov
Corus Wijk aan Zee 2008 (D)



[W] It seems that Black has all inroads under surveillance. But Kreiman found a way through. Can you do the same?

T01.08 Bareev – Alekseev
World Cup Khanty Mansiysk 2007 (D)

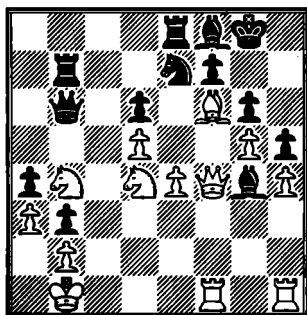


[B] Where is White's Achilles' Heel?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

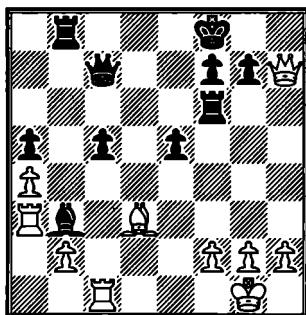
Test 2

T02.01 Caruana – van der Wiel
Corus-C Wijk aan Zee 2008 (D)



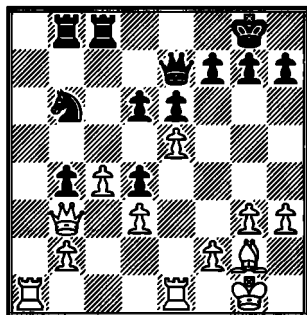
[W] How did Caruana take advantage of the disharmony in Black's camp?

T02.02 Ni Hua – Inarkiev
RUS-CHN Summit Men 4th Nizhnij
Novgorod 2007 (D)



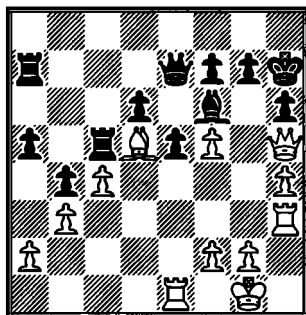
[W] How did Ni Hua destroy Black's coordination?

T02.03 Sutovsky – Tiviakov
Montreal 2007 (D)



[B] Which is the stronger minor piece here?

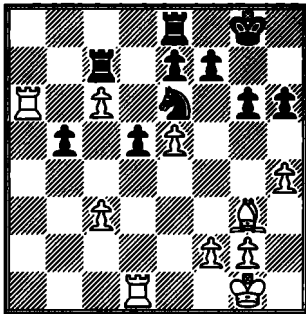
T02.04 Kharlov – Zivkovic
EU-Cup 22nd Fuegen 2006 (D)



[W] How to continue White's attack?

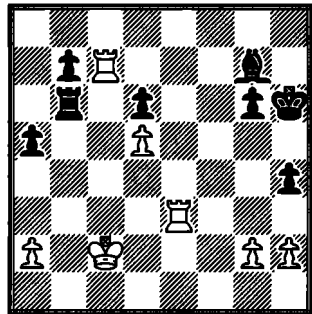
Tests

T02.05 Vallejo Pons – Kamsky
FIDE World Cup Khanty Mansiysk
2005 (D)



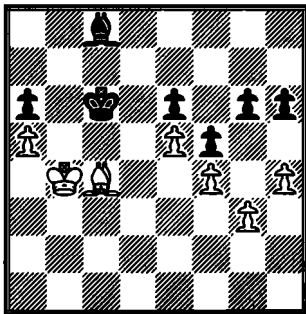
[B] How did Kamsky prove that his knight is stronger than the white bishop?

T02.06 Tregubov – Kabanov
RUS-ch sf 58th Kazan 2005 (D)



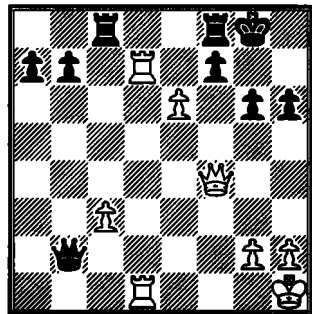
[W] How did Tregubov win easily ?

T02.07 Baburin – Skripchenko
German Bundesliga 2003 (D)



[W] Can Black's fortress be stormed?

T02.08 Caruana – Ljubojevic
Amsterdam 2010 (D)

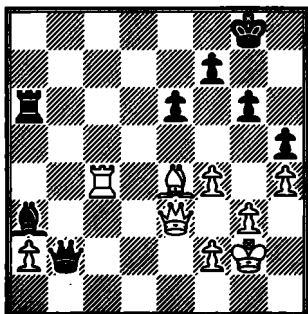


[B] How to defend prophylactically?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

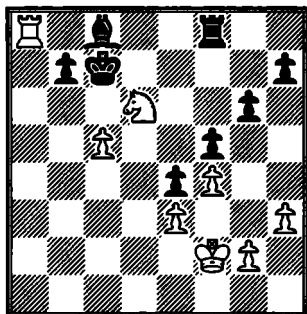
Test 3

T03.01 van Wely – Leko
Corus Wijk aan Zee 2010 (D)



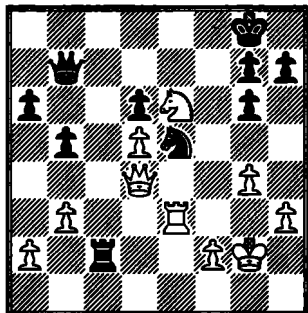
[W] How to convert White's advantage?

T03.02 Bagirov – Malyshev
Abu Dhabi 2003 (D)



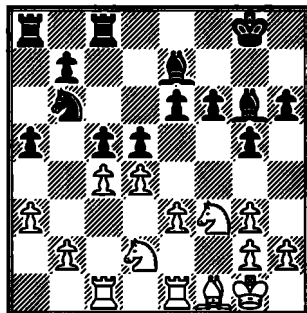
[W] White to move and win.

T03.03 Sedlak – Pavasovic
Vidmar Memorial 15th Terme Zrece
2003 (D)



[W] Find Black's Achilles' Heel!

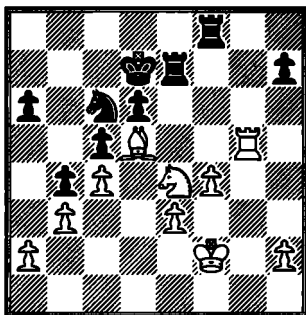
T03.04 Thormann – Ftacnik
GER CupT 3rd place Berlin 2003 (D)



[B] How to use Black's bishop pair?

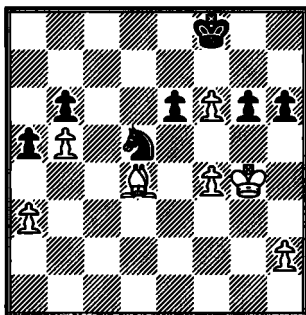
Tests

T03.05 Chabanon – Santo Roman
FRA-chT Gp-B France 2003 (D)



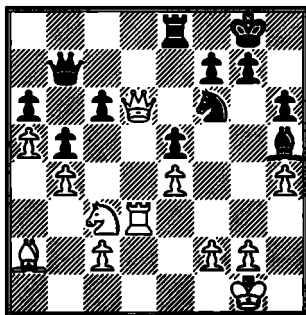
[W] White must act to prove that he has more than enough compensation for the exchange. But how?

T03.06 Roiz – Lerner
ISR-ch Tel Aviv 2002 (D)



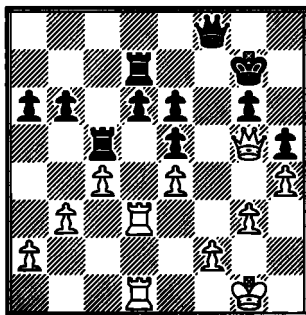
[W] How did Roiz show the superiority of his bishop?

T03.07 Berg – Kallio
Bermuda-B 2003 (D)



[W] White's pieces are well-placed but how to make progress?

T03.08 Pigusov – Ivanov
FIDE-Wch k.o. Moscow 2001 (D)

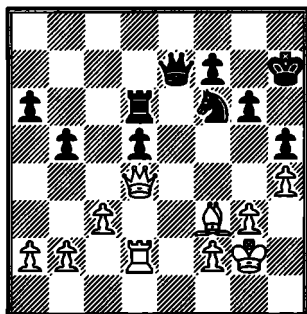


[W] How to increase the pressure?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

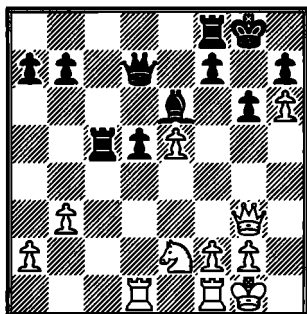
Test 4

T04.01 Müller – Seger
German Bundesliga 2009 (D)



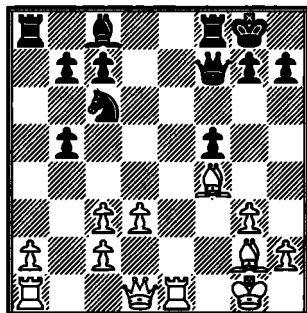
[W] How to make progress?

T04.02 Volkov – Grabarczyk
EU-ch 2nd Ohrid 2001 (D)



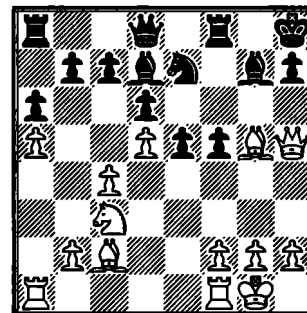
[W] How to attack Black's king?

T04.03 van Mil – Mikhalevski
Tel Aviv 2001 (D)



[W] How did van Mil shatter the foundations of Black's house?

T04.04 Piket – Fedorov
Corus Wijk aan Zee 2001 (D)

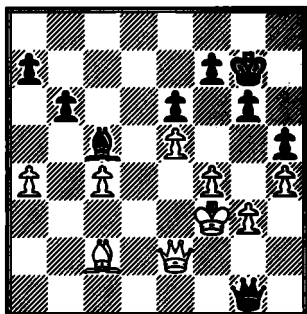


[W] Piket found the soft spot in Black's position. Can you do the same?

Tests

T04.05 van der Sterren – Polgar

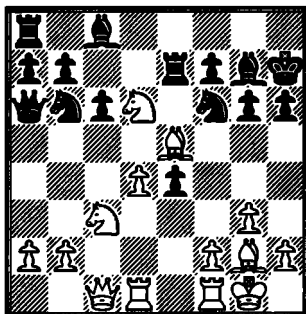
Istanbul ol 2000 (D)



[B] How did Judit Polgar make White's house collapse?

T04.06 Parker – Hauchard

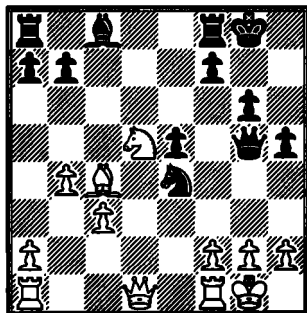
Mondariz zt 1.1 2000 (D)



[W] How to exploit White's initiative?

T04.07 Yegiazarian – Danielian

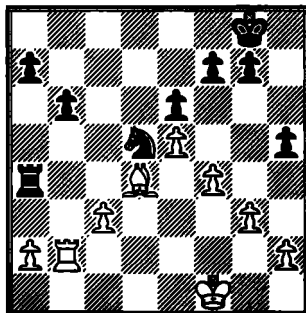
ARM-ch Yerevan 2000 (D)



[W] How to use White's advantage in development?

T04.08 Nakamura – Kramnik

Dortmund 2011 (D)

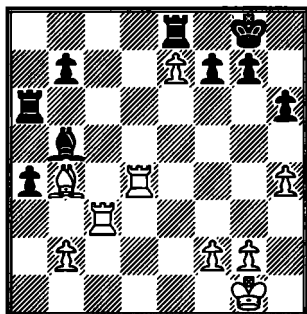


[B] How to make progress?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

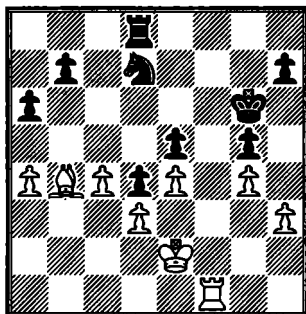
Test 5

T05.01 Vallejo Pons – Ivanisevic
EU-Cup 24th Kallithea 2008 (D)



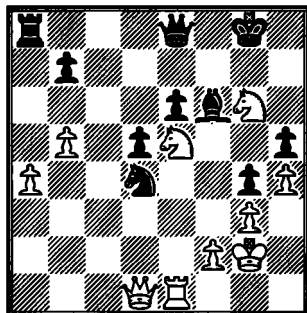
[W] Vallejo played the slow 29.f4 according to the principle “do not rush.” Was this correct?

T05.02 Berg – Jones
Four Nations tt Oslo 2008 (D)



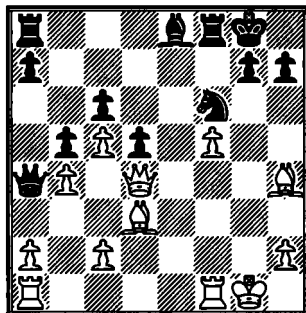
[W] How to develop White's initiative?

T05.03 Asrian – Portisch
EU-ch 6th Warsaw 2005 (D)



[W] How to exploit the weaknesses on Black's side?

T05.04 Socko – Levin
German Bundesliga 2005 (D)

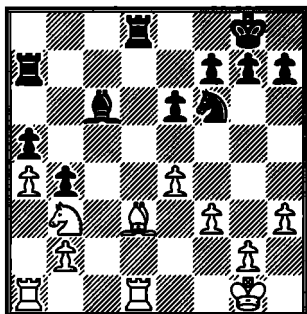


[W] What is White's biggest trump?

Tests

T05.05 Ponomariov – Giri

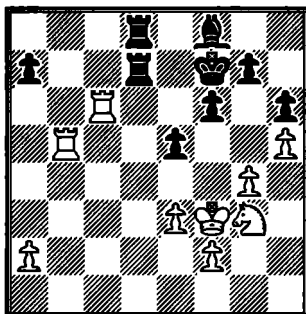
Dortmund 2011 (D)



[W] How to use White's initiative?

T05.06 Hickl – Tiviakov

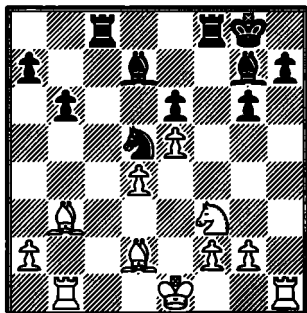
2.German Bundesliga 2007 (D)



[W] Which typical plan did Hickl follow now?

T05.07 Kramnik – Giri

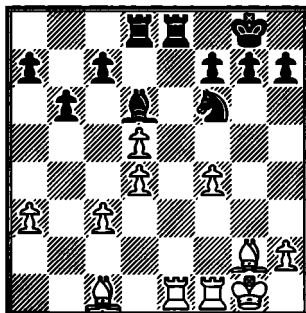
Dortmund 2011 (D)



[W] How did Kramnik increase the pressure?

T05.08 Gashimov – Wang Yue

8th World Teams Ningbo 2011 (D)



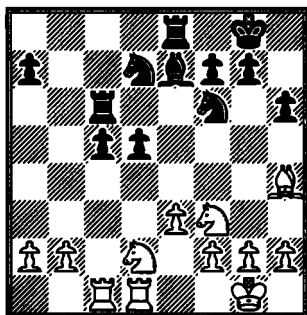
[B] How to control White's bishops?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

Test 6

T06.01 Delchev – Galkin

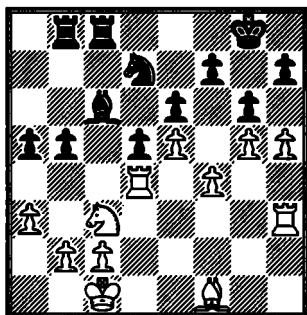
FIDE-Wch k.o. Tripoli 2004 (D)



[W] How to increase the pressure against Black's center?

T06.02 van den Doel – Meins

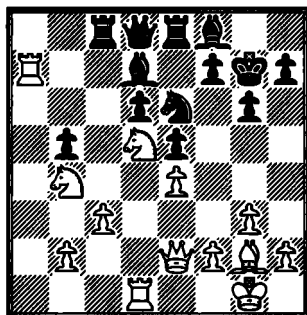
German Bundesliga 2004 (D)



[W] On which wing shall White play?

T06.03 Tyomkin – Dvoiry's

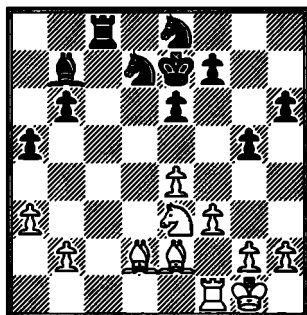
Beersheba 2004 (D)



[W] How to increase the pressure?

T06.04 van Wely – Timman

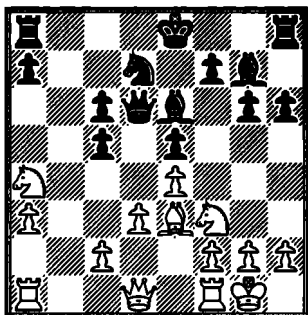
Cogas Energie m Almelo 2004 (D)



[W] How to make use of White's bishops?

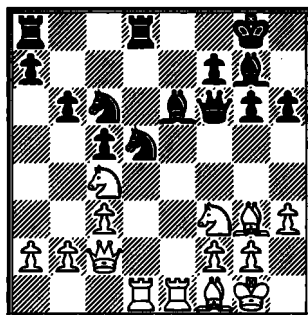
Tests

T06.05 Volokitin – Schmittziel
German Bundesliga 2004 (D)



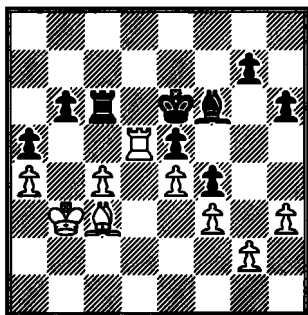
[W] Where is Black's Achilles' Heel?

T06.06 Sorokin – Mamedov
Moscow Aeroflot op-A 2004 (D)



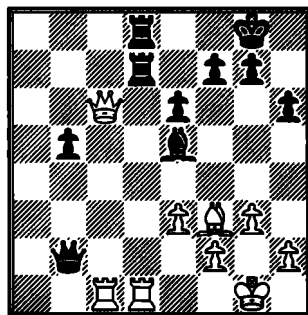
[W] How to increase the pressure?

T06.07 Murshed – Miezis
United Insurance 5th Dhaka 2001 (D)



[W] How did Murshed make progress?

T06.08 Nielsen – Giri
Amsterdam 2010 (D)



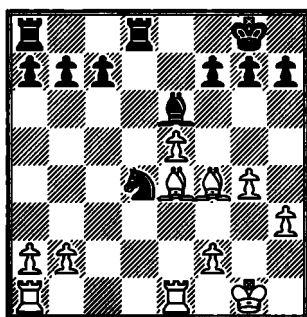
[W] White to move and win

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

Test 7

T07.01 Zaltz – Roiz

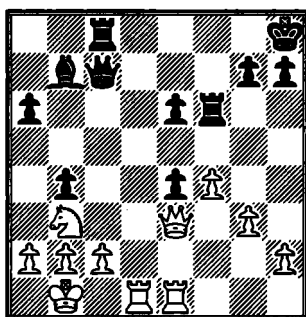
Israel Rapid Grand Prix 2005 (D)



[W] What is White's first priority?

T07.02 Alekseev – Zhukova

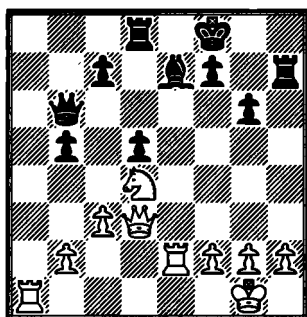
Corus-C Wijk aan Zee 2005 (D)



[W] How to parry the threat ♖xc2+ ?

T07.03 Jakovenko – Mikhalevski

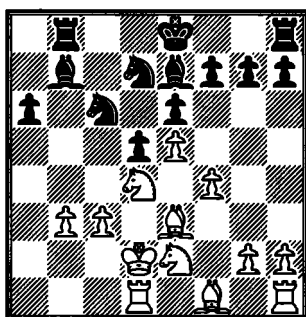
Montreal 2005 (D)



[B] To protect the b5-pawn or not to protect the b5-pawn, that is the question.

T07.04 Najer – Ponkratov

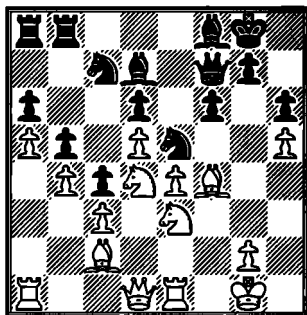
17th TCh-RUS Premier Dagomys 2010 (D)



[W] How to use White's space advantage?

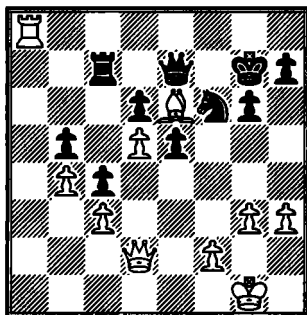
Tests

T07.05 Motylev – Korotylev
RUS-chT Sochi 2005 (D)



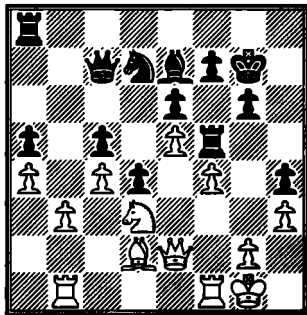
[W] How to protect the h5-pawn in the long run?

T07.06 Azarov – Sowray
Athens Acropolis op-A 24th Chalkida 2009 (D)



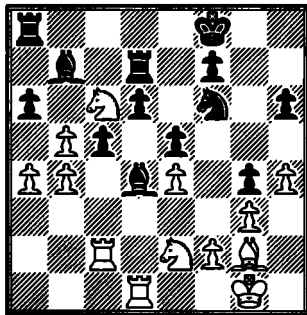
[W] White is obviously much better. But how to make progress?

T07.07 Ganguly – Polgar
8th World Teams Ningbo 2011 (D)



[B] Find not only the first move but also Polgar's plan!

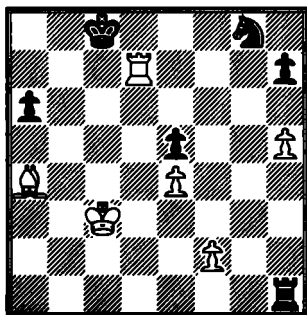
T07.08 Navara – Leko
Khanty Mansiysk ol 2010 (D)



[W] How to use White's queenside majority?

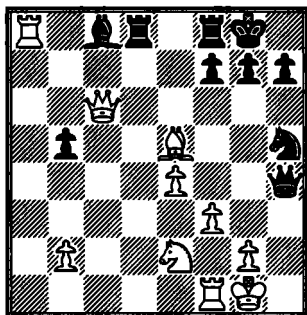
Test 8

T08.01 Jakovenko – Rakhmanov
17th TCh-RUS Premier Dagomys 2010
(D)



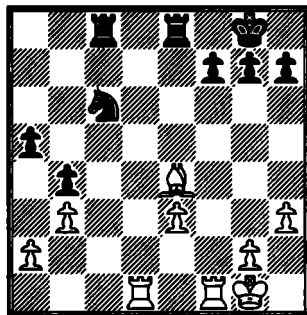
[W] What has the highest priority?

T08.02 Jakovenko – Frolyanov
TCh-RUS Premier Olginka 2011 (D)



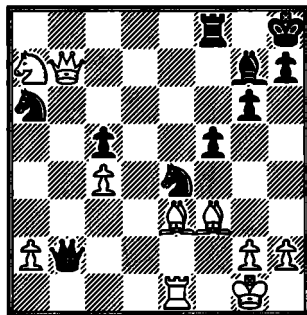
[W] How to transform White's advantage?

T08.03 Jakovenko – Laznicka
26th European Club Cup Plovdiv 2010
(D)



[W] How to use White's initiative?

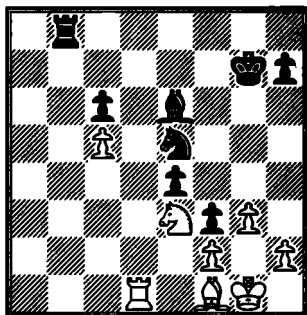
T08.04 Jakovenko – Bojkov
26th European Club Cup Plovdiv 2010
(D)



[W] How to exploit White's pair of bishops?

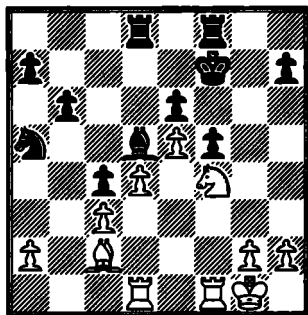
Tests

T08.05 Jakovenko – Ponomarlov
TCh-RUS Premier Olginka 2011 (D)



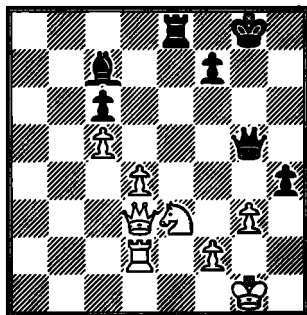
[B] How to break White's defenses?

T08.06 Jakovenko – Areshchenko
World Chess Cup Khanty-Mansiysk
2009 (D)



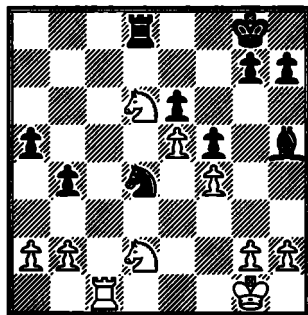
[W] Improve White's worst placed piece!

T08.07 Gashimov – Shirov
Poikovsky 2008 (D)



[W] Find White's only good try to win!

T08.08 Grigoriants – Rychagov
ch-Moscow Final 2010 (D)

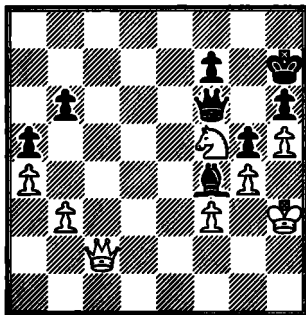


[W] How to parry the threat 1...♘e2+?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

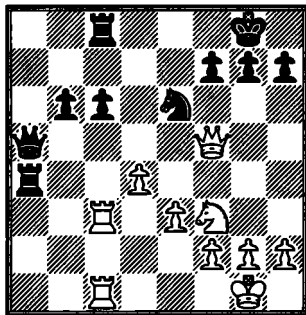
Test 9

T09.01 Parligras – Bodirosa
Srajber Memorial Subotica 2003 (D)



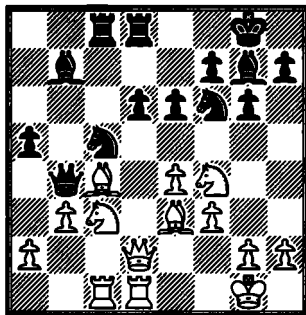
[W] White to move and win.

T09.02 Kacheishvili – Barkhagen
EU-chT (Men) 14th Plovdiv 2003 (D)



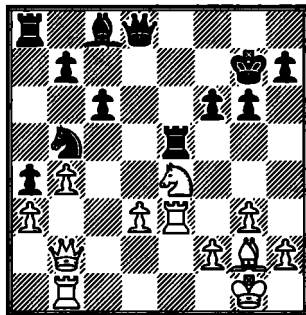
[W] How to use White's initiative?

T09.03 Haba – Golubev
German Bundesliga 2001 (D)



[W] Find the flaw in Black's concept!

T09.04 Gurevich - Ye Jiangchuan
FIDE World Cup-B Shenyang 2000 (D)

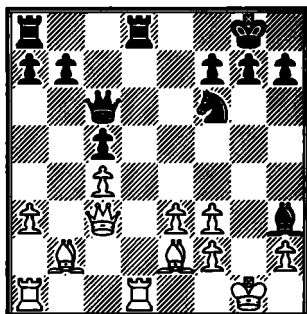


[B] Who is better and why?

Tests

T09.05 Khalifman – Kramnik

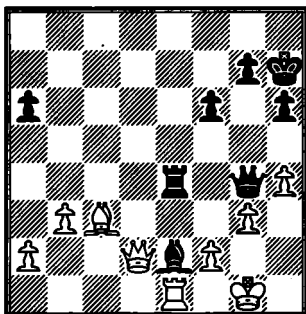
Linares 2000 (D)



[B] How did Kramnik demonstrate that Black is already for choice?

T09.06 Kramnik – Leko

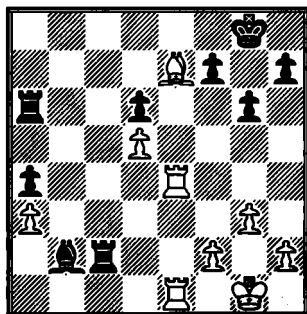
Dortmund 2010 (D)



[B] How to continue Black's attack?

T09.07 Adams – Kramnik

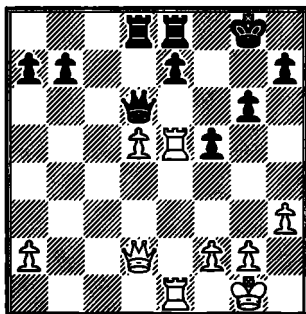
Hoogovens Wijk aan Zee 1998 (D)



[B] Who is attacking whom?

T09.08 Vachier Lagrave – Nepomniachtchi

Tata Steel-A 73rd Wijk aan Zee 2011 (D)

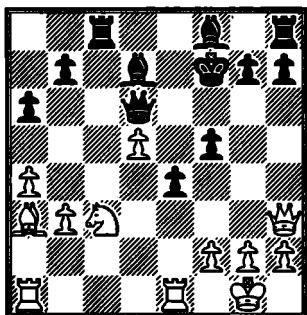


[W] How to use White's initiative?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

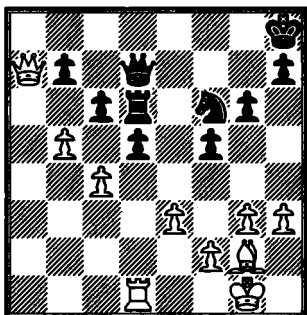
Test 10

T10.01 Bedouin – Chatalbashev
Rohde op 06th Sautron 2006 (D)



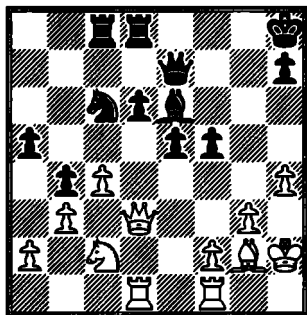
[B] Where to go?

T10.02 Tsesarsky – Gruenfeld
Rishon Le Ziyyon-ch op 2000 (D)



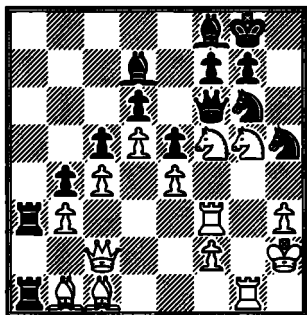
[W] Find White's strongest move!

T10.03 Nisipeanu – Radjabov
Bazna Kings 4th Medias 2010 (D)



[W] How to proceed in this typical structure from the Sveshnikov Sicilian?

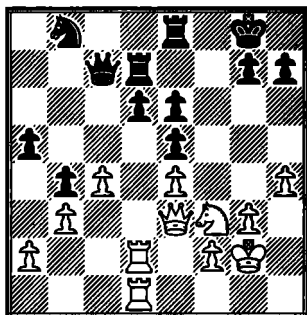
T10.04 Short – Azarov
Calvia ol (Men) Mallorca 2004 (D)



[B] How to deal with White's kingside attack?

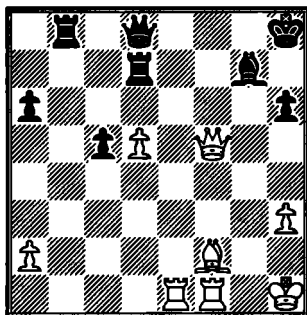
Tests

T10.05 Nisipeanu – Spasov
TCh-ROU Superliga Baile Herculane
2010 (D)



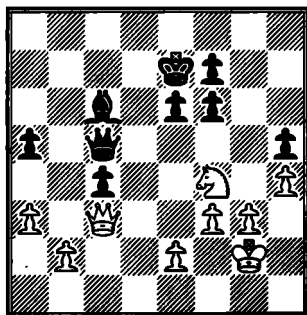
[W] White has the better structure and development. But how to make progress ?

T10.06 Le Quang – McShane
Tata Steel-B 73rd Wijk aan Zee 2011
(D)



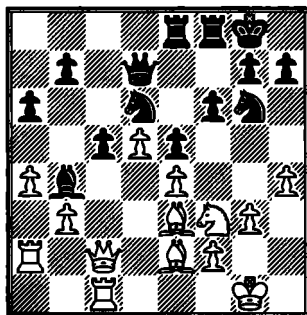
[W] Where is Black's Achilles' Heel?

T10.07 Georgiev – Nielsen
FRA-chT Gp-A 2004 (D)



[W] How to exploit the weaknesses in Black's camp?

T10.08 Karpov – Salov
Linares 1991 (D)

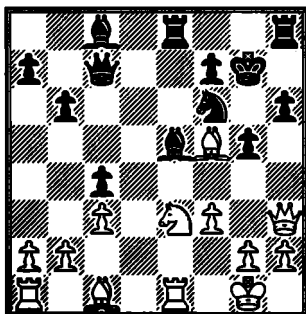


[W] How to preserve White's advantage?

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

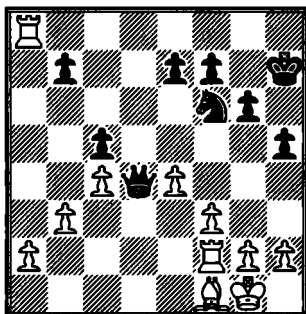
Test 11

T11.01 Timman – Speelman
German Bundesliga 2001 (D)



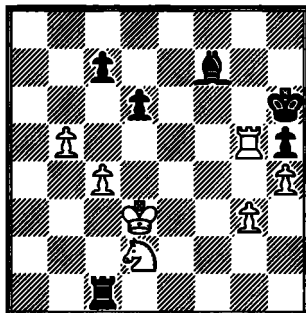
[B] How did Speelman destroy the harmony of White's position?

T11.02 Lenic – Le Quang
Moscow Aeroflot op-A 2011 (D)



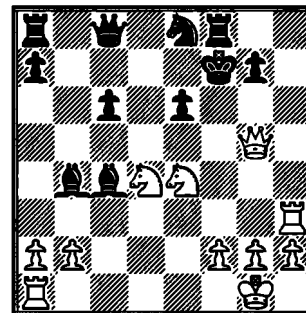
[B] How to assess the position with Black to move?

T11.03 Nakamura – Shirov
Tata Steel-A 73rd Wijk aan Zee 2011 (D)



[W] How did Nakamura make progress?

T11.04 Kramnik – Carlsen
Moscow Botvinnik Memorial 2011 (D)

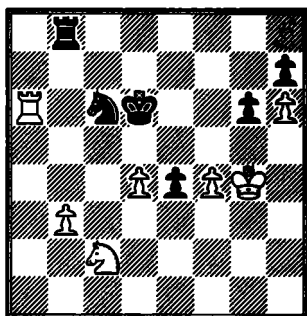


[W] How did Kramnik finish his attack?

Tests

T11.05 Giri – Meier

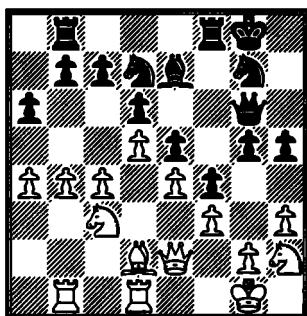
Dortmund 2011 (D)



[B] Should Black take on b3 or play 70...♔d5 ?

T11.06 Anand – Carlsen

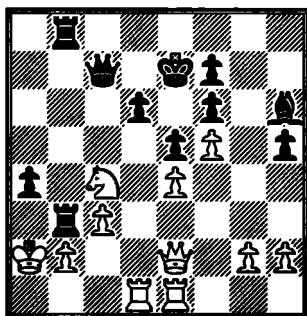
Amber-rapid 20th Monte Carlo 2011 (D)



[B] On which wing did Carlsen play?

T11.07 Zhigalko – Dembo

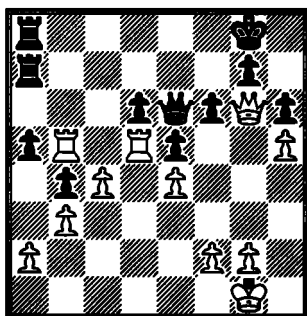
EU-ch 12th Aix-les-Bains 2011 (D)



[B] How to continue Black's attack?

T11.08 Vachier-Lagrave – Yangyi Yu

World Chess Cup Khanty-Mansiysk 2009 (D)

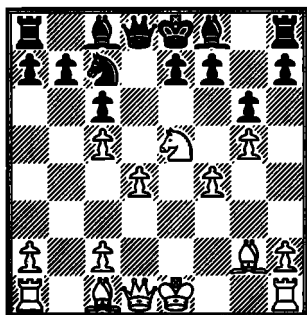


[W] How to convert White's advantage?

Test 12

T12.01 Shirov – Tiviakov

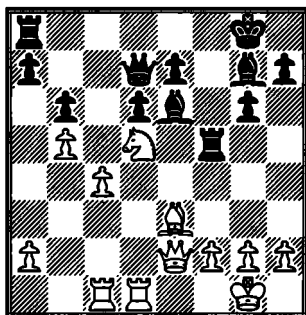
Unive Crown Group Hoogeveen
2010 (D)



[W] White must act to exploit his initiative. But how?

T12.02 Bacrot – Tiviakov

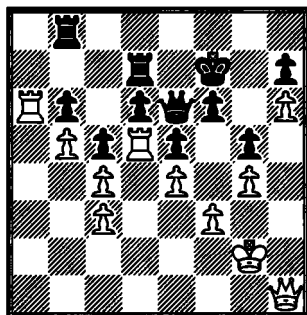
Corus Wijk aan Zee 2006 (D)



[W] How to improve White's position?

T12.03 Vachler-Lagrave – Carlsen

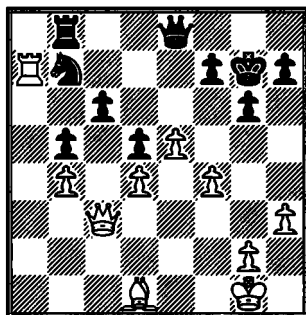
Biel 2011 (D)



[W] White has full control. But how to regroup and where to break through?

T12.04 Akopian – Adianto

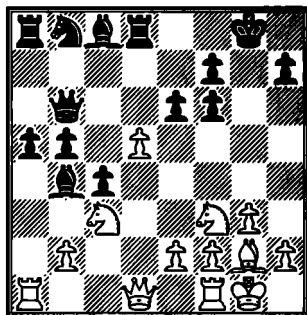
FIDE-Wch k.o. Tripoli 2004 (D)



[W] Open a second front!

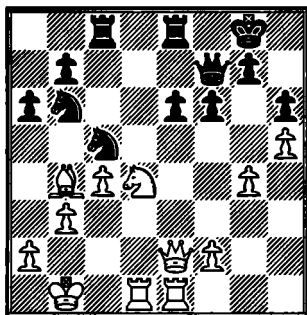
Tests

T12.05 Ivanchuk – Alekseev
Foros Aerosvit 2008 (D)



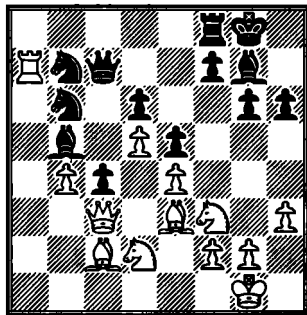
[W] How to get compensation for the sacrificed pawn?

T12.06 Berg – Hillarp Persson
SWE-ch Lund 2010 (D)



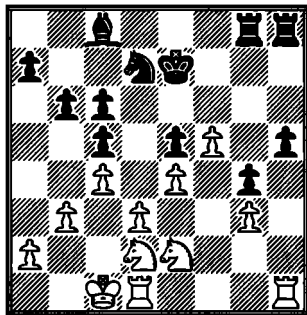
[W] How to increase the pressure?

T12.07 Berelowitsch – Erwich
BEL-chT 2009 (D)



[W] Which piece should be improved?

T12.08 Karjakin – Hracek
39th Olympiad Khanty-Mansiysk 2010
(D)



[W] Find Karjakin's plan!

Solutions

Chapter 1

E01.01: 37...♙e7? 37...♖e8! was the only move. White's plans do not work well when the c7-rook is protected. The knight is passive of course, but this is justified as White's active options must be prevented. Now he can still try 38.♗a6 bxa6 39.♖a6 ♖c8 40.♖b4 ♗d7! (40...♗b7? 41.a6!+-) but matters are by no means clear. But not 37...♖c8? because of 38.♖a6 ♖a8 39.♖b4 ♗a4 40.♖c5 ♖d8 41.♗b5 ♗xb5 42.♖xb5 ♖d7 43.♖a2±. **38.♖xb7!** ♖xb7 39.♖xc6+- ♖b2+ 40.♖c2 ♖b4 41.♖a2 ♖e8 42.♗a6 ♖d6 43.♗b5 ♖xb5 44.axb5 ♖xb5 45.a6 ♖b8 46.a7 ♖a8 47.♙c3 ♙d6 48.♙b4 ♙c6 49.♖a6+ ♙b7 50.♙b5 1-0

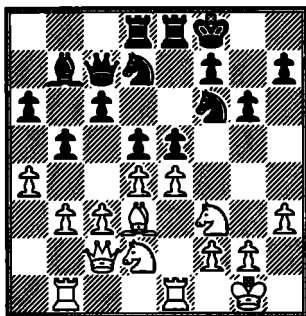
E01.02: 13.♙h1! Active prophylaxis, as this stops knight checks, so that Black cannot escape out of the pin without making large concessions. Mechanical protection of the bishop with, e.g., 13.♗c3? 0-0 14.♙c1 d6 15.♙b2 e5= does not promise White much. **13...g5** 13...e5 14.f4 d6 15.fxg5 ♙xe5 16.b5+- **14.♖c1 d6 15.f4!+-** and Baklan went on to win: **15...gxf4** 16.♖xf4 ♙g5 17.♖h5 e5 18.♖f6+ ♙d8 19.♙a4 ♗e6 20.♙a5+ ♙e7 21.♙c7+ ♙f8 22.♗c4 ♖c8 23.♙xd6+ ♙g7 24.♗xe6 ♖xc1 25.♗xc1 ♖xe6 26.d4 ♙g6 27.d5 ♗b8 28.♙e7 ♖f4 29.♗xf4 exf4 30.♖e8+ ♖xe8 31.♙xe8 ♗d6 32.♙d7 b5 33.a3 ♗e5 34.♙f5 ♙xf5 35.exf5 ♙f6 36.♖c1 1-0

E01.03: 41.♖h3! The direct 41.♖xa3? runs into 41...♗xb4 42.cxb4?? ♖f3+. **41...♗xb4** Desperation. But White will win the a-pawn in any case first and the game later. **42.cxb4 ♖d6 43.♙c3 ♖dxd4 44.♖a4 ♖d1 45.♖xa3 ♖c1+ 46.♙b2 ♖c8 47.♖ag3+ ♙f7 48.♖f3** 1-0

E01.04: 22...♖g5! 22...♖xa5? 23.f3 ♖f6 24.♖d2 ♖d5 25.♖c4 plays into White's hands. **23.h4 ♖e4** An excellent maneuver. In view of the weakness of the g3-pawn, White can no longer defend the light-squares with f2-f3. Other ideas are also insufficient. White's pieces have only very few options and Black is ready to improve his position step by step and to win White's a-pawns. In the game, Vaganian tried to change the course of events by a desperate exchange sacrifice. But Black prevailed nevertheless. **24.♖d2 24.♖f3?! ♖xg3!+- 24...♖c3 25.♖c4 ♖xd1 26.♖xd1 ♖b8 27.♙b3 c5 28.♖b6 ♙c6 29.dxc5 ♗xc5 30.♖d7 ♖c8 31.♖d3 ♗e7 32.♖xb4 ♙b7 33.♖b6 ♖xb6 34.axb6 ♙xb6 35.♖b1 ♖b8 36.♙a2 ♗xb4 37.a5 ♙a7 38.a6 ♗c5 39.♖d1 h5 40.♙a4 ♗xe3 41.♖d7 ♗xf2+ 42.♙g2 ♙e3** 0-1

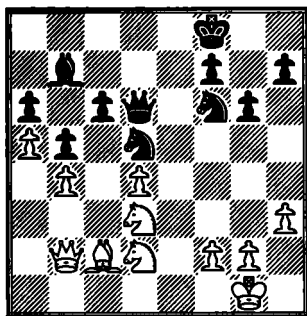
E01.05: White has to act precisely as Black has many defensive resources. He can try to block the ♗b1 with ♖b4-c2 and, what is even more important, sacrifice his g-pawn with g6 or g5 to introduce the ♖c7 into the defense along the seventh rank. If he manages to achieve this, he will not be mated and he gets good prospects. So the

18...d5?! But this is not good as White has taken prophylactic measures against it as we have already seen. 19.♙×f8 ♜×f8 (D)



20.b4! Black's queenside pawns are fixed on the color of the ♙b7. So White has a small but long lasting advantage. 20...d×e4 21.♙×e4 After 21.♞×e4 Black has 21...♞×e4 22.♙×e4 f5 forcing White to sacrifice his bishop on f5 with unclear consequences. Dolmatov plays more solidly. 21...e×d4 22.c×d4 ♜d6 23.♜b3?! (Dvoretzky's "?!") This is inaccurate as it is not clear yet where the queen belongs. Dvoretzky opts for 23.a5 ♞e7 24.♜b2 followed by exchanging rooks to stabilize the position. But Black can equalize after 24...♞de8 25.♙c2 ♞×e1+ 26.♞×e1 ♞×e1+ 27.♞×e1 with the freeing move 27...c5! the point being 28.b×c5 ♞×c5! 29.d×c5 ♜×d2. But White's advantage is quite small in any case and should not be overestimated. 23.♞b3 is one try to stop the freeing moves, e.g., 23...♞×e4 24.♞×e4 ♞×e4 25.♜×e4 ♞e8 26.♜c2 and White is slightly better. 23...♞e7 24.♙c2 ♞de8 25.♜b2 ♞×e1+ 26.♞×e1 ♞×e1+?! 26...♞d5 is more active. 27.♞×e1 ♞b6?! 28.a5 ♞bd5 29.♞d3 (D)

Now White has reached the type of position that Dvoretzky was aiming for



in his analysis of the 23rd move, and Black was not allowed to execute the freeing advance c6-c5. Black's bishop is still passive and the a6-pawn is very vulnerable. White has a sizeable advantage in the endgame and Dolmatov converts with his excellent technique. 29...♙c8 30.♞c5 ♞f4 31.♙d1 ♜d5 32.♙f3 ♜g5 33.♜f1 ♞6d5 34.♞de4 ♜e7 35.♞c3 ♜d6 36.♙×d5 c×d5 37.♜d2 h5?! It is better to complement the bishop by putting the pawn on a dark-square with 37...g5. 38.h4 ♜g7 39.♜e3 ♞e6 40.g3 f6 41.♜e1 ♞c7 42.♜d2 ♙g4 43.f3 ♙e6 44.♞e2 ♙f7? 44...♙f5 is called for. 45.g4! In addition to the weak a6-pawn on the queenside, Dolmatov opens a second front. 45...h×g4?! 46.f×g4 ♙e6 47.g5 ♙f5 48.g×f6+ ♜×f6 49.♜g5+?! Dolmatov misses the direct 49.♞g3! ♜f7 50.♞×f5 g×f5 51.♜e5+- . 49...♜f7 50.♜e3?! The undermining 50.h5 is stronger. 50...♞e6 51.♜g3 ♜×g3? Without the queens Black's structural deficits will be his undoing. Beliavsky had to keep his queen with 51...♞×c5 52.d×c5 ♜f6 to maintain some counterplay. 52.♞×g3 ♞×d4 52...♞×c5 53.d×c5 ♙g4 54.♜d3 ♜e6 55.♜d4 ♙f3 56.♞f1 ♙h5 57.♞e3 ♙f3 58.♞c2 ♙e4 59.♞u1 ♙f5 60.♞b3 ♙h3

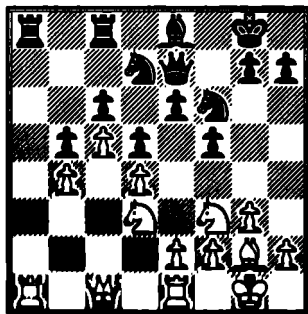
Solutions: Chapter Exercises

61. ♖e3 ♘f1 62. ♜d4+ ♜e5 63. ♜c6+ ♜e6 64. ♜d4 ♘g2 65. ♜b8 ♘h3 66. ♜xa6 ♜d7 67. c6+-- 53. ♜xf5 gxf5 54. ♜xa6 ♜c6 55. ♜c7 ♜xb4 56. ♜xb5 ♜g6 57. ♜d4 ♜a6 58. ♜e3 ♜c5 59. ♜f4 ♜d3+ 60. ♜e3 ♜b4 61. ♜f4 ♜d3+ 62. ♜f3 ♜b4 63. ♜e2 ♜f6 64. ♜f4 d4 65. ♜e2 ♜f7 66. ♜d1 ♜f6 67. ♜d2 ♜f7 68. ♜e2 ♜g6 69. ♜xd4 f4 70. ♜e2 ♜h5 71. ♜f3 ♜xh4 72. ♜xf4 ♜h5 73. ♜e5 ♜g6 74. ♜d6 ♜f7 75. ♜c5 ♜a6+ 76. ♜b6 ♜b4 77. ♜c6 ♜d5+ 78. ♜b7 ♜e6 79. a6 ♜d7 80. a7 ♜c7 81. ♜e5+ ♜d8 82. ♜c4 ♜a8 83. ♜b6 ♜c7 84. ♜c6 1-0

E01.08: 30. ♜d2! A strong, innovative, prophylactic move. White prepares to triple his major pieces on the a-file to load Alekhine's gun and prevent the direct rook exchange via the a-file in view of an attack against Black's king: 30... ♜a8?! 31. ♜xa8 ♜xa8 32. ♜xa8+ ♜xa8 33. ♜f5! gxf5 (33... ♜xf5 34. exf5+-) 34. ♜g5+ ♜f8 35. exf5±. As a result of the double attack against the ♜e6 and the ♜a8 White wins the piece back and has a large advantage because of Black's weak king. 30... ♜g7 31. ♜a7 31. ♜f5+ is also very strong. 31... ♜a8? Now White's idea can be implemented with full force. But good advice is hard to give. 32. ♜xa8 ♜xa8 33. ♜xa8 ♜xa8 34. ♜f5+! gxf5 35. ♜g5+ ♜f8 36. exf5 ♜c4 37. ♜xa8 d5 38. f6 ♜e6 39. ♜b7 ♜g4 40. ♜xe5 1-0

E01.09: White would like to prevent ♜xf3 by 14. ♜fe5, but this is impossible as then the e2-pawn is lost. But before you investigate options which stop ♜xf3, you should check if it really is a

threat. After 14... ♜xf3 15. ♜xf3 Black has jettisoned his bad bishop and can place a knight on e4. But White also can recapture with 15. exf3 thereby changing the pawn structure in a radical way. The doubled pawn does a very good job in the resulting structure as it protects valuable central squares, especially e4. Furthermore, the e-file is opened, which gives White the option to pressurize the backward e6-pawn. So the pawn structure d4-f3-f2 versus d5-e6-f5 is better for White. But he must calculate further as Black can continue, after 14... ♜xf3 15. exf3, with the structure changing 15... e5 to get rid of his weakness. So White's prophylaxis must be directed against the freeing advance e6-e5. 14. ♜e1! Now Black cannot follow up taking on f3 with e5. White has a grip on the position and can slowly realize his typical plans – a pawn attack on the queenside and/or the maneuver ♜f3-e5 followed by f2-f3 and e2-e4. Black has no real counterplay. White can also opt for 14. ♜b2!? with similar ideas such as ♜e1. But the queen move does not support an advance in the center with f2-f3 and e2-e4. 14... a5?! This makes it easier for White to open roads on the queenside. He should try to start play on the kingside with 14... ♜e4. In the game Black will not be able to realize this plan. 15. c5 ♜fc8 16. a3 ♜e8 17. b4 axb4 18. axb4 b5 (D)



19. ♖a5! A typical method to exploit the space advantage to seize control over the open file or to get a dangerous passed pawn. **19... ♟xa5 20. bxa5 ♖a8 21. ♜a3?!** Allowing an activation of Black's knight. **21. ♜f4 ♖b8 22. ♖a1 ♖a6 23. ♖fe5±** is more precise. **21... ♖b6! 22. ♖fe5 ♖a4?** **22... ♖c4** offers much more resistance ,e.g., **23. ♖xc4 bxc4 24. ♖e5 ♜a7 25. ♖a1 ♜a6 26. ♜b4 ♜b5. 23. ♖b4! ♜c7 24. a6 ♖d7 25. f4 ♜f8 26. ♖f3 ♖g8?!** **27. e3 ♜e8 28. ♖a1 ♖e7 29. ♖d1 ♜a5 30. ♖xa4 bxa4 31. ♜xa4 ♜xa4 32. ♖xa4 ♖a7 33. h3 ♜d8 34. g4 ♜c7 35. ♜f2 ♖e8 36. ♖a1 ♖a8 37. ♜e2 ♖c8 38. ♜d2 ♖a7 39. gxf5 exf5 40. ♖g1 g6 41. h4 ♖c8 42. h5 ♖e7 43. hxg6 ♖xg6 44. ♖h1 ♖c8 45. ♖xg6 hxg6 46. ♖h7 ♜d7 47. a7 ♜e6 48. ♖xe7+ 1-0**

E01.10: The only way to parry both threats is **12... ♖d8!?** Not good are the *zwischenzug* **12... d5?** because of **13. ♖xd5!** **♜xd2 14. ♖e7+ ♜h7 15. ♖xd2+-** and the retreat **12... ♜d8?** because of **13. h3 g5 14. hxg4 gxf4 15. ♜xf4 ♜f6 16. ♜g3±**. But the text move not only protects the d-pawn. It also parries the other threat, **h3** followed by **♖xh6**, as Black can now meet **13. h3** with the strong **13... ♖e5!**. Now the onus is on White to find the most precise answer. **13. ♖fe1!** This calm move which just brings another piece into play is strongest, as shown after **13... d5?** **13... ♖e5?** is also bad because of **14. ♖xe5** as now White can sacrifice a pawn to attack the king with the help of the e1-rook. **14... dxe5 15. ♖xe5! ♖xe5 16. ♜xh6** White has a winning attack. He threatens to win back his piece on e5 and the g6-pawn is hanging. **16... ♖g7 (16... ♖xd4**

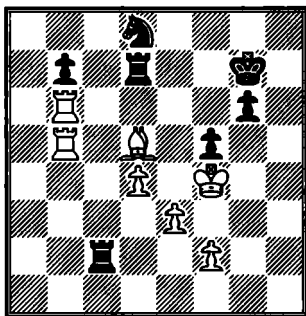
17. ♜xg6+ ♜h8 [17... ♖g7 18. ♖e8+ ♖xe8 19. ♜xf7+ ♜h7 20. ♖d3+ ♖f5 21. ♖xf5+ ♜h8 22. ♜h5+ ♜g8 23. ♖h7+-] 18. ♜h6+ ♜g8 19. ♖e4 [19. ♖ad1!!+- Rybka] 19... ♖g7 [19... ♜f5 20. ♖e3!+-] 20. ♖f6+ ♖xf6 21. ♜xf6 ♖e6 [21... ♖f8 22. ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 23. ♖e8+-; 21... ♜c7 22. ♖xf7+ ♜xf7 23. ♜xd8+-] 22. ♖xe6 fxe6 23. ♜xe6+ ♜g7 24. ♜g4+ ♜f7 25. ♜f4+ ♜g7 26. ♖e7+ ♜g6 27. ♜f7+ ♜g5 28. f4+ ♜h4 29. ♜f6+ ♜g4 30. ♖g7+ ♜h5 31. g4*) 17. ♖xf7+ ♜xf7 18. ♖e7+ ♜xe7 19. ♜xg7+ ♜d6 20. ♖e4+ ♜d5 21. ♜e5+ ♜c4 22. ♜xa5+-; Black should play **13... g5! to complicate White's task as much as possible. It is of course not likely that this equalizes but White must now make a difficult decision between the simple retreat **14. ♖g3, 14. ♖d5 ♜xd2 15. ♖e7+ ♜f8 16. ♖xd2 ♖e8 17. ♖xc8 ♖axc8 18. ♖d3** which gives White a promising endgame, and **14. ♖xg5 hxg5 15. ♖xg5** which gives White a promising attack but is not completely clear. But not **14. ♖e7?** which is met by **14... gxf4 15. ♜xf4 ♜f5 16. ♜xf5 ♖xf5 17. ♖xb7=**. **14. ♖b3?!** This gives away a large part of White's advantage. Simply **14. ♖xa6!** **♜xa6 15. h3 ♖f6 (15... g5? 16. ♖c7 ♖d7 17. ♖e8+ ♜h7 18. hxg4 ♖xc7 19. ♖xg5+ hxg5 20. ♜xg5 c5 21. ♖xd5 ♖d7 22. ♖xc8 ♖xc8 23. ♜f5+-) 16. ♖xh6±** gives him a solid extra pawn. But the game is still unpleasant for Black: **14... g5 15. ♖g3 ♜b4?!** **15... ♖e6 16. h4± 16. h4! f6 17. ♜d3 17. ♖c7!?** **♖xc7 18. ♖xd5 ♜xd2 19. ♖xc7+ ♜h7 20. ♖xd2+- 17... ♜f8 18. ♖d1 ♖b4 19. ♜d2 ♖f5 20. a3 ♖a6 21. c4 dxc4 22. ♖xc4+ ♜h8 23. ♖c3 b5! 24. ♖d3 ♖xd3 25. ♜xd3 f5 26. hxg5 hxg5 27. ♖e5 ♖c5 28. ♖xg7+ ♜xg7 29. ♜c2 ♖d7****

30. ♖e6 ♖e8 31. ♖ae1 ♖xe6
 32. ♖xe6 ♖e8 33. ♖xg5 ♖h8!
 34. ♖xf5 ♖h2+ 35. ♖f1 ♖h1+
 36. ♖e2 ♖h5 37. ♖xe8 ♖h6+
 38. g4 ♖xe8+ 39. ♖e6+ ♖h8
 40. ♖e4 ♖f6 41. ♖e5 ♖hxg4
 42. ♖f5 ♖h5 43. ♖xh5+ ♖xh5
 44. ♖d8 ♖h6 45. ♖xc6 a6
 46. ♖b8 ♖f5 47. ♖d3 ♖d6 48. d5
 a5 49. ♖d4 b4 50. axb4 axb4
 51. ♖e4 ♖f7 52. ♖c6 ♖f4
 53. ♖xb4 ♖g7 54. ♖c6 ♖f8 55. b4
 ♖e2+ 56. ♖c5 ♖c1 57. b5 ♖e8
 58. b6 1-0

E01.11: 23... ♖h8! A typical prophylactic motif. Black wants to meet 24. ♖e4 with 24... ♖f5 and stop the knight check on f6. If White cannot shake the pin, this can be very annoying for him. 23... ♖xc5? 24. ♖e4 ♖xe4 25. ♖xe4 ♖b6 26. ♖xc6± gives White the better structure. 23... ♖f7!? with the ideas 24. ♖xc6 (24. ♖e4 ♖g4 25. ♖f3 ♖h5) 24... ♖g4 25. ♖f3 ♖xc5 26. ♖e4 ♖b6= is also playable by the way. 24. e3?! 24. b4 is called for to keep the structure on the queenside strong. 24... ♖bc8 25. ♖e2 ♖f7 Black already has a slight initiative and Larsen managed to go on and win: 26. ♖d2 ♖d5 27. f3 ♖d7 28. e4? 28. b4 is again called for. 28... ♖e6 29. ♖e3 a5! Isolating the c5-pawn, which is now very weak. 30. ♖c2 ♖cd8 31. ♖f1 and now instead of the direct 31... ♖xc5?! Larsen should have opted for the preparatory 31... a4! 32. bxa4 ♖xc5 33. ♖xc5 ♖xc5 34. ♖xc5 (34. ♖xe5 ♖c4) 34... ♖d2 35. ♖xe5 ♖xe2 when Black is clearly on top. 32. ♖xc5 ♖xc5 33. ♖xe5 ♖d3 34. ♖a1 ♖g8 35. ♖d4 when Timman had compensation but Larsen still managed to win.

Chapter 2

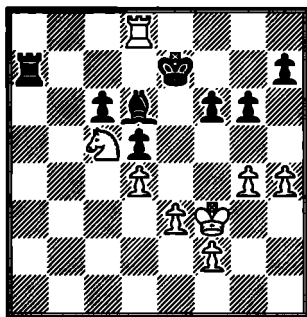
E02.01: White already exercises strong pressure against the b7-pawn, forcing Black's pieces to defend it. But one weakness alone is not enough to win. Kasparov immediately starts to create a second one on the kingside. Black's pieces will not be able to defend both wings successfully as they are less mobile than White's. 34. h4! ♖f7 35. h5 ♖g7 36. ♖g2 ♖e7 37. ♖b6 ♖f7 38. ♖d5 ♖fd7! 39. ♖1b5 ♖e7?! Simply waiting passively will not do, as White can mobilize his king and pawns. Seizing the moment to improve the knight with 39... ♖f7? offered more resistance. 40. ♖g3 ♖ed7 41. hxg6 hxg6 42. ♖f4 ♖c2 (D)



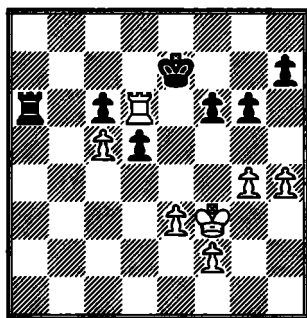
42... ♖h6 43. f3 ♖e7 (43... ♖c6 44. ♖e6! ♖d6 45. d5 ♖a7 46. ♖b1 ♖xb6 47. ♖xb6+-) 44. ♖f6! White doubles his rooks on the sixth rank, which forces Black to defend g6 passively. 44... ♖ed7 45. ♖b3 ♖c3 (45... ♖g7?! 46. ♖bb6 ♖c6 47. ♖g5+-; 45... ♖e7 46. ♖d6! ♖cd7 47. ♖xd7 ♖xd7 48. ♖b6 All of Black's pieces are forced into passive defense. White can simply win by advancing his pawns. 48... ♖c6 [48... ♖c7 49. d5!+-] 49. d5 ♖e7 50. e4+-) 46. ♖bb6 ♖h7 47. ♖e6 ♖dc7 48. ♖d6 ♖xe6+ 49. ♖fxc6 ♖g7 50. d5+-

Now the second weakness at g6 can be exploited: **43.♔g5! ♖xf2** 43...♖f7+ 44.♙xf7 ♜xf7 45.♖xb7 ♖xb7 46.♖xb7+ ♜e6 47.♖b6+ ♜e7 48.f3± **44.♖xg6+ ♜f8** **45.♙b3!** ♖f7+?! It is better to reduce White's attacking potential by 45...♖g2+ 46.♜xf5 ♖xg6 47.♜xg6 ♖e7 48.♖f5+ ♜e8 49.♙a4+ ♖c6 50.♖f3± but he should be technically winning. **46.♜f6 f4** 46...♖b2 47.♖e5 ♖d6+ (47...♖xb3? 48.♖e8+ ♜xe8 49.♖g8*) 48.♙e6 f4 49.♖c5+- **47.e4 ♖b2** **48.e5 f3** **49.e6 f2** **50.♙c4** 1-0 and Andersson resigned in view of 50...f1♗+ (50...♖xb5 51.♙xb5 ♖c7 52.♖g2 ♖d6 53.♙d3 ♖h7 54.♖xf2+-) 51.♙xf1 ♖f2+ 52.♖f5 ♖xf5+ 53.♜xf5 ♖xd4 54.♖f6 ♖d5+ 55.♜e4+-.

E02.02: Black did not manage to get enough counterplay against White's minority attack on the queenside. His pieces are passive and the c6-pawn is weak. But with only one weakness he can still harbor hopes of a successful defense. So he must make sure that White does not manage to create a serious second weakness on his kingside. In the game he did not manage to do this, as he continued with **42...♜f6?** and could not defend his position in the long run, which might be possible but is extremely difficult over the board. **42...h5!** should have been played to make White's play on the kingside more difficult. **43.g4!** The second weakness is the h7-pawn and it is fixed by this advance, as now the setup f7-g6-h5 is prevented. **43...♜e6** It was probably better to get some activity with **43...♜g5!?** but Black's problems are not solved after **44.h3 f5** **45.f4+ ♜f6** **46.♜f2** as he still has two weaknesses to defend; **43...c5?** loses a pawn to **44.dxc5 ♙xc5** **45.♖a5y** **44.♜g2** (D)

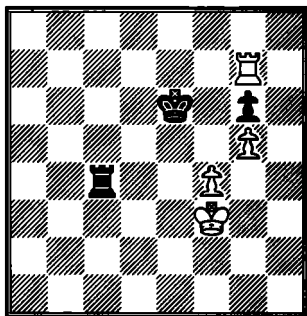


52.♖c8! Kotov demonstrates good technique. By attacking the c6-pawn he prevents the activation of Black's rook. **52.♖h8?** is weaker in view of **52...♙xc5** **53.dxc5** (53.♖xh7+?? ♜e6+-) **53...♖a5!** **52...♙xc5** **52...♖c7** **53.♖h8±** **53.dxc5 ♜d7** **54.♖h8!** White's rook aims for d6, where it targets Black's c- and f-pawns. So first Black's king must be driven away from the d7- and e7-squares. **54...♜e6** **55.♖d8 ♜e7** **56.♖d6 ♖a6** (D)

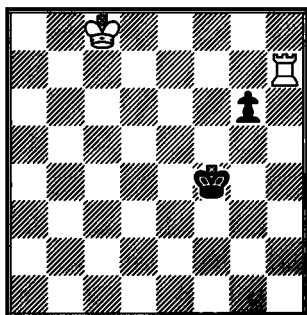


White's rook dominates Black's whole army, allowing White's king to enter with decisive effect. **57.g5! fxg5** **58.hxg5 ♜f7** **59.♜g3 ♜e7** **60.f3 ♖a3** **61.♜f4 ♖a4+** **62.♜e5 ♖a3** **62...♖a6** **63.♖e6+ ♜f7** (63...♜d7 64.♜f6+-) **64.♜d6+-** **63.♖xc6 ♖xe3+** **64.♜xd5 ♖d3+** **65.♜e4 ♖c3** **66.f4 ♖c1** **67.♖c7+ ♜d8?!** **67...♜e6** **68.♜d4** (68.♖xh7? throws the win away because of **68...♖xc5** **69.♖h7 ♖c4**) **70.♜f3** (D)

Solutions: Chapter Exercises



70... Bc6! with the point 71. Bxg6+ Qf5
 72. Bxc6 stalemate.) 68... Bd1+
 (68... Bf1 69. Bc6+ Qd7 70. Bd6+ Qc7
 71. Qe5 Bc1 72. Qf6 Bxc5 73. Ba6
 Bc4 74. Ba7+ Qd8 75. Bxh7 Bxf4+
 76. Qxg6+-) 69. Qc4 Bf1 70. Bc6+
 Qe7 (70... Qd7 71. Bd6+ Qc7 72. Qd5
 Bxf4 73. Bf6 Bh4 74. Bf7+ Qd8
 75. Qd6 Bd4+ 76. Qc6 Bh4 77. Bd7+
 Qc8 78. Bg7 Qd8 79. Bg8+ Qe7
 80. Qb7 Bb4+ 81. Qc7 Qe6 82. c6 Qf5
 83. Qd6+-) 71. Bd6 Bxf4+ 72. Bd4
 Bf5 73. Bd5 Bf4+ 74. Qb5 Qe6
 75. Bd8 Bf1 76. c6 Bc1 77. Bd4 Qe7
 78. Qb6 Bb1+ 79. Qa6 Bc1 80. Qb7
 Bb1+ 81. Qc8 Qe6 82. c7 Qf5 83. Qd8
 Bc1 84. Bd5+ Qe6 85. Bd7 Qf5
 86. Bxh7 Qxg5 87. c8Q Bxc8+
 88. Qxc8 Qf4 (D)



89. Bf7+ A very important
zwischen-schach. 89... Qe4 90. Bg7
 Qf5 91. Qd7 g5 92. Qd6 g4 93. Qd5
 Qf4 94. Qd4 g3 95. Bf7+ Qg4
 96. Qe3+- 68. Bxh7 Bxc5 69. Bf7
 1-0

E02.03: 28. Qe1! The knight starts its
 journey to the queenside, and this will
 decide the issue. 28... Qe7 29. Qc2
 Qd8 30. Qxa5 Bxa5 30... Qxb6?
 31. Qxb6 Qe8 32. Qe3 Bd7
 33. Qd3+- would be completely lost
 as the rook must defend purely
 passively, not a job for a real rook.
 31. Bxb7+ Qe8 32. Bb4?! 32. Bg7
 g5 33. h5 Bxa4 34. Bg6 Qf7 35. Bxh6
 g4 36. Bh8 Qg5 37. h6 Qg6 38. h7
 Qc1 39. Qd3 Qg7 40. Bc8+-
32... Bb5?! The following rook retreat
 does not inspire confidence. But good
 advice is already hard to give, e.g.,
 32... Qd7 33. Qa1 Qe7 34. Bc4 Bd5
 35. Qb3 g5 (simply waiting with
 35... Qf8 is broken down by 36. Qe3
 Qe7 37. Qc5+ Qxc5 38. Bxc5 Bxc5
 39. dxc5+-) 36. hxg5 hxg5 37. Qe3 g4
 38. Qf4+ (38. Qc5+?? only leads to a
 drawn pawn endgame: 38... Qxc5
 39. Bxc5 Bxc5 40. dxc5 a5=) **33. Bc4**
 Bd7 34. Bc6 Qf7 34... Bc7 35. Bxc7
 Qxc7 36. Qd3 Qd7 37. Qc4 Qc6
 38. Qb4+ Qb7 39. Qd3+- **35. Bxa6**
 Bb7 **36. a5** Bb2 **37. Qd3** Ba2
38. Ba7+ 1-0

E02.04: 23. Bc1! 23. b4? axb4
 24. cxb4 Qd4+ 25. Qf2 Qb3 26. Bd1
 c5 27. Qe1 is not as convincing as the
 game. **23... Qf6** **24. b4** Bd8
 24... axb4 25. cxb4 Qd4+ 26. Qe3 c6
 27. a5 bxa5 28. bxa5 Ba7 29. Qxe5
 Qxe5 30. Qxe5+ Qxe5 31. Bc5+-
 (Yusupov in *Informator* 58). **25. b5**
 Qe7 **26. Qf2!** Strong prophylaxis.
 26. c4?! violates the principle "do not
 rush" in view of 26... c5! 27. bxc6 Qxc6 .
26... Bb8 26... Bc8 27. c4 c5 28. bxc6
 Bxc6 29. c5 hxc5 30. Bxc5 Bxc5
 31. Qxc5 Qc6 32. Qb7+- (Yusupov)
27. c4 c5 **28. Qxc5** 28. Qxc5! is even
 stronger: 28... bxc5 29. Qxc5 Bd8

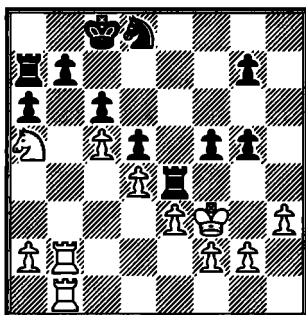
30. ♖b3+- . 28... ♖xc5 29. ♔xc5
 ♖d8 30. ♔d6 ♖b7 31. ♖d1 ♖dc6
 32. ♖xc6 ♖xc6 33. ♔c5 ♖b2+
 34. ♖d2 ♖b3 35. ♖d6 ♖e7
 36. ♔b6 ♖g6 37. ♔xa5 ♖f4+
 38. ♖d2 ♖xg2 39. c5 ♖e3
 40. ♔d8+ ♖f7 41. ♖d3 ♖c4+
 42. ♖c2 ♖b8 42... ♖xd3 43. ♖xd3
 ♖b2+ 44. ♖c2 ♖xa4 45. ♔b6+-
 (Yusupov) 43. c6 ♖e8 44. c7 ♖a8
 45. ♖c3 ♖b6 46. a5 ♖xa5 47. c8 ♖
 1-0

E02.05: Karpov won with the typical
 36.f3 followed by g4, when he gets a
 passed h-pawn. 36... ♔b7 36... c5
 37. ♔xa8 cxb4 38. g4+- 37. g4 ♔a8
 37... hxg4 38. fxg4 ♔a8 39. h5 gxh5
 40. gxh5 ♖f8 41. ♖f6+- (Ftacnik in
 CBM 31) 38. gxh5 gxh5 39. f4
 ♔b7 40. ♔f3 ♔a8 41. ♖xh5 1-0

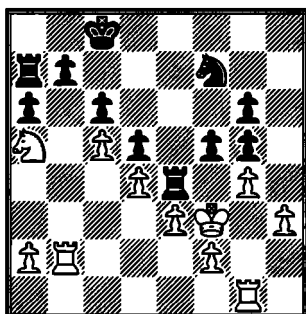
E02.06: 27. h4!! Forcing Black to fix
 his kingside in an unfavorable way.
 27... ♖d7?! 27... ♖f7?! 28. ♖c7+ ♖g6
 29. hxg5 fxg5 30. ♖f3 ♖f5 (30... g4?!
 31. ♖h4+ ♖g5 32. g3 ♖f6 33. ♖g7+
 ♖h6 34. ♖b7+-) 31. ♖h7 g4
 32. ♖xh5+ ♖e4 33. ♖h4 ♖f4 34. ♖e5
 ♖xd4 35. ♖xg4± 28. ♖c7 ♖f7
 29. ♖f3! g4 30. ♖e1 f5 31. ♖d3 f4
 32. f3! gxf3 33. gxf3 a5 34. a4 ♖f8
 35. ♖c6?! 35. b4?! ♖g7 36. bxa5 bxa5
 37. ♖f2 ♖b6 38. ♖c5 ♖xa4
 39. ♖xd5+- 35... ♖e7 36. ♖f2 ♖f5
 37. b3 ♖d8 38. ♖e2 ♖b8?!
 39. ♖g6! The greedy 39. ♖xb6?
 violates the endgame principle "do not
 rush" and gives Black counterplay after
 39... ♖c7 40. ♖g6 ♖c6. 39... ♖c7
 40. ♖e5 ♖a6 41. ♖g7+ ♖c8
 42. ♖c6 ♖f6 43. ♖e7+ ♖b8
 44. ♖xd5 ♖d6 45. ♖g5 ♖b4
 46. ♖xb4 axb4 47. ♖xh5 ♖c6
 47... ♖xd4 48. ♖f5 ♖c7 49. h5+-

(Kasparov). 48. ♖b5 ♖c7 49. ♖xb4
 ♖h6 50. ♖b5 ♖xh4 51. ♖d3 1-0

E02.07: The weakness on b7 is fixed.
 Now it must be attacked as often as
 possible to force the opponent's pieces
 into passive defense. 31. ♖b2 ♖d7
 32. ♖eb1 ♖c8 33. ♖e2 ♖e7
 34. ♖f3 ♖e4 (D)



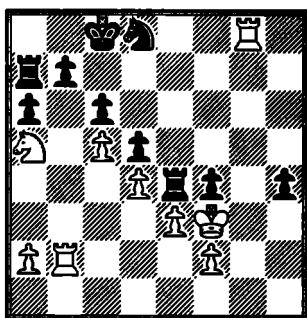
White has improved his position to the
 maximum. According to the principle
 of two weaknesses he now opens a second
 front on the kingside. 35. g4! g6
 36. ♖g1 ♖f7 (D)



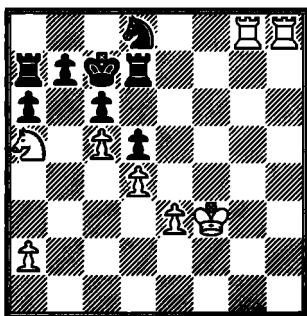
37. h4?! Rubinstein rushes. It is better
 to improve the position first with
 37. ♖b6 as Black is in some sort of
zugzwang as now 37... ♖c7 38. h4 ♖h6
 can be met by 39. hxg5 fxg4+ 40. ♖g2
 ♖f5 41. ♖gb1+- . 37... gxh4? Opening
 too many roads for White's coming in-
 vasion. After 37... ♖h6! 38. hxg5 fxg4+
 39. ♖g2 ♖f5 40. ♖h1 ♖c7 41. ♖b3 g3

Solutions: Chapter Exercises

42. ♖h8+ ♜c7 43. ♖f8 gxf2 44. ♜xf2 ♖g7 it is not easy to break Black's defense. 38. gxf5 gxf5 39. ♖g7 From the strategic point of view the game is decided as White has managed to open a second front. 39... ♖d8 40. ♖g8 f4? This is flawed, but White will win in the long run in any case. (D)

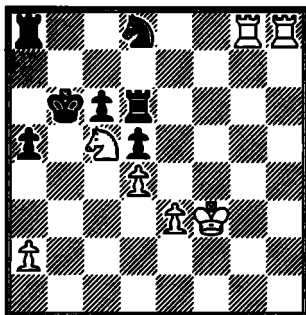


White can now decide the game tactically: 41. ♖h8?! Rubinstein continues his positional squeeze. Exchanging into the rook ending 41. ♖xb7? ♖xb7 42. ♖xd8+ ♜xd8 43. ♖xb7 is wrong, but the hammer-blow 41. ♖c4! wins more or less directly: 41... ♖e7 42. ♖b6+ ♜c7 43. ♜xf4 ♖e4+ 44. ♜f5+- . 41... fxe3 42. fxe3 ♜d7 43. ♖g2 ♖e8 44. ♖xh4 ♖e7 45. ♖h8 ♜c7 46. ♖gg8 ♖d7 (D)



47. ♖b3! The knight has done its job on a5 and now regroups to e5. 47... a5 48. ♖c1 ♖a8 49. ♖d3 b5 Passive defense does not help, e.g., 49... ♖f7+ 50. ♜e2 ♖e7 51. ♖e5 a4 52. ♜d3 a3

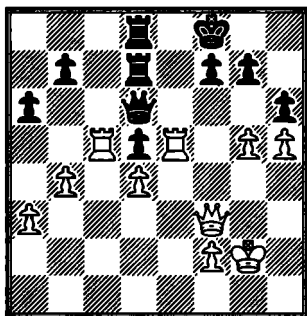
53. e4 dxe4+ 54. ♜xe4 ♖b8 55. ♜f5 ♖a8 56. ♖c4 ♖b8 57. ♖b6 ♖f7+ 58. ♜e4 ♖e7+ 59. ♜d3 ♖f7 60. ♜c4 ♖e7 61. d5+- . 50. cxb6+ ♜xb6 51. ♖c5 ♖d6 (D)



52. a4 Do not rush! Black has run out of moves on the queenside and his king is caught in a mating net. 52... ♖c8 53. ♜g4 ♖a8 54. ♜f5 ♜c7 55. ♖h7+ 1-0 An excellent positional performance by Rubinstein!

E02.08: The d5-pawn is weak and is under heavy fire. But one weakness can be defended. So White should create another weakness or target. 29. g4! A strong move. In the spirit of the classic game Botvinnik-Zagoriansky, White combines play against the isolated d-pawn with an attack against Black's king. Black's pieces are forced to defend the d5-pawn and have problems defending the king. The alternative 29. ♖xd5? unnecessarily changes the character of the position and helps Black: 29... ♜xd5+! (But not 29... g6?? 30. ♖xd6 gxf5 31. ♖xh6+ ♜g7 32. ♖b6+-) 30. ♖xd5 ♖xd5 31. ♜xf7 ♖5d7 32. ♜g6 ♖xd4 and Black should be able to defend. 29... ♜g8? Black should stop the opening of the kingside with 29... f6 30. ♖e6 ♜f8. Then White is of course also clearly better but it is not easy to break Black's defense by

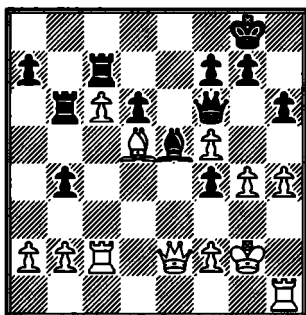
opening a second front. **30. ♖f3 ♜f8!** **31. ♖f5!** 31.g5 is better as played on the 33rd move. **31... ♜g8!** **32. ♖f3 ♜f8!** **33.g5!** (D)



Finally White opens the kingside for his attack. Now that White's has found another target, Black's position can probably not be defended. **33... h×g5 34. ♖×g5 ♜g8 35. ♖g4 ♜h8 35... f6 36. ♖g6±** White's attack is very strong. **36. ♖×g7 ♖f6 37. ♖g5 ♖e7 38. ♖g×d5 ♖×d5 39. ♖×d5** The game is decided. White has two extra pawns and Black's counterattack will peter out. **39... ♖e8 40. ♖f5 ♖g8+ 41. ♜f1 41. ♜h3!? ♖g7 42. ♜h4+- 41... ♖h6 42. ♖e5+ f6 43. ♖e3 ♖g7 44. ♖c5 b6 45. ♖c3 1-0**

E02:09: In this sharp position Black has just played **27... ♜g8** to take prophylactic measures against the coming kingside attack with **h3-h4** followed by **g4-g5**. But this gives White the chance to improve the situation on the queenside: **28.c5!** Now White is strategically winning as his c-pawn will advance to c6. This strong passed pawn must be blockaded by a black major piece which will then be missing in the defense of the kingside as White's forces have more maneuvering space. **28... ♖e5 29.c6 ♖f6 30. ♖d2!** It was even better to use the moment, in

which the c-pawn is not blocked with **30.c7! ♖bc8 (30... ♖b6 31. ♖c1 ♖c8 32. ♖d2 h5 33. ♖dc2 ♖d4 34. ♖f3 ♖c5 35. ♖e1 ♖×c7 36. ♖e8+ ♜h7 37. ♖×f4+-) 31. ♖c2 ♖×b2 (31... ♖g5 32. ♖b7 h5 33. ♖×c8 ♖×c8 34. f3 ♖h4 35. ♖c1 ♖g3+ 36. ♜h1 ♖×h3+ 37. ♖h2 h×g4 38. ♖×h3 g×h3 39. ♖d5±) 32. ♖b7 ♖c3 33. ♖×c8 ♖×c8 34. ♖hd1 ♖h4 35. ♖c1 ♖g5 36. ♜f3 ♖×c7 37. ♖×f4± **30... ♖fc8 31.h4!** Starts an attack on the kingside. **31... ♖b6 32. ♖c2 ♖c7** (D)**

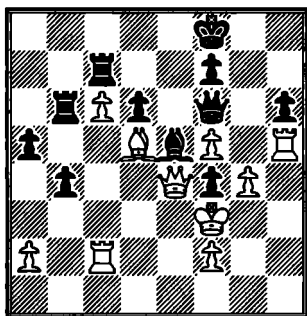


White has reached his first aim to force Black's rooks into passivity. In the next step he will improve his pieces and open a second front on the kingside by **g4-g5**. This is slightly double-edged as his own king will be exposed as well. **33. ♜h3** The next step consists of **♖g1, ♖e4** and **g4-g5**. White's king has the important job of protecting the h-pawn. **33... ♜f8 34. ♖g1 g6** Black has to act, otherwise White's pawns will just roll down the board. **35. ♖e4 35.f×g6 f×g6** opens the road for Black's c7-rook to the kingside. **35... g5** Black wants to close the position but this is only temporary. **35... g×f5 36.g×f5 ♖b5 (36... ♖×b2? 37. ♖×b2 ♖×b2 38.f6 ♖×f6 39. ♖h7 ♖c×c6 40. ♖g8+ ♜e7 41. ♖e1+ ♜d7 42. ♖e8+ ♜c7 43. ♖e7+-) 37. ♖(d2 ♖×b2 38. ♖×f4 ♖e5 39. ♖r4y 36. ♜g2!?** Now White

Solutions: Chapter Exercises

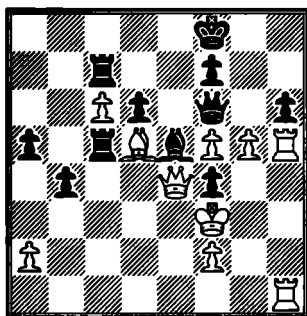
wants to attack down the h-file so the king makes way for the rook. White does not invest time in the protection of the b-pawn as pawns are not that important here in view of the attack with opposite-color bishops where every tempo counts in attack and defense. But the simple 36.b3 is also playable. 36...♙×b2 37.h×g5 ♖×g5 37...h×g5 38.♞h1 ♜e5 39.♞f3 followed by ♞e2 does not change matters.

38.♞f3 Taking the bishop only leads to perpetual check: 38.♞×b2 ♖×g4+ 39.♞f1 (39.♞h1?? ♜h3*; 39.♞h2 ♜h4+ 40.♞g2 ♖g4+=) 39...♞d1+ 40.♞g2 (40.♞e1? ♜×d5+-) 40...♞g4+=. Now the b2-bishop can be taken and White also threatens ♞g1-h1-h5. 38...♙e5 39.♞h1! a5 40.♞h5 ♞f6 (D)

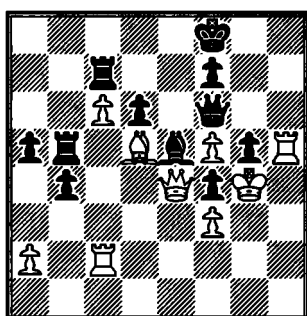


41.g5?! White rushes and has to win the game again. Instead, White must direct his second rook to the kingside first: 41.♞c1! This was the logical move. 41...♞b5 (41...a4 42.♞ch1 b3 43.♞×h6 ♞g7 44.♞h7 ♞g8 45.♞×a4+-) 42.♞ch1 ♞c5 43.g5! (D)

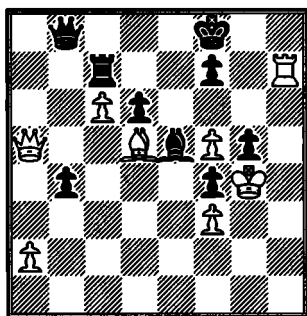
This is the right moment for the pawn break. White's king hides on g4 and Black's counterplay is too slow. 43...h×g5 44.♞g4 ♞e7 (44...♞g7 45.♞h7 ♞g8 46.♞h6+- followed by f6 and White wins) 45.♞h6 ♞μ7



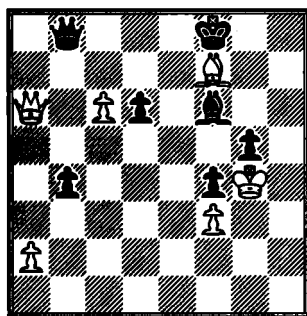
46.♞h7 ♞g8 47.♞d3y Black cannot defend in the long run. 41...h×g5 42.♞g4 ♞b8 42...a4 43.♞c4! b3 (43...♙c3 44.♞h1 f3 45.♞h6 ♞g7 46.♞e4 ♞b5 47.♞×d6 ♙f6 48.♞h2+-) 44.a×b3 a×b3 45.♞b4 ♞×b4 46.♞×b4 ♞d8 47.♞×b3y 43.f3 ♞b5?! Running into an attack, but good advice is hard to give. (D)



44.♞h7? 44.♞ch2! wins, e.g., 44...♞c5 45.♞h6 ♞g7 46.f6! ♙×f6 47.♞f5 ♞e7 48.♞h7! (48.♞×f6? ♞×d5!-) 48...♞×d5 (48...♞g8 49.♞e6+! ♞d8 50.♞×f6+-) 49.♞×d5+- 44...♙c5 45.♞c4 ♞e8? The wrong direction. 45...♞g8 is required. 46.♞d3? 46.♞×c5 d×c5 47.♙×f7+ ♞f8 (47...♞d8 48.♞d5+ ♙d6 49.♞g7+-) 48.♞d5 ♙d4 49.♙g8 ♞×h7 50.♙×h7+- 46...♞×c4? 46...♞f8 47.♞×c5 d×c5 48.♞b5 ♞g8 49.♞h5 ♞c8 50.♞×c5 ♞g7± 47.♞×c4 ♞f8 48.♞a6 ♞d8 49.♞×a4 ♞h8?! (D)

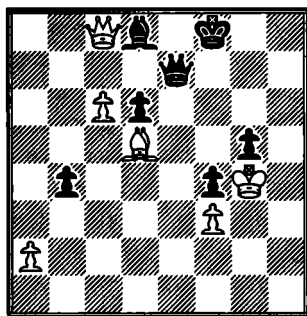


50. ♖a6? Missing the beautiful, direct
 50. ♖xc7!! ♖xc7 51. ♖xf7+ ♖xf7
 52. ♗xf7 d5 53. ♗xd5 ♖e7
 54. ♖xg5+- 50... ♗g7 51. f6! ♗xf6
 52. ♖xf7+! ♖xf7 53. ♗xf7 (D)

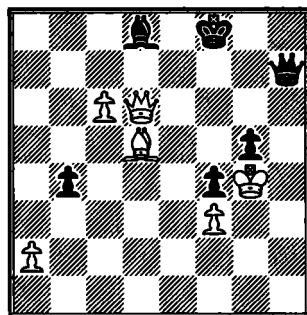


53... ♗d8? Too passive. After 53...d5!
 54. ♗xd5 ♗e5 it is not clear, if White
 can win. 53... ♖xf7? 54. ♖b7+ ♖xb7
 55. cxb7+- 54. ♖b7! ♖c7 54... ♗c7
 55. ♖xb8+ ♗xb8 56. ♗d5!+-
 55. ♗d5! Blocking the d6-pawn which
 obstructs Black badly. 55... ♖g7?!
 55... ♖e8 56. ♖xc7 ♗xc7 57. ♖xg5 ♖e7
 58. ♖xf4 ♖f6 59. ♖e4 ♗b6 60. ♗b3 ♗c7
 61. ♖d5+- 56. ♖c8 56. ♖xg7+ ♖xg7
 57. ♖f5+- 56... ♖e7 (D)

57. ♖f5+? 57. c7!! ♖xc7 58. ♖f5+
 ♖g7 (58... ♖e8 59. ♖g6+ ♖f8
 60. ♖g8+ ♖e7 61. ♖f7*) 59. ♖e6 ♖c2
 (59... ♗e7 60. ♖h5!+-; 59... ♗f6
 60. ♖g8+ ♖h6 61. ♗e4 ♖d7+
 [61... ♖g7 62. ♖e8+-] 62. ♗f5 ♖g7
 63. ♖e8+-; 59... ♖e7 60. ♖g8+ ♖h6



[60... ♖f6 61. ♖xg5*] 61. ♗e4 ♖g7
 62. ♖xd8+-) 60. ♖g8+ ♖h6 (60... ♖f6
 61. ♖xg5*) 61. ♖f8+ (61. ♖h8+ ♖h7
 62. ♖xd8+-) 61... ♖g6 62. ♗e4+-
 57... ♖g7 58. ♗e4 d5? Now finally
 Lanka gives up the pawn but he chooses
 an unfortunate moment. 58... ♖f7
 59. ♖h7+ ♖f8 60. ♖h6+ ♖g7
 61. ♖xd6+ ♖e7 62. ♖d4± 59. ♖g6+
 ♖f8 60. ♗xd5 ♖c7 61. ♖e6?
 61. ♖f5 ♖c8+ 62. ♖e4 ♖c7 63. ♖g8+
 (63. ♖d3!+-) 63... ♖e7 64. ♖xg5+
 ♖d6 65. ♖xf4+ ♖c5 66. ♖xc7 ♗xc7
 67. f4+- 61... ♖h7 62. ♖d6+ (D)

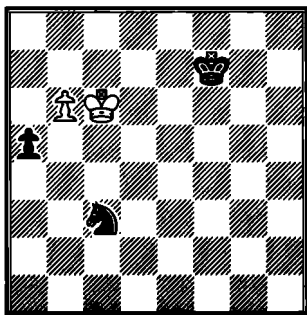


62... ♖e7? The best defense was
 62... ♖e8 63. ♗g8 ♗c7 64. ♖d5 with
 chances to hold. 63. ♖g6?! 63. ♖h6+
 ♖g7 64. ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 65. ♖f5 ♖f8
 66. ♖e6 ♖e8 67. ♖d6+- 63... ♖c7
 64. ♖f5 ♖e7 65. ♖f6+ ♖e8
 66. ♖e6+ ♖f8 66... ♖e7?! 67. ♖g6+
 ♖f8 68. ♖g8* 67. ♖h6+ ♖e7
 67... ♖g7 68. ♖xg7+ ♖xg7 69. ♖e6+-

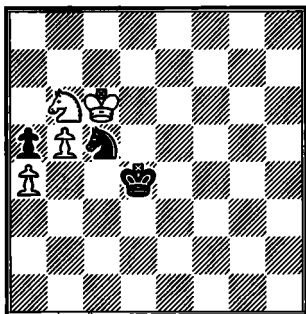
51.h6 ♖f3! 52.♖a7 g3 53.♖a2 ♖f6+
 54.♗g7 ♖f7+ 55.♗g8 ♖f2 56.♖a6+
 ♗e5 57.♖g6 ♗f4 58.h7 ♖h2=;
 45...♖c4!? cuts White's king off and is
 the easiest defensive method: 46.♖xh6
 (46.g4 ♖c3+ 47.♗e4 ♖c4+ 48.♗f5
 ♖f4+ 49.♗e5 ♖xg4 50.♖xh6 ♗e7
 51.♖h7+ ♗f8 52.♗f6 ♗g8 53.♗g6
 ♖a4=) 46...g4+ 47.♗e3 ♗e7 48.♖g6
 ♗f7= 46.hxg6 ♗e7 46...h5
 47.g7+- 47.♗g4 ♗f6 48.♗h5 1-
 0 and Black resigned in view of
 48...♗g7 49.g4 ♗g8 50.♗xh6 ♗h8
 51.♗xg5 ♗g7 52.♗h5 ♗g8 53.♗h6
 ♗h8 54.g7+ ♗g8 55.g5 ♗f7
 56.♗h7+-.

Chapter 4

E04.01: 72.♗g6! Aleksandrov tiptoes
 through the mine field. 72.♗e6? ♖c5+
 and 72.♗e4? ♖c5+ walk directly into
 it. But 72.♗f4 wins as well: 72...♗h5
 and now the king can circumvent it in
 the south: 73.♗e3 ♗g5 74.♗d4 ♗f6
 75.♗d5+- . 72...♗g4 73.♗f7 The
 king walks through the hole in the net.
 73...♗f5 73...♖e5+ 74.♗e6 ♖c4
 75.♗d5 ♖b2 76.♖xb6 ♗f5 77.♗d6
 Now White has constructed a mine
 field: 77...♗g6 (77...♗e4 78.♖d7
 ♖xa4 79.♖c5+-; 77...♗f6
 78.♖d7+-) 78.♗c6 ♗f7 79.♖d5
 ♖xa4 80.♖c3 ♖xc3 81.b6+- (D)



and the knight is dominated in a typical
 way. 74.♗e7 ♖c5 75.♖xb6 ♗e4
 76.♗d6 ♗d4 77.♗c6 (D)



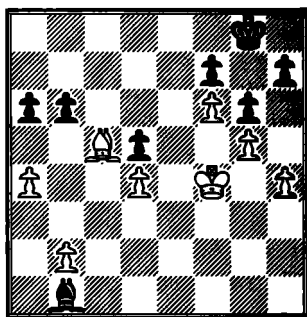
White uses *zugzwang* – one of the
 typical endgame weapon often applied
 against knights. 77...♖d3 78.♖d7
 ♗c4 78...♖b2 79.b6 ♖xa4 80.b7+-
 79.b6 ♖b4+ 80.♗d6 ♖a6 81.b7
 ♗b4 82.♖c5 1-0

E04.02: 78.♗g1!! The bishop leaves
 the knight's sphere of influence and
 prevents it from coming back home to
 its king. 78...♗e6 78...♖d1 79.♗d3
 ♖b2+ 80.♗c3 ♖a4+ 81.♗b3+-;
 78...♖a4 79.♗c4 ♗e5 80.♗b3 ♗f4
 81.♖h2+ ♗f3 82.♗xa4 ♗g2 83.h4+-
 79.♗c3 ♖a4+ 79...♖d1+
 80.♗c2+- 80.♗b3 ♗d5 81.♗xa4
 ♗e4 82.♖h2 ♗f3 83.♖d6 ♗g2
 84.h4 1-0

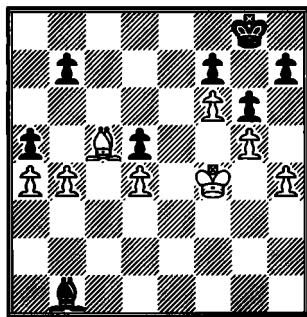
E04.03: 30...a5? Missing the last
 chance to hold the draw: 30...b6!! Open-
 ing the prison door is more important
 than the pawn. (D)

31.♗e5! (31.♖xb6?! ♖c2 32.a5
 [32.♗e5 ♖xa4 33.♗xd5 ♗f8 34.♗d6
 ♗e8=] 32...♗f8 33.b4 ♖d3 34.♗e5
 ♗e8 35.♗xd5 ♗d7=) 31...bxc5
 (31...♖a2? 32.♖xb6 ♗f8 33.b4 ♗e8
 34.♗d6 ♖c4 35.♖c5 ♗d8 36.b5 axb5
 37.♖5 h4 38.♖xh4 ♖c2 39.♖c5 ♖c4

Solutions: Chapter Exercises

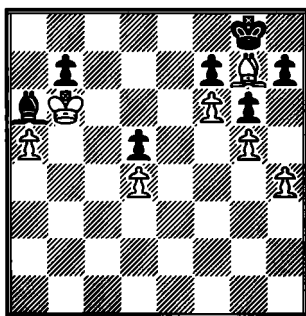


40. Qb6+ Qc8 [40... Qe8 41. Qc7+-] 41. Qe7+-) 32. dxc5 Qf8 33. Qxd5 Qe8 34. Qc6 Qd8 35. Qb7 a5 36. Qb6 Qa2 37. Qxa5 Qb3 38. Qb4 Qc2 39. Qb5 Qb3 40. Qb6 Qxa4 41. c6 Qc8 42. b4 Qb8 43. b5 Qd1 44. Qc5 Qa4 45. b6 Qc8 46. Qd6 Qb3 47. Qe7 Qc4 48. Qf8 Qe6 49. Qg7 Qd5 50. c7 Qe6 51. Qxh7 Qd5 52. Qg7 Qe6 53. Qf8 Qd7! (53... Qd5? 54. Qe7 Qa2 55. h5 gxh5 56. g6 fxg6 57. Qd6 Qf7 58. b7+ Qxb7 59. Qd7+-) 54. Qg8 Qc8 55. Qg7 Qd7 56. Qh6 Qf5 57. h5 gxh5 58. Qxh5 Qg6+ 59. Qh6 Qc8 60. Qg7 Qh5 61. Qf8 Qd7= 31. b4! (D)



31... axb4 There is no salvation anywhere to be found, e.g., 31...h5 32. gxh6 Qh7 33. Qe5 Qxh6 34. Qd6 g5 35. Qc7 axb4 36. Qxb4 gxh4 37. Qd6 Qg6 38. Qe5 h3 39. Qxb7 h2 40. Qxh2 Qxf6 41. a5 Qd3 42. a6 Qxh6+ 43. Qxa6 Qf5 44. Qh5 Qx4 45. Qc5+- ; 31...b6 32. Qxb6 axb4

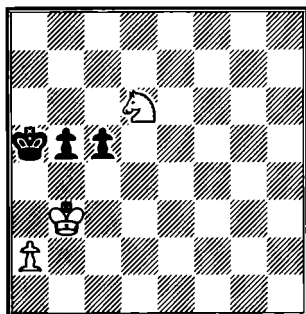
33. Qc5 b3 34. Qa3 b2 (34...h6 35. gxh6 Qh7 36. Qe5 Qxh6 37. Qxd5+-) 35. Qxb2 Qf8 36. a5 Qd3 37. Qe5 Qe8 38. Qd6 Qd8 39. Qa3 Qc4 40. Qc5 Qd3 41. Qb6+ Qe8 (41... Qc8 42. Qe7+-) 42. Qc7+- . 32. Qxb4 Qd3?! 32...b6!? is more tenacious as Black's king can leave the prison. But then White's invades on the kingside: 33. Qe5 Qa2 34. Qd6 Qb3 35. Qc6 Qh8 (35... Qxa4+?! 36. Qxd5+-) 36. Qb5 Qg8 37. Qd6 Qd1 (37...h6 38. gxh6 Qh7 39. Qf8 Qc2 40. Qxb6 Qxa4 41. Qc5 Qb3 42. Qd6 Qg8 43. Qe7 Qd1 44. h7+ Qxh7 45. Qxf7 Qh5 46. Qe7 g5 47. f7 gxh4 48. Qf6 h3 49. Qd6+-) 38. Qc7 Qf8 39. Qxb6 Qe8 40. a5 Qd7 41. a6 Qe2+ 42. Qa5 Qc8 43. a7 Qb7 44. Qb4+- followed by an invasion on the kingside. 32...h5?! 33. gxh6 Qh7 34. Qf8 b6 35. Qe5 Qc2 36. Qxd5 Qxa4 37. Qd6+- 33. a5 Qc4 34. Qe5 Qb3 35. Qd6 Qc4 36. Qc5 Qh8 36... Qb3 37. Qb6 Qc4 38. Qxb7+- ; 36... Qe2 37. Qb6 Qa6 38. Qc7 Qh8 39. Qf8+- 37. Qb6 Qa6 38. Qf8 Qg8 39. Qg7 (D)



Ponomarev closes the prison door for good. A really tragicomic *zugzwang*. 39...h5 40. gxh6 Qh7 41. Qc7 Qg8 42. Qd6 Qc4 43. Qe7 1-0

K04.04: 64... Qc3!! This surprising retreat saves the day as only the a-pawn remains. 64... Qxa2? 65. Qf5 Qb3

66. ♖d6 ♜b4 67. ♗xb7 ♜b5 68. ♜e4 ♜a6 69. ♖d6+- **65. ♜e3** 65. ♖c8 ♜d4 66. ♖d6 ♜xc5 67. ♗xb7+ ♜b4=
65... ♜c4 66. ♜d2 ♜xc5 67. ♜c3 ♜b5!
 67...b5? opens a road for White:
 68. ♖c8 b4+ 69. ♜b3 ♜b5 70. ♖d6+ ♜a5 71. ♖f5 c5 (71... ♜b5 72. ♖d4+ ♜c5 73. ♖c2+-) 72. ♖d6 ♜b6 73. ♜a4 ♜c6 74. ♖c4 ♜d5 75. ♖b6+ ♜d4 (75... ♜c6 76. ♜a5 ♜c7 77. ♜b5 ♜d6 78. ♖a4+-) 76. ♜b3 ♜d3 77. ♖d5 ♜d4 78. ♗xb4 cxb4 79. ♜xb4+- **68. ♜b3 c5** 69. ♖c8 ♜a5 70. ♖d6 70. ♜c4?! ♜a4= **70...b5!** (D)

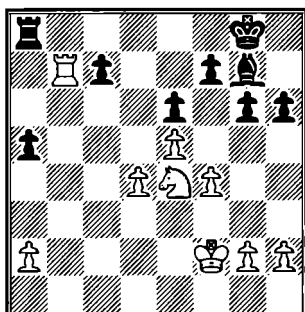


This pawn wall cannot be breached.
 70...b6? 71. ♜c4 ♜a4 72. ♖b5 ♜a5 73. ♖c3 ♜a6 74. ♜d5 ♜a5 75. ♜c6 ♜b4 76. ♜xb6 ♜xc3 77. ♜xc5+-
71. ♖e4 After 71. ♜a3 Black just waits with 71... ♜b6 (but not 71...c4? 72. ♖b7+ ♜b6 73. ♖d8 ♜a5 74. ♖c6+ ♜b6 75. ♖b4 ♜a5 76. ♖d5 c3 77. ♜b3+-) **71...c4+** **72. ♜b2** 72. ♜c3 ♜a4 73. ♖c5+ ♜a3= (73... ♜a5? allows a blockade with 74. a3 ♜b6 75. ♜b4 c3 76. ♖d3 c2 77. ♜b3 ♜a5 78. ♜xc2 ♜a4 79. ♜b2+-) **72... ♜b4** 73. ♖c3 ♜c5 74. ♖e4+ ♜d4 75. ♖d6 b4 ½-½
 There is the wall again.

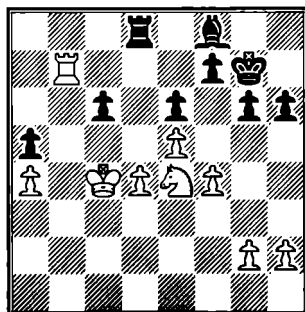
Chapter 5

E05.01: 24. ♜f2! Strong prophylaxis, as per the principle "do not rush."

24. ♜xc7? ♜xc7 25. ♜xc7 ♖d5 26. ♜d7 ♖xe3 27. ♖d6 ♜b8 (27...f6? 28. ♖f4+-) 28. ♜f2 ♖d5 29. ♜xa7 f6 gives Black much better practical drawing chances, but White remains for choice of course. **24... ♖d5** **25. ♖f4!** By exchanging Black's only active piece, White will reach a very good Andersson endgame (see 04.11). **25... ♜cb8** **26. ♜cb1 ♜xb7** **27. ♜xb7 ♖xf4** **28. exf4 a5** (D)

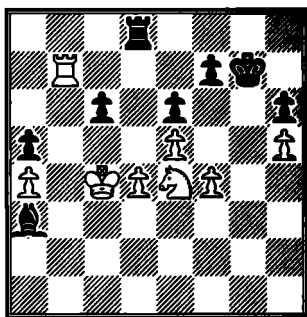


29. ♜e3 Beliaevsky again does not rush to take the pawn. But 29. ♜xc7 wins as well, e.g., 29... ♜b8 30. ♖d6 ♜b2+ 31. ♜f3 ♜xa2 32. ♖xf7 a4 33. ♖d8 a3 34. ♖xe6+- **29...c6** **30. a4** 30. ♖d6!? ♖f8 31. ♖xf7 c5 32. dxc5 ♖xc5+ 33. ♜e4 ♖f8 34. ♖d6 ♜a6 35. ♖e8+- **30... ♖f8** **31. ♜d3 ♜d8** **32. ♜c4 ♜g7** (D)



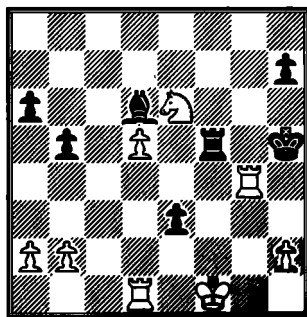
33.g4! "The principle of 'two weaknesses' in action." (Krusenkow in

CBM 113) 33...♔a3 34.h4 ♖f8
35.h5 g×h5 36.g×h5 ♖g7 (D)



37.f5! The final breakthrough. 37...exf5
38.♖g3 f4 39.♖f5+ ♖f8 40.♖×h6
♔e7 41.♖f5 ♔g5 42.♖b1 f3 43.h6
♖e8 44.h7 ♖d7 45.♖b7+ ♖c8
46.♖d6+ ♖×d6 47.exd6 1-0

E05.02: 29...e3? 29...♖d7 30.♖e2
♖f7 was much more tenacious as Black
targets the weak d5-pawn. **30.f4!** ♔g4
30...♖g6 31.♖c6 ♔e7 32.♖e2±;
30...♔f4? 31.♖c8+ ♖f7 32.♖f8+ ♖g6
33.♖×f5+- **31.♖c6 ♔×f4** This runs
into a beautiful combination. But
31...♖h5 loses as well: 32.♖e2! ♔×f4
33.♖c8+ ♖f7 34.♖f8+ ♖e7
35.♖×f4+- . **32.♖c8+ ♖f7 33.♖f8+**
♖g6 34.♖g8+ ♖h5 35.♖×g4
♔d6+ (D)



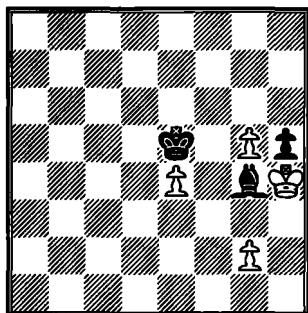
36.♖f4! Robson's point, which uses
the tactical options of the knight nicely.
36...♔×f4 37.♖g7+ ♖g4
38.♖×f5 ♖f3 38...♖×f5 39.d6+
39.♖d4+ 1-0

E05.03: 45.♖b7? Too automatic. The
prophylactic 45.♖h1! had to be played
first: 45...♖f6 (45...♖h8 46.♖×h2
♖×h2 47.a8♖ c3 48.♖c8+-)
46.♖×h2 ♖e5 47.♖h5+ ♖d4 48.♖b7
c3 49.a8♖ ♖×a8 50.♖×a8 c2 51.♖h1
♖×d5 52.♖c1 e5 53.♖×c2 e4 54.a4
e3 55.a5 ♖e4 56.a6 d5 57.♖b8 d4
58.a7 d3 59.a8♖+- . **45...♖f3!!** An
amazing saving resource. A real wonder
in the rook endgame. 45...c3? 46.a8♖
♖×a8 47.♖×a8 e6 (47...c2 48.♖f1!+-
The rook has to be used in all
directions! [48.♖h1? e6 49.d×e6 d5
50.♖f1 d4 51.e7 h1♖+ 52.♖×h1 ♖f7-
+]) 48.d×e6 d5 49.♖f1 d4 (49...h1♖
50.♖×h1 ♖f6 51.♖c1 d4 52.a4 ♖×e6
53.a5 ♖d5 54.a6 ♖c4 55.a7 d3
56.♖b8 d2 57.♖h1 c2 58.a8♖ d1♖
59.♖a4+-) 50.e7 h1♖+ 51.♖×h1
♖f7 52.♖c1 ♖×e7 53.a4 ♖d6 54.♖b7
♖c5 55.a5 ♖c4 56.a6 d3 57.a7 d2
58.♖h1 c2 59.a8♖ d1♖ 60.♖a4+- .
46.a8♖ 46.♖a1 ♖b3+ 47.♖c6 h1♖
48.♖×h1 ♖×a3 49.♖b7 ♖b3+ 50.♖c6
♖a3= **46...♖b3+ 47.♖×b3 c×b3**
48.♖a4 After 48.♖e8 h1♖
49.♖×e7+ ♖g8 50.♖g5+ (50.♖×d6
♖g2=) 50...♖h8 White cannot win
Black's b-pawn and so has to give
perpetual check. **48...h1♖ 49.♖×b3**
e6! Black liquidates into a drawn queen
endgame as White's a-pawn does not
provide enough winning potential.
50.♖c6 e×d5 51.♖×d6 ♖f1
52.♖g3+ ♖f7 53.♖×d5 ♖b5+
54.♖d4 ♖a4+ 55.♖c5 ♖a5+
56.♖c6 ♖a6+ 57.♖c7 ♖a7+
58.♖d8 ♖a8+ 59.♖d7 ♖a7+ ½-½

Chapter 6

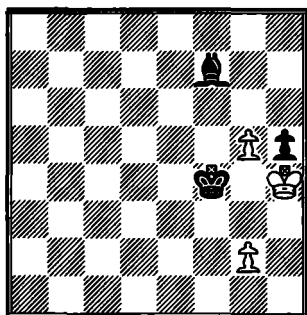
E06.01: 26.g4! This advance gains
space and threatens to open roads with
f5. Afterwards White will open the
queenfile with h4 to use his initiative.
26...♖d4 27.♖h7 ♖f8 28.f5! e×f5

29.gxf5 ♖ab8 30.♗x♖b8 ♗x♖b8
 31.b4 a×b3+ 32.a×b3 ♗b7?!
 Tantamount to resignation, but Black
 is lost in the long run in any case.
 33.b4 ♖f2 33...♖e7 34.♖b3 b5
 35.c5 ♖a7 36.♖d4+- 34.♗f4 ♖e3
 35.♗g4 ♖g5 36.b5 ♖e7 37.♗e4+
 ♖d7 37...♖f8 38.♖d4 ♖e7 39.♖c3
 ♗b8 40.♗e2 ♗b7 41.♗a2+-
 38.♖xg7 ♗a7 39.♖d4 ♖c7 40.f6
 ♗a2+ 41.♖b3 ♗d2 42.♖c3 1-0



E06.02: 53.♖e2! Necessary
 prophylaxis to maintain winning
 potential as 53.♖xg6? runs into 53...f4
 54.gxf4 ♖xf4+ 55.♖g5 ♖g2 56.♖xh5
 ♖xh4=. 53...♖e5 54.♖f6 ♖g4+
 55.♖xg6 ♖c5 56.♖xf5 ♖d6
 57.♖f4 ♖e3+ 58.♖e4 1-0

E06.03: 55...♖e6! The only move.
 55...♖d3? runs into a nasty surprise:
 56.♖f2 ♖f7 (56...h4 57.g6 ♖e4 58.g3
 h3 59.g4 ♖e5 60.♖g3=) 57.♖g3
 ♖xe3 58.♖h4 ♖f4 (D)



and now a miracle saves White: 59.g6
 ♖xg6 60.g4 h×g4 stalemate; 55...♖e4?
 56.♖h2 ♖d5 57.♖g3 ♖e6 58.♖h4
 ♖g6 59.g4= 56.♖f2 ♖d5! 57.♖g3
 57.g6 does not help as the bishop controls
 everything after 57...♖e5 58.g7
 ♖f6 59.♖g3 ♖xg7 60.♖h4 ♖g4+-.
 57...♖e5 58.e4 ♖g4 The direct
 58...♖xe4? runs into 59.♖h4 ♖f7
 60.g4= 59.♖h4 (D)

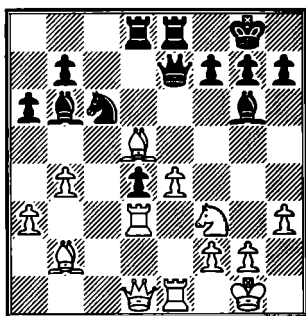
59...♖e6! The greedy 59...♖xe4? is
 met by 60.g6=. 60.♖g3 ♖f7
 61.♖f4 ♖g6 And Black will convert
 his extra piece by using the typical
 technique *zugzwang*. 62.♖e5 ♖xg5
 63.♖d6 ♖f4 64.e5 ♖g3 65.e6
 ♖xe60-1 and White resigned in view
 of 66.♖xe6 ♖xg2 67.♖f5 h4 68.♖g4
 h3+-.

Tests

Test 1

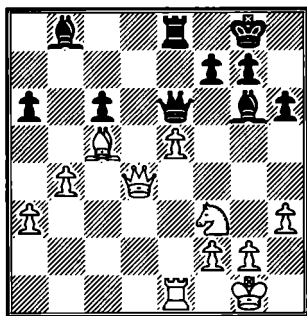
T01.01: 34.d6! "A marvelous move,
 showing the touch of a great master.
 White is controlling both light and dark
 squares." (Ftacnik in CBM 134)
 34.♖xe5?! ♖c7 35.♖e6 a5 36.g4 ♖e7
 37.h5 is better for White, but not as
 good as the game, which is technically
 won as Black cannot install any strong
 blockade anymore. So 34.♖xe5 gets
 only one point. Also one point for
 34.♖xe5?! ♖f6+ 35.♖d6 ♖xb2 36.e4
 ♖d8 37.♖f1 a5 38.♖b5±. 34...♖c6
 34...♖f6 35.♖xe5+- 35.♖c8 ♖f6
 35...a5 36.♖b7 ♖d4 37.♖xe5 ♖xe2
 38.♖c6+ ♖f8 39.g4+- 36.g4 g6
 37.g5 h×g5 38.h×g5 ♖d8 38...♖g7

The solution for *Test 1* continues on
 page 182, along with the solutions for
Test 2 and the first part of *Test 3*.



From page 182:

24. ♖d2! "A professional decision. White's not in a hurry. Instead of winning a pawn which leads to a better endgame with queen and a passed pawn vs. two rooks, he takes his rook away from possible tactical tricks and keeps all options open." (Mikhalevski in CBM 99) The direct 24. ♖xc6 has the disadvantage that many pieces are exchanged and the resulting technical endgames offer Black chances to defend: 24... bxc6 25. ♖xd4 ♖xe4 26. ♗de3 ♖xd4 27. ♗xd4 ♗e5 28. ♗xc6 (28. ♗xe4 ♗xe4 29. ♗xe4 ♗xe4 30. ♗d3 ♗exd4 31. ♗xa6 [Mikhalevski] 31... ♗4d6) 28... ♗xd1 29. ♗xe5 ♗xe1+ 30. ♗xe1 ♗xe5 31. f3 f5. **24... ♖a7?** This loses a pawn without any compensation. 24... ♖h5! forces White to weaken his king's position: 25. g4 ♖g6 26. ♖xc6 bxc6 27. ♖xd4 c5 28. ♖xc5 ♖xc5 29. bxc5 ♗xd2 30. ♗xd2 ♗xc5 31. ♗d7! ♗f8 32. ♗a4y (Mikhalevski). **25. ♖xc6 bxc6 26. ♖xd4 ♖b8 27. ♖c5 ♗xd2 28. ♗xd2 ♗e6 29. e5 h6 29... ♗d5 30. ♗xd5 cxd5 31. ♖d6!+-** (Mikhalevski). **30. ♗e3!** The direct 30. ♗d4! ♗d5 31. f4+- (Mikhalevski) is stronger. **30... ♗d5 31. ♗d4 ♗e6?** The endgame 31... ♗xd4 32. ♖xd4 ♖d3 offers better practical chances. (D)



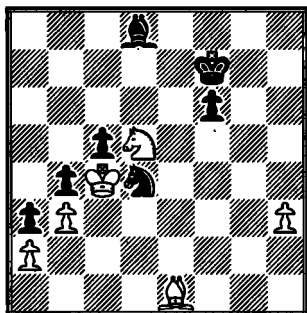
32. ♖d6! Epishin exchanges the defender of the dark squares. **32... ♗b3?** This loses directly. But good advice is hard to give. **33. ♗b6 ♖xd6 34. ♗xc6 1-0** One point for 17. ♖c4.

T01.04: 29. b5! Ernst secures the important outpost on c6. **29... ♗f8 29... ♗e8 30. ♗d7 ♗xd7 31. ♗xd7 ♗xd7 32. ♗xd7 ♗c7 33. ♗xc7 ♗xc7 34. ♗c6 a5 (34... ♗e8 35. ♗xa7 ♗d6 36. c5 bxc5 37. ♗f1+-) 35. c5 ♗a8 36. ♗xa5+-; 29... ♗d5 30. ♗c6 ♗f6 31. a4±** **30. ♗d3 30. ♗c6** is also very strong. **30... ♗d5 31. ♗c6 ♗e7 31... ♗f6 32. ♗f3 ♗xc6 33. bxc6 ♗e7 34. g4 h6 35. h4 g5 36. hxg5 hxg5 37. ♗e3+-** **32. ♗xc7 ♗xc7 33. ♗d7 ♗c8 34. ♗f6+ ♗f8 35. ♗xh7+ ♗g8 36. ♗f6+ ♗f8 37. ♗d8+ 1-0** One point for 29. b5.

T01.05: 29. b4! 29. ♗f4? is parried by 29... ♗f8 30. b4 ♗e6=. **29... f5 30. bxc5 fxe4 30... ♗xc5 31. ♗exd4 ♗xd4 32. ♗xd4+ ♗xd4+ 33. ♗xd4+-** **31. ♗xf7 ♗f3+ 32. ♗xf3 1-0** One point for 29. b4.

T01.06: 41. ♗d5! 41. ♖f2? ♖b6 42. ♗c2 ♗f5 43. ♗d5 ♖a7 44. ♗xb4 ♗e7 is better for White, but not as convincing as the game. **41... ♗xf5**

41...c4+ 42.bxc4 b3 43.axb3 ♖xf5
44.♗b4 ♗e7 45.♗c3+- 42.♗c4
♗d4 (D)



43.♗f2! 43.♗xc5? runs into
43...♖xb3+! after which Black can
hold. Both 43.♗xb4?! ♖xb3 44.♗xa3
♗d2+ 45.♗xc5 ♗e4+ 46.♗c6 and
43.♖xb4 ♗f3 44.♗d3 ♗e7 45.♗d5
give White winning chances but the text
is easier to play. 43...f5 44.♗xc5?!
With knights on the board, it is more
complicated. 44.♗xd4!? cxd4
45.♗xd4 ♗e6 (45...♗g6 46.♖xb4
♗g5 47.♗d5 ♗h4 48.♗e5+-)
46.♖xb4 ♗f6+ 47.♗e3 ♗e5 48.♗c2
♗e7 49.b4+- 44...♗e6+?!
45.♗xb4 ♗g5 46.♗h4 ♗e6
47.♗c4 ♗e5 48.b4 f4 49.b5 ♗f7
50.♗xd8 ♗xd8 51.b6 51.♖xf4!
wins directly: 51...♗xf4 52.♗b4 ♗g3
53.♗xa3 ♗xh3 54.♗b4 ♗g4 55.a4
♗f5 56.a5 ♗e6 57.a6+- . 51...f3
52.♗e3 ♗e4 53.♗d1 ♖b7
54.♗b4 ♗d6 55.h4 ♗f4 56.♗c5
♖b7+ 57.♗c6 ♗a5+ 58.♗c7
♗g4 59.b7 ♖xb7 60.♗xb7 ♗xh4
61.♗c6 ♗g3 62.♗c5! ♗g2 62...f2
63.♖xf2 ♗xf2 64.♗b4 ♗e3 65.♗xa3
♗d4 66.♗b4+- (Postny in CBM 112)
. 63.♗b4 ♗f1 64.♗e3+ ♗f2
65.♗f5! ♗e1 66.♗xa3 ♗d2!?
67.♗b3 f2 68.♗g3 ♗e3 69.a4
♗f4 70.♗f1 ♗e5 Isn't it amazing
that Black is still fighting? He will even

catch the a-pawn but finally White's
knight will be just in time to seal
Black's fate: 71.♗b4 ♗d6 72.♗b5
♗c7 73.a5 ♗b7 74.a6+ ♗a7
75.♗a5 ♗a8 76.♗b6 ♗b8
77.♗e3 ♗a8 78.♗d5 1-0 and
Black resigned in view of 78...f1♗
79.♗c7+ ♗b8 80.a7+ ♗c8 81.a8♗+
♗d7 82.♗e8+ ♗d6 83.♗e6*. Two
points for 41.♗d5.

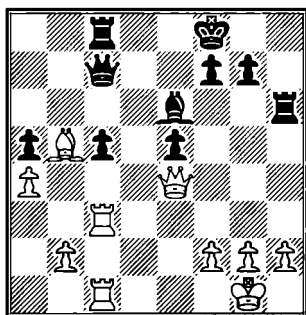
T01.07: 25...f5! Radjabov undermines
the center and reduces White's bishop
to passivity. The greedy 25...♗xa4?!
26.f5 plays into White's hand. 26.exf5
♗xf5 27.♗e3 ♗xe3! 28.♗xe3
♗d4 29.♗f2 ♗xe3 30.♗xe3
♗xd5! 30...♗e8 31.♗d1 ♗h5 was
the alternative, and is also clearly better
for Black, but Radjabov's move is more
forcing. 31.♗d1 ♗e8! An excellent
practical decision. 31...♖xe3?!
32.♗xe3 ♗f6 33.b3 gives White
potential counterplay against Black's
king. 32.♗f2?! The rook ending
32.♗xd5 ♗xd5 33.♗xd5 ♗xe3 had to
be played but Black should win in the
long run after 34.♗f2 (34.♗xd6
♗e2+-) 34...♗b3 35.♗d2 d5+-
32...♖xf4 33.♗xd6? ♗e4 0-1 One
point for 25...f5.

T01.08: 18...♗e8! The knight
regrouping to d6 stops White's play in
the center for good. After the
alternatives 18...♗e8?! 19.♗e5 ♗c7
20.♗c4 or 18...♗d7?! 19.♗e5 ♗fe8
20.♗e2 White still has a slight
initiative. 19.a5 ♗d8 20.♗d2 ♗d6
21.♗ce4 ♖xe4 22.♗xe4 b6
23.a6xb6 ♗xb6 24.♗xc5 ♗xb2
25.♗xb2 ♗xb2 26.♗ad1 ♗a3
27.♗e4 ♗b4 28.♗e3 ♗g7 29.g4
a5 30.♗g3 ½-½ Three points for
18...♗e8.

Test 2

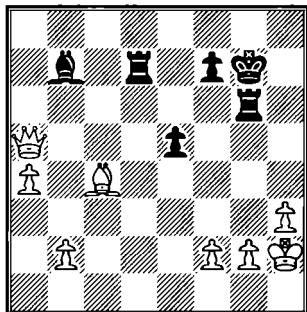
T02.01: 31. dxc6! dxc6 31... dxc8
 32. dxd4 b5 33. bxf6+ 32. dxc6
 Ba7 33. d5 Ba6 33... dxc6
 34. dxd4 g7 35. dxf6+ dxf6 36. dxf6
 xe4+ 37. Ba1 e5 38. dxa7+ —
 (Caruana in CBM 122). 34. dxc3 e5
 35. dxf6+ g7 36. dxe5 dxe5
 37. xe5 d3+ 38. Ba1 e7
 39. dxc5+ g8 40. dxf6+ g7
 41. b8 e2 42. h5 gxh5 43. c1
 “Nigel Short told me he had expected
 43. dxc5 dxf1 (43... dxc5
 44. dxc5+) 44. dxf8+! dxf8 45. h8+
 g7 46. h8* ” (Caruana). 43... dxe4
 44. c7 1-0 Two points for 31. dxc6 .

T02.02: 25. d b5! 25. d h8+? e7
 26. dxc7 d6 27. d g3 c4 28. d e2
 d4 gives Black good chances to sur-
 vive because of his activity. 25... d h6
 26. d e4 d e6 27. d ac3 d c8?!
 27... f5?! 28. d e1 e4 29. h3+- ; From the
 practical point of view, 27... c4 is pref-
 erable as Black has more counterplay,
 e.g., 28. dxc4 d6 (D)



28. dxc5! A strong exchange as Black’s
 uncoordinated rooks are no match for
 White’s active queen that has many tar-
 gets to attack and feels like a fish in
 water. 28... dxc5 29. dxc5 dxc5
 30. h3 Strong prophylaxis, as Black
 cannot use the time for active maneuvers.

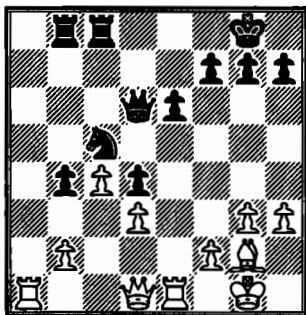
30... g5? Very weakening, but good ad-
 vice is hard to give, e.g., 30... d5
 31. d e1 h4 32. dxa5 d c4
 33. d e1+- . 31. d e3 d5 32. dxcg5
 d g6 33. d e3 d g8 33... d1+
 34. d h2 d5 35. f3 d b7 36. d e2 d d6
 37. dxe5 d a6 38. dxa6 dxa6
 39. g4+- 34. d h2 d c8 35. d a7
 d g7 36. d c4! d d7 37. dxa5 d b7 (D)



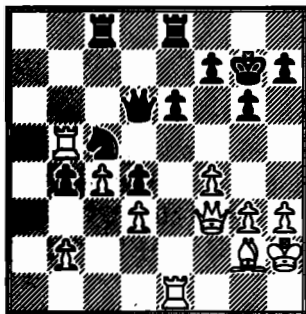
38. g4! White’s king is remarkably
 safe after this bold advance. 38... e4
 39. d e5+ d f8 40. d b5 40. a5 d g d6
 41. b4 d d2 42. dxc5+ d e7 43. d g3 e3
 44. fxe3 d g2+ 45. d h4+-
 40... d d d6 41. g5 d g8 42. d c4
 d c6 43. h4 e3 44. dxc3 d d1
 45. d e7 d g7 46. a5 d d4 47. d c5
 dxc4+ 48. d g3 d h6 49. a6 d e4
 50. a7 d h7 51. d e5 1-0 One point
 for 25. d b5 .

T02.03: 25... d d7! 25... dxc5? allows
 White to activate himself and to ex-
 change queens with 26. dxc5 d d7
 27. d a7 d c5 (27... d d8 can now be an-
 swered by 28. d b5!) 28. dxe7 dxb3
 29. d d7 when only White can be bet-
 ter. 26. d a7 d d8 27. exd6 d c5
 28. d d1 d b6 29. d a1 dxd6 (D)

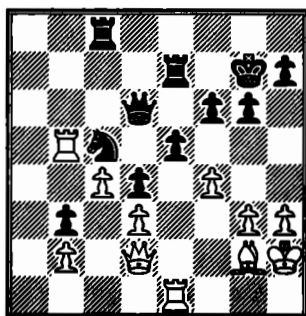
Now Black has a strategic initiative in
 view of the good knight versus bad
 bishop scenario. 30. f4?! Advancing
 pawn on the wing, where the opponent



is stronger, is always a risky business. But White's position is not easy to play in any case. 30...♖e8 31.♗f3 ♜bc8 32.♖h2 g6 33.♞a5 ♕g7 34.♞b5 (D)



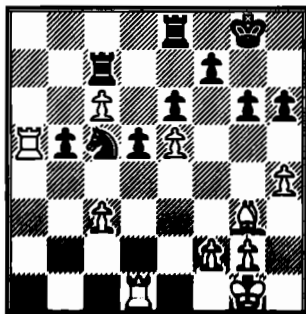
34...♞b3! "Now all endings will be won for Black because of the fixed weaknesses: d3 and b2" (Tiviakov in CBM 119). 35.♗e2 ♞e7 36.♞f1! f6 36...♞a7!? 37.♗d2 e5 38.♞g2? 38.fxe5 ♞xe5 39.♞xe5 ♗xe5 40.h4 limits Black's advantage. (D)



38...♞ce8! Tiviakov brings all forces into play before he opens the position. 39.♗b4? A tactical oversight, but White has no real defense in any case, e.g., 39.fxe5? allows Black's rooks to invade with 39...♞xe5 40.♞xe5 ♞xe5-+ (Tiviakov); 39.♞f3 exf4 40.♗xf4 ♗xf4 41.♞xe7+ ♞xe7 42.gxf4 ♞e3; and 39.f5 gxf5 40.♗b4 ♞c7 41.♞f1 f4 42.♞d5 fxg3+ 43.♖g2 ♖h8 are also clearly in Black's favor. 39...exf4!! 40.♞xe7+ ♞xe7 41.♞xc5 41.♗xc5 fxg3+ 42.♖g1 ♞e1+ 43.♞f1 ♗f4 44.♞b7+ ♖h6 45.♗f8+ ♖g5 46.♗c5+ f5-+ (Tiviakov). 41...fxg3+ 42.♖h1 ♞a7 42...♞e2 is even stronger. 43.♞e4 f5 44.♞c6 ♞a1+ 45.♖g2 ♗f4 46.♞xf5 ♗xf5 47.♗e7+ ♗f7 48.♗e5+ ♗f6 49.♗c7+ ♖h6 0-1 Two points for 25...♞d7.

T02.04: 28.♞e4! A strong prophylactic move. The direct 28.g4?? runs into 28...♞xd5 29.cxd5? g6-+ 28...♗e8? 28...d5 was the lesser evil, but after 29.♞xd5 (29.cxd5?! ♞c3 gives Black some relief) 29...♞d7 30.♞he3 White retains powerful pressure. 29.g4 g6 30.fxg6+ fxg6 31.g5 ♞g7 32.♞g3 ♞c8 1-0 Two points for 28.♞e4.

T02.05: 28...♞c5 29.♞a5 e6 (D)



Solutions: Tests

Black must keep the pawns in the center to restrict the bishop. 30. ♖×b5 ♜×c6 31. ♚f4 ♜e4 32. ♞e1! The more active 32. ♞a1 ♜×c3 33. ♞b2 gives better practical chances. 32... ♜×c3 33. ♞b7 ♖g7 34. ♜h2 ♞ec8 35. ♞a1 ♞6c7 36. ♞b3 d4 37. ♚d2 ♜e4 38. ♚e1 ♞c1 39. ♞bb1 ♞×b1 40. ♞×b1 d3 41. f3? Running into a small combination. 41. ♞d1 is forced but Black should win in the long run after 41... d2 42. ♚×d2 ♜×f2 43. ♞e1 ♞d8-+. 41... d2! 42. f×e4 ♞c1 43. ♚×d2 ♞×b1 44. ♜g3 ♞b3+ 45. ♜g4?! ♞b2 0-1 Two points for 28... ♜c5.

T02.06: 43. ♞b3! Forcing Black's rook to retreat as the technical endgame would be hopeless. 43. ♞ee? ♞b2+ 44. ♜c1 ♚f6 45. ♞e6 ♞f2 allows Black to continue the fight. 43... ♞a6 43... ♞×b3 44. ♜×b3 b5 45. ♞a7 ♚e5 46. h3 ♖g5 47. ♞×a5 ♜f4 48. ♞×b5 ♜g3 49. ♞b4+- 44. ♞b×b7 ♚e5 45. ♞a7 ♞b6 46. ♞cb7 Now Black must exchange rooks. 46... ♞×b7 47. ♞×b7 ♚×h2 48. ♞a7 g5 49. ♜d1 g4 50. ♜e2 ♜g5 51. ♞×a5 ♚g1 52. ♞a3 ♜f4 53. ♞d3 ♜e4 54. a4 ♚b6 55. ♞b3 ♚c5 56. a5 ♜×d5 57. a6 ♜c6 58. ♞b7 h3 59. g×h3 g×h3 60. ♜f3 1-0 Two points for 43. ♞b3.

T02.07: White wins by losing a tempo with his bishop again and again. A typical method to use the principle of two weaknesses when not much material is left on the board: 47. ♚b3 ♚d7 48. ♚a2 ♚c8 49. ♚c4 *Zugzwang*. 49... h5 50. ♚b3 ♚d7 51. ♚a2 ♚c8 52. ♚c4 *Zugzwang*. 52... ♜b7 53. ♜c5 ♜c7 54. ♚b3

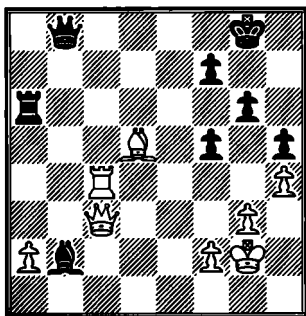
♚d7 55. ♚a2 ♚c8 56. ♚c4 1-0 and the decisive *zugzwang*. One point for detecting the *zugzwang* mechanisms.

T02.08: 33... ♜e2! 33... f×e6?? 34. ♜×h6 ♞f7 35. ♞d8+-; 33... ♜×c3?? 34. ♞×f7 ♞×f7 35. ♜×f7+ ♜h8 36. e7 ♜c6 37. ♞d8+-; 33... ♜b3? 34. e7 ♞fe8 35. ♞d8+-; 33... ♜c2? 34. e7 ♞fe8 35. ♞d8+- 34. e×f7+ 34. e7? can now be met by 34... ♞fe8 35. ♞d8? ♜×e7. 34... ♜h7 and Black's king is safe 35. ♜d6 ♜c4 36. ♞×b7 ♞×f7 37. ♞×f7+ ♜×f7 38. ♜e5 ♜g7 39. ♜×g7+ ♜×g7 40. ♞d7+ ♜f6 41. ♞×a7 ♞×c3 42. h3 ½-½ Two points for 33... ♜e2.

Test 3

T03.01: 36. f5! Opposite-color bishops favor the attacker so van Wely opens the road towards the vulnerable f7-point. 36. ♞c8+?! also gives White the upper hand, but his attack is not as strong as in the game, where van Wely underscores this all important point even more. White can reach favorable technical endgames like 36... ♜g7 37. ♞c7 ♞a5 38. ♚c6 (38. ♜d3 ♚c5 39. ♚×g6 ♜×f2+ 40. ♜h3 ♞a7 41. ♞×a7 ♚×a7 42. ♚×h5 ♜e1) 38... ♞f5 39. ♜×e6 ♚c5 40. ♜e1 ♜×a2 41. ♚e4 ♚d6 42. ♚×f5 ♚×c7 43. ♜c3+ ♜g8 44. ♚×g6 ♜d5+ 45. ♜g1 ♚a5 but it is not easy to convert such an advantage. Attacking the king is much easier! 36... e×f5 36... g×f5? 37. ♞c8+ ♜h7 38. ♜g5 ♜g7 39. ♜×h5+ ♜h6 40. ♜×f7+ ♜g7 41. ♜h5+ ♜h6 42. ♞c7+ ♜g8 43. ♜×h6+-; 36... ♜×a2? 37. ♞c8+ ♜g7 38. f6+ ♜×f6 39. ♜h4+ ♜h7 40. ♜e5+ f6 41. ♜c7+ ♜h8 42. ♞h8* 37. ♚d5 ♜b8

37...♔d6 38.♖h6 ♖g7 39.♖c8+ ♔f8
40.♖e3 ♔d6 41.♔c4 ♔d7 42.♖c5+-
and Black is dominated so that the a-
pawn will decide the day. 38.♖c3
♔b2? Allowing a combination. How-
ever, 38...♖h7 39.♖c7 ♔a7 40.♖c8
♔b2 41.♖c5 ♖e5 42.♖xa7 ♖xd5+
43.♔3+- loses in the long run as well. (D)



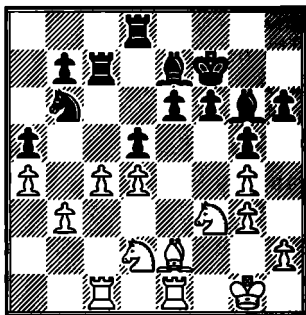
39.♖c8+? This should still win
technically, but 39.♔xf7+! was much
stronger: 39...♖h7 (39...♖xf7
40.♖c7+ ♖g8 41.♖c4+ ♖h8
42.♖c8+-) 40.♔g8+!! ♖xg8
(40...♖xg8 41.♖c7+ ♖h6
42.♖xb2+-) 41.♖c8+ ♖h7 42.♖c7+
♖g8 43.♖c4+ ♖h8 44.♖c8+-
(Marin in CBM 135). 39...♖h7
40.♖c4 ♖d6 41.♔b7 ♖b6
42.♖xf7+ ♔g7 43.♖c7 ♖f6
44.♖xf6 ♖xf6 45.a4 f4 46.a5
f×g3 47.f×g3 ♖f5 48.a6 ♖a5
49.♔d7 ♖a3 50.♖e7 ♖a2+
51.♖h3 ♖h6 52.♖e6 ♔d4
53.♔d5 ♖a3 54.♔e4 ♖g7
55.♖xg6+ ♖f7 56.♖g5 ♖xa6
57.♖xh5 ♖a3 58.♖g4 ♔c3
59.♖b5 ♖f6 60.♔c2 ♔e5
61.♔b3 ♖a1 62.♖b6+ ♖g7
63.♖e6 ♔f6 64.h5 ♖a5 65.h6+
♖g6 66.♔c2+ ♖f7 67.♖c6 ♖g5+
68.♖f4 ♖h5 69.h7 ♔e5+ 70.♖g4
♖h2 71.♖c8 ♔b2 72.♔f5 ♔d4
73.♖f4 ♔b2 74.g4 ♖h1 75.♖c7+
♖f8 76.g5 ♖f1+ 77.♖g4 ♖e1

78.♖h5 ♖e7 79.♖c2 ♔e5
80.♔g6 1-0 Three points for 36.f5.

T03.02: 29.g4! f×g4 29...♔d8
30.♖g3 h6 (30...♔d7 31.♖xd8 ♖xd8
32.g×f5 g×f5 33.♔xb7+ ♖c7 34.♔a5
♔e8 35.♖h4 h6 36.♔b3 ♔g6 37.♔d4
♖d7 38.♖g3+-) 31.♖h4+- (Roiz in
CBM 97). 30.h×g4 h5 31.g×h5
31.♖xc8+ ♖xc8 32.♔xc8 ♖xc8 33.f5
g×f5 34.g×h5+- 31...g×h5
32.♖xc8+ ♖xc8 33.♔xc8 ♖xc8
34.♖g3 ♖d7 35.♖h4 ♖c6
36.♖xh5 ♖xc5 37.f5 1-0 Two
points for 29.g4.

T03.03: 28.♖g3! To prepare f2-f4,
which will win: 28.♖xe5? d×e5
29.♖xe5 ♔d2 30.♔f4 ♖f7 and
28.♔c5? ♖a7 play into Black's hand.
28...♖f7 29.♖c3 ♖xc3+ 30.♖xc3
♖b7 31.♖d4 The direct 31.♖c7!? is
easier. 31...♖f7 32.f4 ♔d7
33.♖a7? 33.♖c3 ♔f8 34.♖c8 ♖f6
35.♖f3 ♖e7 (35...h5 36.g5 ♖f5
37.♖f2 a5 38.a4+-) 36.g5+-
33...♔f8? 33...♖f6 34.♖a8+ ♔f8
35.g5 ♖f5 was more tenacious.
34.♖xf7+ ♖xf7 35.♔c7 ♔d7
36.♔xa6 ♔f6 37.♔b4 ♖e7
38.♖f3 ♖d7 39.g5 ♔g8 40.♔c6
1-0 One point for 28.♖g3.

T03.04: 21...♔a4! This forces White
to weaken the dark-squares. So Black's
e7-bishop gets stronger and stronger.
22.b3 ♔b6 23.a4 ♖f7 23...g4! is
probably even stronger. 24.g4 ♖c7
25.g3 ♔d8 26.♔e2?! too passive.
White should try to get counterplay on
the light squares with 26.c×d5 ♔xd5
27.e4 ♔b4 28.♖g2 ♖cc8 29.d5 e×d5
30.e×d5 ♔xd5 31.♔c4 26...c×d4
27.e×d4 (D)



27...**Qa3!** Such small hits are typical for exploiting the advantage of the bishop pair **28.Ha1 Qb4 29.Hf1 29.c5** is met by **29...d7 30.Qb5 e5 31.Qxd7 Hxd7 32.dxe5 He7 33.exf6 Qxf6** and Black's bishop will reign supreme. **29...dxc4!?** The weak d4-pawn will fall sooner or later anyway so Ftacnik keeps more pieces on the board. The direct **29...Qxd2 30.Qxd2 dxc4 31.Qxc4 Qxc4 32.Qxc4 Hxd4** should win as well, but poses more technical problems. **30.Qxc4 Qd5 31.Qfe5+ Qg7 32.Qxg6 Qxg6 33.Qd3+ Qg7 34.Qe4?! Qc3 35.Qf3 Hxd4 36.Hae1 He7 37.Qe3 Hd3 38.Qf5+?** A tactical oversight in a lost position. **38...exf5 0-1** Two points for **21...Qa4**.

T03.05: 32.Qg3? 32.Hh5! Qe5 (32...Qa7 33.Hh6 Qc8 34.Qg5y) 33.Qe2 Qg4 34.h3 Qf6 35.Hf5 Hxe4 36.Qxe4 Qe6 37.Qf3± **32...h6 33.Qxc6+** 33.Hg6?? Qe5-+ **33...Qxc6 34.Hg6 1-0** and Black resigned, but he had good drawing chances, e.g., **34...Hfe8 35.e4 He6 36.Hg7 H6e7**. Two points for **32.Hh5**.

T03.06: 44.a4! Necessary prophylaxis as **44.Qf3?** is met by **44...a4. 44...Qf7 45.Qf3 g5 45...h4 46.h4 Qe8 47.Qe4 Qf7 48.Qc5 Qa7?**

49.Qd6 Qd5 50.Qc6 e5 51.Qxe5 Qe6 52.Qd4+- 46.fxg5 hxg5 47.Qg4 Qxf6+ 48.Qxg5 Qd7 49.h4 e5 50.Qe3 Qf6 51.Qxb6 Qe4+ 52.Qf5 Qd6+ 52...Qc3 53.Qxe5 Qxa4 54.Qd4+- (Hecht). 53.Qg4 Qc4 54.Qc7 Qe6 55.h5 e4 56.h6 e3 57.h7 e2 58.Qxa5 58.h8 Qe3+ 59.Qg5 e1 Q 60.Qe5+ Qd7 61.Qd6+ Qe8 62.Qe6+ Qf8 63.Qd6+ Qg7 64.Qg6+ Qh8 65.Qe5* (Hecht). 58...Qe5+ 59.Qg3 Qg6 60.Qf2 1-0 One point for **44.a4**.

T03.07: Berg restricts both minor pieces with 32.f3! and then improves his position on the kingside. Black can only sit and await his fate: **32...Qg6 33.g4 Qh8 34.h5 Qh7 35.Qg2 Qg8 35...Qg8 36.Qb3 He7 37.Qc5+- 36.Qe2 Qc8?! 37.Qg3 Qh7 38.Qf5 Qg5 39.Qe7?! 39.Hc3! Hd8 40.Hxc6 Hxd6 41.Hxc8+- (Huzman in CBM 94)** decides the issue immediately. **39...Qb7 40.Qxc6 40.Qxg8 Qxg8 41.Hc3 Qa7 42.Qxc6 Hd8 43.Qc5** is also very strong. **40...f5!** A good try to confuse matters **41.Qxg8 fxe4 42.fxe4 Qxg8? 42...Hxg8** is called for but White keeps a commanding position after **43.Qd7 Qa8 44.Qd5±. 43.Qd7!** very strong as the queen is Black's main defender. The resulting endgame is just a matter of technique: **43...Qxd7 43...Qa8 44.Qxe8+ Qxe8 45.Hd8 Qxd8 46.Qxd8 Qxe4 47.Qe6+- 44.Hxd7 Qxe4 45.Ha7 Qc3 46.Hxa6 e4 47.Hb6 Qh7 47...e3 48.Hb8 Hxb8 49.Qxb8 e2 50.Qf2+- 48.Hb8 He6 49.a6 Hxc6 50.a7 Ha6 51.a8 H Hxa8 52.Hxa8 Qd5 53.Hc8 Qxb4 54.Hc5 Qd3 55.cxd3 1-0** One point for **42.f3**.

T03.08: It is the right time to open a second front on the kingside: **29.g4! ♖f6** 29...h×g4 runs into **30.h5 ♖f6** 31.h6+ ♖f7 32.♗×g4 with a winning attack, e.g., 32...♙g8 33.♖f3 ♗e7 34.♗×g6+ ♖h8 35.♖×d6 ♗×d6 (35...♖×d6 36.♖f7 ♗×f7 37.♗×f7+-) 36.♗e8+ ♖h7 37.♖g3 ♗d1+ 38.♖h2+- . **30.♖×d6 ♖×d6** 31.♖×d6 ♗×g5 32.h×g5 **b5** 33.c×b5 a×b5 34.g×h5 g×h5 35.♖×e6 h4 36.♖h6 h3 37.♖h2 ♖c2 38.♖×h3 ♖×f2 39.♖b6 ♖×a2 40.♖g4 1-0 Two points for 29.g4.

Test 4

T04.01: **39.a4 b×a4?** Opening inroads for White's pieces. 39...♖c6 40.a×b5 a×b5 41.♖d3 is better, but White still has a strong initiative. **40.c4 ♗c7** 41.c×d5 ♗a5 42.♗f4 ♗d8?! 42...♗c7 43.♗×a4 ♗d8 is more tenacious. 43.♖c2! ♖g8 43...♖g7 44.♖c6 ♖d7 45.♗e5 a5 46.d6 ♗e8 47.♗×a5+-; 43...♗×d5? 44.♗×f7+ ♖h6 45.♖×d5 ♖×d5 46.♖c6 ♖d6 47.♗f4+- 44.♖c6 ♗e8 45.♗×a4 ♖×c6 46.d×c6 ♗c7 47.♗b4 ♖g7 48.♗f4 ♗e7 49.♗d4+ ♖g8 50.♖f1 1-0 and Black resigned. One possible finish is 50...♗e6 51.♗e5 ♗c7 52.♗×c7 ♗×c7 53.♖e2 ♖f8 54.♖e3 ♖e7 55.♖e2 ♖d6 56.♖c4 f6 57.♖f7+- . One point for 39.a4.

T04.02: **27.♗f4!** 27.♗d4 ♖fc8 28.♗h4 ♗d8 29.♗f6 ♗×f6 30.e×f6 is also strong and gets 1 point, but in the game White's queen gives him valuable additional attacking potential, so it gets 2 points. However, not 27.♗f4?! ♗e7 or 27.♗h4?! ♗d8. **27...d4** 28.♗h5

♖h8 29.♗f6 ♗c7 30.♖fe1! White keeps his attacking potential. There is no need to enter the rook endgame after 30.♖×d4?! ♗×e5 31.♗×e5 ♖×e5 32.♖fd1 ♖c5 33.♗d7 ♖×d7 34.♖×d7 but White wins here in the long run as well of course. **30...♖d8** 30...♖c2 31.♗f4 ♗e7 32.♖×d4 ♖×a2 33.♖ed1 ♖×b3 34.♖d7 ♗e6 35.♗b4+- **31.♗f4 d3?** runs into a mighty blow. But 31...♖c6 32.♖×d4 ♖×d4 33.♗×d4 ♖c1 34.♖d1 also loses. **32.♗d5** 1-0

T04.03: **17.♗b1! ♖a5** 17...♗d8 18.♗×b5 ♗e6 19.♖e5y **18.♗b3!** This exchange of queens opens the gates as c7 cannot be defended. **18...♗×b3** 19.c×b3 ♖d7 20.♖×c7 ♖a6 21.d4 ♖f7 22.d5 ♗e7 23.d6 ♗c6 24.♖f1 ♖a3 25.♖×b5 ♖fa8 26.♖e2 ♖f6 27.♖a4 b5 28.♖×b5 ♗d4 29.c×d4 ♖×b5 30.♖e5 ♖×b3 31.♖f1 ♖×f1 32.a×b3 ♖a1 33.♖f2 ♖d1 34.d7 ♖×d4 35.d8♗+ ♖×d8 36.♖×d8+ ♖×e5 37.♖×f1 ♖d4 38.b4 1-0 Two points for 17.♗b1.

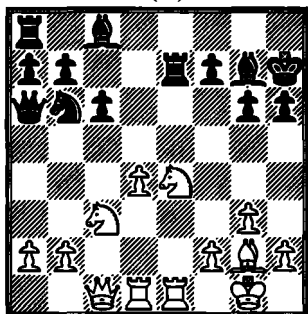
T04.04: **17.♗h4 ♖f7** 18.♖d1! Piket's point, which wins an exchange and with it the game: **18...♗f8** 19.♖h5 ♖f6 20.♗h3 ♖h6 21.f4 ♖×h5?! 21...♖f6 22.♖×h6 ♗×h6 23.f×e5 ♖×e5 24.♖ad1 ♖f8 offers more resistance. **22.♗×h5 ♗g6?!** 22...e4 keeps the position more closed so that White's rooks cannot enter quickly. **23.♖ae1 ♖e8** 23...e4 24.♗×e4 f×e4 25.f5 ♖×f5 26.g4+- **24.f×e5 ♖×e5** 25.♗e2 ♖×b2 26.♗f4 ♗×f4 27.♖×f4 ♖e5 28.♗h4 b5?! 29.a×b6 c×b6 30.♖h1 a5 31.♗f2 a4 32.♖×e5+

Solutions: Tests

dxe5 33. ♖xb6 f4 34. c5 a3
35. ♖b4 a2 36. ♖b2 ♖f6 37. ♖xa2
♙b5 38. ♖f2 1-0 Two points for
 17. ♖g4 ♖f7 18. ♙d1.

T04.05: 39... a5! Putting White in
 deadly *zugzwang* **40. ♙b3 40. ♙d3**
♖h1+ 41. ♖g2 ♖d1+ 42. ♖e2
♖xa4+ 40... ♖h1+ 41. ♖g2 ♖e1
0-1 Two points for 39... a5.

T04.06: 20. ♙xf6! ♙xf6 21. ♖dxe4
♙g7 22. ♖fe1± (D)



Black faces a difficult choice now:
22... ♙e6?! 22... ♖a5!? **23. d5 ♖d7**
24. ♖f4 ♖xd5 25. ♖xd5 cxd5 26. ♖d6
d4 (26... ♖c7 27. ♖xd5 ♙xb2 28. h4)
27. ♖xf7 ♖f5 28. ♖xf5 gxf5 29. ♖e5
 exchanges more attacking potential.
 But White's initiative continues of
 course. **23. ♖c5 ♖a5 24. ♖xe6** The
zwischenzug **24. a3!?** is more precise,
 e.g., **24... ♖c8 (24... ♖c4 25. ♙h3 ♖ae8**
26. ♙xe6 fxe6 27. ♖3e4) 25. ♖xe6
♖xe6 26. ♖xe6 fxe6 27. ♖f4 ♖d8
28. ♖e4 ♖e7 29. ♖g4 and White's
 initiative is even slightly stronger than
 in the game. **24... ♖xe6 25. ♖xe6**
fxe6 26. ♖c2 "Again, that aspect of
 the initiative based solely upon
 superior mobilization and development
 will ultimately be neutralized. However
 white has two permanent gains: a
 chronically weak g6-pawn to target,
 and the opposite-color bishops which

guarantee that its successful defense
 is out of the question" (Wells in CBM
 79). **26... ♖d8 26... ♖f8 27. h4 ♖f5**
28. ♖e2± 27. ♖e2 e5 28. ♙e4 ♖d6
29. h4 h5?! 30. dxe5 ♖xd1+
31. ♖xd1 ♖xe5 32. ♖d3 g6 finally
 falls. **32... ♖h6 33. ♙xg6 ♖xb2?!**
33... ♖b5?! 34. ♖e3+ ♖xg6 35. ♖f4+
♖h7 36. ♖e4+ ♖g8 37. ♖e6+ ♖h7
38. ♖g6+ ♖h8 39. ♖e6 ♖xb2
40. ♖e8+ ♖h7 41. ♖xh5+ ♖g8
42. ♖e8+ ♖h7 43. ♖g5+ ♖h6 44. ♖e4
♖h5 45. ♖f3+ ♖h6 46. ♖f5+-;
33... ♖d5 34. ♙f7 ♖e7 35. ♙b3+-
34. ♙xh5 ♖f6 35. ♙f3 35. g4+-
35... ♖a1+ 36. ♖g2 ♙e5?!
37. ♙h5! ♖g7 37... ♖xh5 38. ♖h7+
♖g4 39. ♖g6* 38. ♖g6+ ♖h8
39. ♖e8+ ♖g7 40. ♖f7+ ♖h8
41. ♙g6 1-0 Two points for 20. ♙xf6.

T04.07: 19. f4!! exf4? 19... ♖h4?
20. ♙d3+-; 19... ♖d8! is relatively
 best, but White keeps a strong initiative
 after **20. ♖d3 (20. fxe5 ♙e6 21. ♖d3**
♖xc3 22. ♖f6+ ♖g7 23. ♖xh5+ ♖g8
24. ♖xc3 ♖c8) 20... ♙f5 (20... ♖d6
21. fxe5 ♖xc4 22. ♖f6+ ♖g7 23. ♖xc4
♙e6 24. ♖f4) 21. fxe5 ♖d6 22. ♖e7+
(22. ♖g3 h4 23. ♖e7+ ♖xe7 24. exd6
♖d7 25. ♖f4 h3 26. ♖d4) 22... ♖xe7
23. exd6 ♖f6 24. ♖d2 20. ♖d4! ♖e8
21. ♙d3 ♙h3 22. ♙xe4 ♖ad8
23. ♖h1 ♙g4 24. ♖f6+ ♖h8
25. ♙d5 ♖e5 26. ♖ae1 f3 27. ♖xe5
1-0 Two points for 19. f4!!.

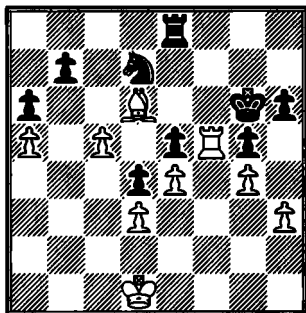
T04.08: In endings with rook and
 knight versus rook and bishop the
 knight often wants to have full control
 to compensate for its relative slow
 maneuvering abilities. Another
 important factor is the strength of the
 bishop. If it is passive and the other
 color complex weak, then the knight

often has good winning chances: **30...♖h7!** Kramnik's king starts its long march. **31.♕f2 ♖g6 32.♞c2?** **32.♕f3 ♞a3 33.h3** was a better way to implement Nakamura's defensive concept. But Black should win in the long run after **33...♜xc3 34.♞b3 ♞xb3 35.axb3 ♝d5+-**. **32...♞a3! 33.h3 33.c4 ♝b4 34.♞e2 (34.♞d2 ♕f5+-)** **34...♕f5 35.h3 ♝d3+ 36.♖g2 h4 37.g4+ ♖g6 38.♞e3 ♞c3 39.♕f3 ♝b4 40.♕f2 ♝c2+-**; After the passive **33.♕e2 ♕f5 34.♕d2 ♖g4 35.♕c1 b5 36.♕b2 ♞a4 37.♕b3 a6 38.a3 g6 39.♞f2 ♖h3 40.♞d2** Black undermines the structure with **40...h4+-**; **33.♕f3 ♝b4 34.♞c1 ♝c6 35.♕e4 ♞xa2 36.h3 ♞h2 37.♕f3 ♞b2 38.g4 ♞h2 39.♖g3 ♞d2 40.♞e3 h4+ 41.♕xh4 ♞d3 42.♞f2 ♞f3 43.♞g3 b5+-**. **33...b5 34.♞b2** After **34.♞c5 ♞xc3 35.♞xc3 ♝xc3 36.♞xa7 ♝xa2 37.g4 b4 38.♕e3 ♝c3 39.♕d3 ♝d5 40.♕e4** Black opens the gates with **40...♖h7 41.♞c5 g5 42.fxg5 hxg4 43.hxg4 ♖g6+-**. **34...a6!** Kramnik calmly keeps control. **34...♝xc3?** **35.♞xc3 ♞xc3 36.♞xb5 ♞c2+ 37.♕f3 ♞xa2 38.g4** would be too hasty in view of the large drawish tendency of rook endings. **35.♞c2 35.♕f3 b4+-** **35...♕f5** Finally the king marches on. **36.♕f3 b4 37.g4+ hxg4+ 38.hxg4+ ♖g6 39.♕e4 bxc3 40.♞h2 40.♞e3 ♞a4+ 41.♕f3 ♞b4 42.♞c1 ♞d4 43.a3 f6** opens a second front to penetrate with the king to the heart of White's position. **44.exf6 ♕xf6 45.♕f2 e5 46.fxe5+ ♕xe5 47.♕f3 ♞d3+ 48.♕e2 ♕e4+-** **40...♞a4 41.♞f2 a5 42.♕d3 c2!?** **43.f5+ 43.♞xc2? ♝b4+-** **43...♖g5 44.♞b2 ♝b4+ 45.♕c3 ♞xa2 46.♞f1 ♖xg4 47.fxe6 fxe6 0-1** One point for **30...♖h7**.

Test 5

T05.01: 29.f4? This slow move allows Black to organize his defense. White should use the moment to profit from his initiative with **29.♞d5! ♞c6 (29...a3 30.♞xa3 ♞a4 31.♞d8 f6 32.b3 ♞b5 33.♞c5 ♞xa3 34.♞xb5 ♕f7 35.♞xe8 ♖xe8 36.♞xb7+-)** **30.♞d8 ♞a8 31.♞cd3 b5 32.♞3d6 ♞b7 33.f3 ♖h7 34.♞b6+-** (Krasenkow in CBM 127). **29...f6 30.♕f2 ♕f7 31.g4 ♞c6 32.♞e3 ♞b6 33.g5?! ♞b5 34.♞g3 hxg5 35.hxg5 fxg5 36.fxg5 ♞f5+ 37.♕e3 ♖g6 38.♞d6+ ♖h5 39.♞d8 ♞e5+ 40.♕d2 ♖g6 41.♞c3 ♞8xe7 42.♞xe7 ♞xe7 43.♞c5 ♞e4 44.♞d6+ ♖h5 45.g6+ ½-½** Three points for **29.♞d5**.

T05.02: 42.♞d6! Against **42.♞f5?** Black can defend with **42...♞e8 43.♞d6 b6 44.a5 ♞e6 45.♞c7 bxa5 46.♞xa5 ♞c6** with drawing chances. **42...♞c8 42...b6 43.a5 bxa5 44.♞f5 ♞e8 45.c5y; 42...♞e8 43.c5± 43.♞f5 ♞e8 44.a5 ♞e6 45.c5 ♞e8 46.♕d1 h6 (D)**



47.♕d2! Berg uses "do not rush" and puts Black in *zugzwang*. The direct **47.♕c2?** runs into **47...♞c8=**. **47...♞d8 47...♞e6 48.♕c2 ♞e8 49.♖h3+-** (Berg in CBM 122 Extra). **48.♞xe5 ♝xc5 49.♞f6+ ♖h7**

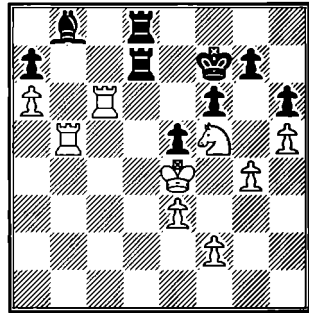
50. Bf7+ Qg8 51. Bg7+ Vf8
 52. Bh7 Qe8 53. Bxh6 Vf7
 54. Bf6+ Qe8 55. Bh6 Vf7
 56. Bf6+ Qe8 57. Bg6 Vf7
 58. Bxg5 Qb3+ 59. Qc2 Qxa5
 60. Qxd4 1-0 Two points for
 42. Qd6 .

T05.03: 38. Qf4! and Black's position will crumble under the pressure soon. 38. Qxd4? ! allows 38... Qxg6 and Black can simplify and fight on as his bishop increases in strength, e.g., 39. Qxd5 (39. Qb6 Qf5 40. Qd7 Qc3 41. Be3 Qg7 42. Qxe6+ Qxe6 43. Bxe6 Bxa4) 39... exd5 40. Qxg6 Bxa4 41. Qf4 Qf7 and White is clearly better in both cases but the game continuation is much stronger. **38... Qf5** 39. Qed3 39. Qxd5! exd5 40. Qxd5+ Qg7 41. Qxb7+ Qe7 42. Qc6+- ; 39. Qxg4 hxg4 40. Bxe6 Qf7 41. Qxg4+ Qg7 42. Be5 Bf8 43. Bxd5 is also strong. **39... Qf7** After 39... Qd4 White can return to 40. Qe5 Qf5 41. Qxd5 winning. **40. Bxe6 Qd4** 41. Qe5! Qxe5 42. Bxe5 Qf5 43. Bxd5 Be8 44. Bd8 Qg7 45. Bd5 Be1 46. Qxh5+ Qh7 47. Qd3 1-0 Two points for 38. Qf4 .

T05.04: 23. Qh1! 23. Bae1 to bring the inactive rook directly into play is also good and gets 1 point. **23... Qh5** 24. Bf2 a5 24... Bf7 25. Qxf6 Bxf6 26. Bg1 Baf8 (26... Qh8 27. Qh4 Bg8 28. Bf4+-) 27. Bg5 Qd1 28. Bfg2 g6 29. Qg1+- **25. Bg1 Qh8** 26. Bxg7! 1-0 and Black resigned in view of 26... Qxg7 27. Bg2+ Qg6 28. fxg6 h6 29. Qe5 Bae8 30. Qxf6+ Nxf6 31. Qc7+ Qg8 32. Qh7+ Vf8 33. Qh7+ Qe7 34. g8Q+- . Three points for 23. Qh1 .

T05.05: 26. Qb5! Bxd1+? 26... Qd7 27. Qd6 Bb8 28. e5 Qxb5 29. axb5 Qd5 30. Qd4 Bab7 31. Qc6 Bc8 32. Qxa5= **27. Bxd1 Qxb5** 27... Qe8? 28. Bd8 Qf8 29. e5 Qd7 (29... Qe7? 30. exf6+ Qxd8 31. fxg7+-) 30. Bc8 Qe7 31. Qd4+- **28. axb5 Qf8** 28... Bd7 29. Bc1 Qf8 30. Qxa5+- **29. Qc5 Ba8** 29... Bc7 30. b6 Bxc5 31. b7 Bb5 32. Bd8+ Qe7 33. b8Q Bxb8 34. Bxb8+- **30. b6 Qe7** 31. b7 Bb8 32. e5 Qd5 **33. Ba1 Qd8** 34. Bxa5 1-0 One point for 26. Qb5 .

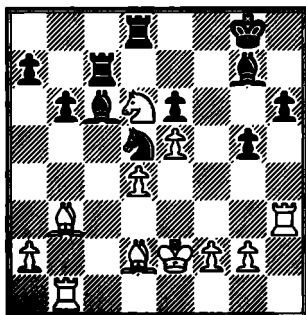
T05.06: 42. a4! 42. Qf5? allows the defense 42... Ba8 43. a4 a5 44. Qe4 Qb4 . **42... Qd6** 43. Qf5 Qb8 44. a5 Qc7 45. Qg3 45. Qe4!? **45... Qd6** 45... Be7 46. Qe4 Bd1 47. Qf5 Bed7 48. Ba6 Qd8 49. Bb8 Qe7 50. Ba8 Qc5 51. Bc6 Qe7 52. Bac8 Qd8 53. a6 Ba1 54. Bb8 Qe8 55. Bb7+- **46. Qe4 Qc7** 47. Qf5 Qb8 48. a6 (D)



The typical a-pawn advance has given White a strong outpost square on b7 that decides the day. **48... Qe8** 49. Bb2 Qd6 50. Bb7 Qf8 51. Bcc7 Bxc7 52. Bxc7 Bd7 **53. Bxd7** 53. Nf7 wins immediately and crowns the strategy begun with **42. a4**. **53... Qxd7** 54. Qd5 Qc7 **55. Qe6** Qb6 56. Qf7 Qc5 **57. Qxg7** Qxg6 58. Qxh6 Qb5

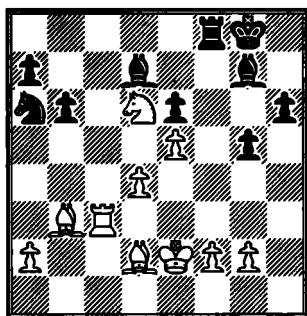
59.♖f5 a5 60.h6 a4 61.h7 1-0 1 point for 42.a4.

T05.07: 20.♖g5! This improves the knight and forces Giri to weaken his position. 20...h6 20...h5 21.f3 ♖c7 22.♜f2 ♜fc8 23.♜e4± 21.♜e4 g5 22.♜d6 ♖c7 23.♜e2 ♜d8 24.♜h3 ♜c6 (D)



25.♜bh1! ♜f8 25...♜d7 26.♜xh6! ♜xh6 27.♜xh6 ♜f4+ 28.♜xf4 gxf4 29.♜xe6+ ♜xe6 30.♜g6+ ♜h7 (30...♜g7 31.♜xe6 ♜xg2 32.♜f3 ♜h2 33.d5y) 31.♜xe6± and the connected passed pawns give White more than enough compensation for the exchange. 26.♜c1 This move gives White a clear advantage. But Kramnik even had a strong alternative: 26.♜xh6!? Black will lose another pawn and will not really be able to withstand the pressure of White's pawns and strong minor pieces: 26...♜xh6 27.♜xh6 ♜e7 (27...♜f4+ 28.♜xf4 gxf4 29.♜xe6+-) 28.♜xg5 ♜g7 29.f4!+- 26...♜d7 27.♜xc7 ♜xc7 28.♜c3 ♜a6 Giri must play this ugly move to stop the invasion of White's rook. 28...♜d5 29.♜xd5 exd5 30.♜c7+- (D)

29.g3! A strong, quiet move to prepare the advance of the f-pawn. Black is helpless. 29...♜d8 29...g4! 30.♜d1! ♜d8 31.♜f1 ♜f8 (31...h5 32.♜e2 ♜b4 33.♜h7 ♜h8 34.♜c7 ♜c6 35.♜d6+-)



32.♜e2 ♜b4 33.♜c7 ♜d5 34.♜xa7+- 30.f4 ♜f8 31.f5 ♜xd6 32.exd6 ♜b5+ 33.♜e3 ♜xd6 34.fxe6 ♜f8 35.♜c8+ ♜e7 36.d5 ♜d8 37.♜xd8 ♜xd8 38.d6 ♜c5 39.♜d5 ♜d7 40.exd7 ♜xd7 41.♜d4 ♜xd6 42.♜b4 a5 43.♜xc5+ bxc5+ 1-0 One point for 20.♜g5.

T05.08: 28...b5! 29.♜d2 29.♜f3 ♜xe1 30.♜xe1 ♜f8 31.♜e5 ♜d7 32.♜e2 ♜b6 also dominates the bishops. 29...♜xa3 30.♜b1 30.♜a1?! b4 31.cxb4 ♜b2-+ 30...a6 31.♜f3?! 31.♜a1! b4 32.cxb4 ♜b2 33.♜xa6 ♜xd4+ 34.♜h1 ♜xd5 35.♜a2 is more tenacious as the bishops have more open space to operate. 31...♜xd5 32.♜b3 ♜f8 33.♜a1 ♜b6 33...♜e6! 34.♜xa6 ♜c4 35.♜a2 b4! 36.♜c2 36.cxb4 ♜xd4 37.♜c3 ♜xf4-+ 36...♜xd2 37.♜xd2 bxc3 38.♜e2 ♜xe2 39.♜xe2 ♜xd4 39...♜c5!? 40.dxc5 c2-+ 40.♜xc3 ♜d6 41.♜b3 ♜xf4 42.♜b8+ ♜f8 43.♜c8 c5 0-1 One point for 28...b5.

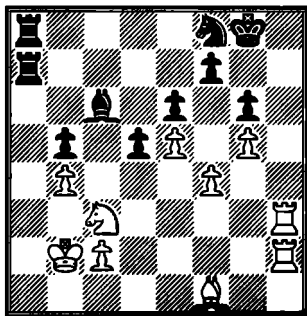
Test 6

T06.01: 20.♜b1! ♜b8 21.b3 c4 22.♜d4 ♜c5 23.♜c3 Both White's

Solutions: Tests

knights have managed to reach strong squares. **23...♖bc8?** Now Black's rook are standing on each other's toes. **23...♖b7** is called for, but White remains for choice after **24.f3**. **24.b4!** **♗5c7** **25.♗cb5 ♖×b4** **25...♖b7** **26.♗f5!** **♖×b4** **27.♗bd6 ♖×d6** **28.♗×d6±** (Mikhalevski in CBM 102). **26.♗×c7 ♗×c7** **27.♖b1 a5** **28.f3 ♗c8** **29.♗c2 ♖c3** **30.♖f1 a4** **31.♖b5 ♗e8** **32.♖db1 ♖h7** **33.♖×f6!** A strong exchange as Black does not want to trade rooks. **33...♗×f6** **34.♖b8 ♗e5** **35.♖1b7 ♖d2** **36.♖f2 c3** **37.♖d8!** Strong prophylaxis as the direct **37.♖×f7?** runs into **37...♖×e3+!** **38.♗×e3 d4** (Mikhalevski) when Black can continue to fight. **37...♖g6** **38.♖e2 h5** **39.g3 ♗e6** **40.♖d3 1-0** Two points for **20.♗b1**.

T06.02: 23.b4! White can also start with **23.h×g6 h×g6** but now he should fix the b5-weakness with **24.b4!**. **23...♗c7** **24.h×g6 h×g6** **25.♖d2** Now van den Doel turns his attention to the kingside. **25...a×b4** **26.a×b4 ♗a7** **27.♖b2 ♖ba8** **28.♖dh2 ♗f8 (D)**



29.♖d3! White does not hurry. The direct **29.♖×b5?** runs into **29...♖×b5** **30.♗×b5 ♖b7=**. From now on both players were most probably in time trouble: **29...d4?** **29...♖g7** **30.f×c2+**

30.♗e2? **30.♗×b5 ♖b7** (**30...♖×b5?** **31.♖×b5 ♖b7** **32.♖c6 ♖×b4+** **33.♖b3 ♖×b3+** **34.c×b3 ♗c8** **35.♖a4+-**) **31.♗×d4 ♖×b4+** **32.♖c3 ♖b6** **33.♖d2±** **30...♖a2+?** **30...♖d7** **31.♗g3 ♖da7** **32.♖c1 ♗c7** is much more tenacious. **31.♖c1 ♖d8** **32.♗g3?** **32.♖h8+** **♖g7** **33.♖2h7+** **♗h7** **34.♖×d8+-** **32...♖a3?** The prophylactic **32...♖g7** was called for. **33.♖h8+** **♖g7** **34.♖2h7+** **♗h7** **35.♖×d8 ♖a1+** **36.♖b2 ♖a4** **37.♖×d4 ♗f8** **38.♗e4 ♖a8** **39.♖d6 ♖e8** **40.♗f6 1-0** Two points for **23.b4**.

T06.03: 25.h4! A typical advance to provoke weaknesses on Black's kingside or to get another attacker in position near Black's king. **25...♗c5** **25...♖a8** **26.♖da1 ♖×a7** **27.♖×a7 ♗c5** **28.♗c7+-;** **25...h5** **26.♖da1 ♖e7** **27.♖h3 ♗d4** **28.♖f1±** **26.h5** **26.♖f3!** is even stronger **26...♖e7** **27.♖f1 h5** **28.♖da1 ♖b8** **29.♗×e7 ♖×e7** **30.♖h3±** **26...♖b8** **27.♖da1 ♖g5** **28.h×g6 h×g6** **29.♗a6!** **♗×a6** **30.♖×d7 ♗c5** **31.♖da7 ♖ed8** **32.♖h3 ♖g8** **33.♖f3 ♖b7** **34.♖×b7 ♗×b7** **35.♖a7 ♖b8** **36.♗f6+** **♖g7** **37.♗d7 ♖d8** **38.b4!** **♖e7** **39.♖d3 1-0** Two points for **25.h4**.

T06.04: 29.b4! Van Wely grabs space and opens inroads. **29...a×b4** **29...a4** **30.b5 ♗e5** **31.♖d1 h5** **32.♖f2 ♗f6** **33.♖b4+** **♖e8** **34.♖d6 ♗fd7** **35.♖d4±** **30.♖×b4+** **♖f6?!** **30...♖d8** **31.♗g4 h5** **32.♗h6 f6** **33.♗f7+** **♖c7** **34.♖b5±** **31.♖b5 ♗b8** **31...♗c5** **32.♗c4±** **32.♗c4 ♖a6** **33.♗×b6 ♖d8** **33...♖×b5** **34.f×c4** **♖×f1** **35.♖×f1 ♗c6** **36.♖×f1+-** **34.a4 ♗c7** **35.♖c3+**

e5 36. ♖b1 ♗×b5 37. a×b5 ♗d3
38. ♗a5 h5 39. ♖c1 ♗×b5
40. ♗d5+ ♖g7?! 41. ♖b1 1-0 Two
points for 29. b4.

T06.05: 14. ♗d2! Volokitin plays
according to the principle of two
weaknesses. 14... f5?! 14... c4
15. d×c4 ♗×d2 16. ♗×d2 was the lesser evil.
15. ♗a5 c4 16. d×c4 ♗×c4?! 16... 0-
0 17. ♗c5± 17. ♖fd1 ♗e7 18. ♗c7
♗b8? 18... ♗e6 19. ♗c5 ♗×c5
20. ♗×c6+ ♖f7 21. ♗×c5y 19. ♗×e7+
♖×e7 20. ♗h4 1-0 Two points for
14. ♗d2.

T06.06: 20. ♗a4! 20. ♗d6 ♗f8
21. ♗e4 ♗g7 22. ♗a4 is also strong and
gets 2 points as well. 20... ♗de7
21. ♗d6 and the threat ♗b5 overloads
Black's defense 21... a6 22. ♗e4
♗f5 23. ♖×d8+ ♖×d8 24. ♗×a6
♗d5 25. ♗d6 ♗f6 26. ♗e4 ♗f5
27. ♗ed2 ♗c8 28. ♗c7 ♖f8
29. ♗c4 ♗×c4 30. ♗×c4 ♗d3
31. ♗a4 ♗b4 32. ♗×b6 ♗c2
33. ♖c1 ♗e3 34. ♗d7 1-0 Two
points for 20. ♗a4.

T06.07: 44. c5! b×c5 44... ♖×c5
45. ♖×c5 b×c5 46. ♗a5 ♗d6 47. ♖c4
♖c6 48. ♗c3+- 45. ♖c4 ♖b6 and
now instead of the game continuation
46. ♗a5?! when White won much
later, the direct 46. ♖×c5! ♖b1
47. ♖a5 ♖g1 48. ♖d5 wins easily, e.g.,
48... ♖×g2 49. a5 ♖a2 50. ♖b3+- One
point for 44. c5.

T06.08: 25. ♗×d7! 25. ♖×d7? ♖×d7
26. ♗c8+ ♖h7 27. ♗×d7 ♗×c1+
28. ♖g2 ♗c7- 25... ♖×d7 26. ♖c8+
♖h7 27. ♖×d7 "Now it's all
over" (Giri in CBM 138). As opposite-
color bishops favor the attacker Black

has no chance to survive the coming
storm. 27... ♖g6 27... f5 28. ♖dd8 ♗f6
29. ♖e8 ♗e5 30. ♖b8+- 28. h4 ♗a3
29. ♖g2 ♖f6 30. ♖b7 ♗d6
31. ♖a8 b4 32. ♖aa7 ♗f8 33. h5
♗d6 34. ♖d7 ♗e5 35. ♖ab7 ♗e8
36. ♗d1 ♗c3 37. ♗b3 37. f4!?
37... ♗d2 38. ♖f1 ♗c3 39. ♖e2
♗g8 40. ♗c2 ♗e8 41. f4 g5
42. h×g6 f×g6 43. e4 g5 44. e5+
♗×e5 45. ♖f7+ ♗×f7 46. f×e5+
♖g7 47. ♖×f7+ ♖×f7 48. g4 ♖g7
49. ♖f3 ♖f7 50. ♗b3 ♖e7
51. ♖e4 ♖f7 52. ♗d1 ♖g7
53. ♖d4 ♖g6 54. ♖c4 h5
55. g×h5+ ♖f5 56. h6 ♖g6
57. ♗g4 1-0 One point for 25. ♗×d7.

Test 7

T07.01: 18. b3? White must prevent
the exchange of bishops with the
prophylactic 18. ♗e3! (Roiz in CBM
107) then he has a strategic initiative,
e.g., 18... c5 (18... ♖ac8 19. ♖ed1 c5
20. ♖g2 ♗d5 21. ♗×d5 ♖×d5 22. ♖ac1)
19. b3 ♗d5 20. ♗×d4 c×d4 21. ♖ad1.
18... ♗d5! 19. ♖ac1 ♗e6 Now
Black has taken the initiative.
20. ♗×d5 ♖×d5 21. ♗e3 g5!
21... ♖×e5? runs into 22. f4 ♖a5 23. f5
22. h4 h6 23. h×g5 h×g5 24. ♖g2?!
24. ♖ed1 offered better practical
chances according to Roiz.
24... ♖ad8! 25. ♖h1 ♖×e5 26. ♖h5
♖f8 27. ♖h7 ♖e7 28. ♖c4 ♖d7
29. ♖h8 c5 30. ♖c8?! b6 31. ♖a8
♖ed5 32. ♖c2 ♖d6 33. ♖c1 ♖c6
34. ♖h1 ♖b7 34... ♗d8!?
35. ♖hh8?? A blunder, but Black
should also win in the long run after
35. ♖g8 ♖a6 36. ♖f3 ♖b5 37. ♖c1
♖b4. 35... ♗d8 0-1 Three points for
18. ♗e3.

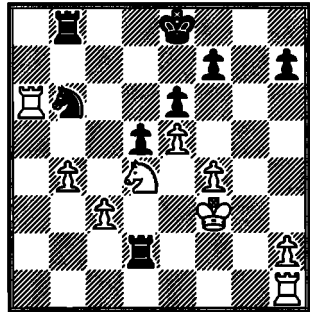
Solutions: Tests

T07.02: 24. ♖c5! Without queens, Black's many weak pawns will begin to tell. **24...h6 25. ♖xc7 ♖xc7 26. ♖d2 26. ♖d4!?** e5 **27. fxe5 ♖e6 28. ♖xb4 ♖xe5 29. ♖d2± 26...♖d7 27. ♖c4 ♖xd1+ 28. ♖xd1 a5!?** Objectively not best but highly creative defensive resource! **28...♖d5 29. ♖e3 g5 30. f5 ♖g7 31. ♖xd5 exd5 32. ♖xd5 e3 33. ♖c1 ♖c6 34. ♖d3±** (Finkel in CBM 105). **29. ♖d6?! 29. ♖xa5! ♖d5 30. a3 bxa3 31. c4 ♖a8 32. b4+- 29...♖f8 30. ♖c1 g5! 31. ♖e5 ♖g8 32. ♖d7? 32. ♖g6 ♖e8** (32...♖f6 33. f5±) **33. ♖d2± 32...gxf4 33. gxf4 ♖d5 34. ♖g6 ♖f6 35. ♖e7+ ♖f8 36. ♖xd5 exd5 37. ♖xd5 ♖xf4 38. ♖xa5 e3 39. ♖d1 ♖f2 40. ♖e5 ♖d2+ 41. ♖c1 ♖e2 42. ♖d1 ½-½** One point for 24. ♖c5.

T07.03: 24...♖f6! 24...c6? 25. ♖f3+-; 24...c5? 25. ♖xb5 ♖xb5 (25...♖c7 26. ♖f3±) **26. ♖xb5 d4 27. g3 ♖h5 28. c4 ♖f6 29. ♖a6 ♖g7 30. h4 ♖d7 31. f4± 25. g3 25. ♖xb5??** runs into **25...♖xd4+-; 25. ♖xb5 c5 26. ♖a3 ♖g7 27. h3 ♖h5** gives Black adequate compensation for the pawn as his bishop is stronger than the knight. **25...♖g7 26. h4 26. ♖xb5?** runs into **26...♖dh8 27. h4? ♖xh4** (Mikhalevski in CBM 105). Now Black played the slightly overambitious **26...♖hh8?!** got into trouble and lost later. After **26...c6**, he is just fine. Three points for **24...♖f6**.

T07.04: 20. ♖xc6! 20. b4? ♖b6 gives Black good counterplay. **20...♖xc6 21. ♖d4 ♖b7 22. b4!** Now White has everything under control. Black can hardly move a piece and has to deal with

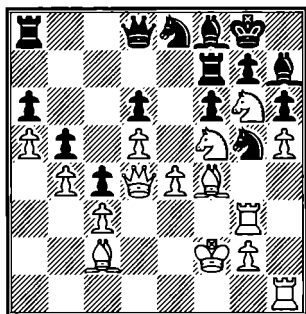
the simple threat **♖d1-a1** followed by **♖f1xa6**. So he tries to sharpen the play against White's center. The direct **22. ♖a1?** is met by **22...♖c5. 22...g5 22...♖b6? 23. ♖xe6y; 22...f6? 23. ♖xe6 fxe5 24. ♖xg7+ ♖f7 25. ♖f5± 23. ♖a1 gxf4 24. ♖xf4 ♖g8 25. g3 ♖g5? 25...♖a8 26. ♖e2 ♖g5 27. h4 ♖xf4+ 28. gxf4± 26. ♖xa6! ♖xa6 27. ♖xa6 ♖xf4+ 27...♖xe5 28. ♖xe6 fxe6** (28...♖c4+ 29. ♖d3 ♖xf4 30. ♖xf4+-) **29. ♖xe6+ ♖f7 30. ♖xe5+- 28. gxf4 ♖g2+ 29. ♖e3 ♖b6?! 30. ♖f3 ♖d2** (D)



Now comes the final attack: **31. ♖g1! ♖f8 32. f5! ♖d3+ 32...♖c8 33. ♖xe6+ fxe6 34. ♖xb6 ♖xc3+ 35. ♖g4 exf5+ 36. ♖xf5 ♖f2+ 37. ♖e6+- 33. ♖e2 ♖xc3 34. fxe6 ♖c4 34...fxe6 35. ♖a7 ♖e8 36. ♖gg7+- 35. ♖a7 1-0** One point for seeing until **22. b4**.

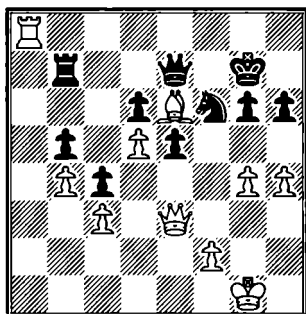
T07.05: 28. ♖f2! ♖e8 29. ♖h1 And Black is practically lost as he can do nothing while White can slowly but surely improve his position. The levers **g6** and **f5** would weaken Black too much. **29...♖h8 30. ♖h3 ♖d7 31. ♖df5 ♖f7 32. ♖d2 ♖e8 33. ♖ah1** White continues to improve his position. He has developed all his pieces and has an eye on **h6**. **33...♖b7 34. ♖h3 ♖d8 35. ♖g4 35. ♖e2!?** **34...♖h8 36. ♖h4 ♖h7 37. ♖e3**

41. ♖f7 38. ♖ef5 41. ♖g5 39. ♖g6+ ♔g8
40. ♖d4 ♖f7 (D)



41. ♖e1! White brings his king to the queenside. 41... ♖xg6 42. h×g6 ♖b7 43. ♖d1 ♖d7 44. ♖c1 ♖c7 45. ♖d2 ♖e7 45... ♖e8 46. ♖xg5! f×g5 47. ♖xg5 h×g5 (47... ♖e7 48. ♖gh5+-) 48. ♖xg5+- 46. ♖d1 ♖f8 47. ♖h5 ♖e8 48. ♖b2! White has all the time in the world. 48... ♖aa7 49. ♖d4 49. ♖xg5 f×g5 50. ♖f3 ♖f6 51. ♖xg5!+- h×g5? 52. ♖fh3 ♖h5 53. ♖xh5 ♖f6 54. ♖h8* 49... ♖c8 50. ♖xg5 f×g5 51. ♖xg5 Even 51. ♖xg5!+- is playable. 51... ♖f6 52. ♖h3 ♖d8 53. ♖e6 ♖e8 54. ♖f5 ♖x6 55. d×e6 ♖x6 56. g4 ♖e7 57. g5 ♖d7 58. ♖hf1 ♖xg6 59. e5 ♖e8 60. g×h6 ♖x6 61. h×g7 ♖xg7 62. ♖x6 1-0 One point for 28. ♖f2.

T07.06: 46. ♖e3! White not only stops ♖a7 but also keeps an eye on the kingside to be ready to open a second front there. 46. ♖a2?! is also better for White but not as good as the game as White's queen cannot help on the kingside now. 46. g4? rushes too much: 46... ♖a7 47. ♖b8 ♖a1+ 48. ♖g2 ♖a7 49. ♖xb5 ♖e4 50. ♖e3 ♖x3 51. f×e3 ♖a2+=. 46... ♖b7 47. ♖g2?! The immediate 47. g4!? would be even more precise: 47... h6 (47... ♖e8 48. g5 ♖f8 49. f4 e×f4 50. ♖cl4+-) 48. h4! . (D)

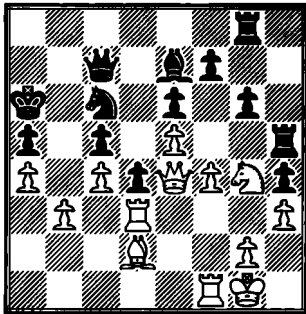


After Black has weakened the g6-square by h6 White can try to invade with his queen via g6, e.g., 48... ♖c7 (48... ♖e8 49. h5! g×h5 50. g×h5 ♖f8 [50... ♖f6 51. ♖g3+-] 51. ♖e4+-) 49. h5 g5 (49... g×h5 50. g×h5 ♖e8 [50... ♖xh5? 51. ♖g8+ ♖h7 52. ♖e4*] 51. ♖g3+ ♖g5 52. ♖xg5+ h×g5 53. ♖x6+-) 50. f3! ♖b7 51. ♖f2 ♖c7 52. ♖c2+-. 47... ♖c7 48. h4 ♖b8 49. ♖a7 ♖b7 50. ♖a6 ♖e7 50... ♖b8 51. f4 e×f4 52. ♖x4 ♖b6 53. ♖xb6 ♖xb6 54. g4 ♖a7 55. g5 ♖e8 56. ♖h3+- 51. ♖a8 ♖c7?! 51... h5 52. ♖g5 ♖a7 53. ♖b8 ♖b7 54. ♖c8 ♖h7 55. ♖a8 ♖g7 56. g4 ♖a7 57. ♖b8 ♖b7 58. ♖xb7 ♖xb7 59. g×h5 ♖xh5 60. ♖d8+- 52. h5 52. f4!? e×f4 53. ♖d4 ♖b8 54. ♖xb8 ♖xb8 55. g4+- 52... ♖b8 52... h6 53. h×g6 ♖xg6 54. g4 ♖b8 55. ♖a1 ♖b6 56. ♖f5+ ♖g7 57. ♖a7+- 53. h6+ ♖h8 54. ♖f3 1-0 One point for 46. ♖e3.

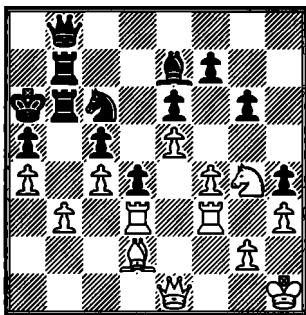
T07.07: 27... ♖b8! Polgar introduces a deep plan. First she repositions her knight to c6. The final aim is to destroy White's center f4-e5 with the lever g6-g5. To achieve this she brings her king to the queenside and her major pieces to the b-file. 28. ♖f2 ♖c6 29. ♖e4 ♖h5 30. ♖f3 ♖g8 31. ♖bf1 ♖f8! Judit starts the second part of her plan. She brings the king to a6 to defend the

Solutions: Tests

weak a5-pawn and to open the kingside later. 32. ♖e1 ♜f5 33. ♖e2 ♜h5 34. ♖e1 ♜e8 35. ♘f2 ♜d7 36. ♘g4 ♜c8 37. ♖e4 White can hardly defend his position. Maybe bringing his king to a2 was an idea. 37... ♜b7 38. ♜d3 ♜a6 (D)

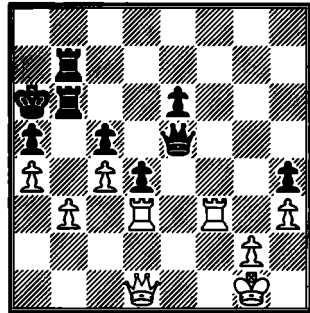


The second part is completed. In the next step White's major pieces must be tied to the defense of the b3-pawn. 39. ♜df3 ♜b8 40. ♜d3 ♜hh8 41. ♖e2 ♜b7 42. ♜ff3 ♜hb8 43. ♖e1 ♜b6 44. ♜h1 ♖c8 45. ♖e2 ♜8b7 46. ♖e1 ♖b8 (D)

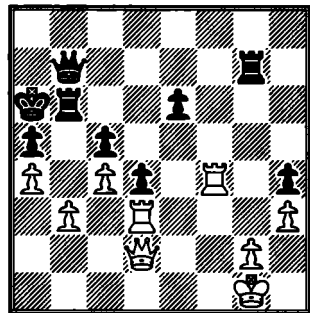


The third part of the plan is completed. Especially remarkable is the position of Black's queen. It strengthens the pressure against b3 but also has a watchful eye in the direction of the center. Now Black only has to achieve the lever g6-g5 and White will not be able to hold the center. 47. ♖d1 ♜d8 48. ♜g1 g5! 49. ♘h6 ♜xf4 50. ♜xf4 ♜c7! 51. ♘xf7 ♘e5

52. ♜xe5 ♜xe5 53. ♘xe5 ♖xe5 (D)



Judit has achieved quite a lot and has practical chances, but objectively it seems that White can still defend 54. ♜f8 ♖e4 55. ♖d2 55. ♜df3= 55... ♜g7 56. ♜f4 ♖b7 (D)



57. ♜xh4? Missing the chance to blockade the pawns with 57. ♖e2 e5 58. ♜e4=. 57...e5 58. ♖e2 ♜bg6 59. ♜f3? 59. ♜d2 d3 60. ♖f2 ♜xg2+ 61. ♖xg2 ♜xg2+ 62. ♜xg2 e4 63. ♜h6+ ♜a7 64. ♜d6 ♖f7 65. ♜g3 ♖e7 66. ♜gg6 e3-+; 59. ♜g4 ♜xg4 60. ♜xg4 e4 61. ♜h3 ♖c6-+. 59...d3! 60. ♖f2 d2 0-1 One point for 27... ♜b8 and one for the plan to bring the king to the queenside.

T07.08: 31. ♘exd4 cxd4 32. bxa6 ♜a6 33. ♘xd4! ♜b7 33...exd4 34. e5 d3 35. ♜cc1 ♜b8 36. exf6 ♜xb4 37. ♜xcl3 34. ♘f5 ♜xe4 35. ♜xe4 ♘e4 36. ♜c4 ♘f6 37. a5 ♘e8 38. ♘xh6 d5 39. ♘xg4 f6 40. ♜c6

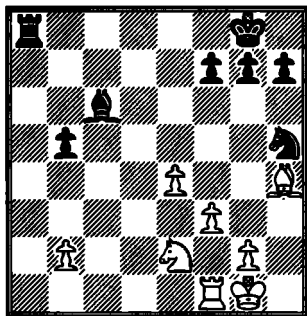
♖e7 41. ♘e3 d4 42. ♘f5+ ♖f7
43. a6 ♖g6 44. g4 ♘c7 45. b5
♘×b5 46. ♖b1 d3 47. ♖×b5 d2
48. ♘e3 d1♖+ 49. ♘×d1 ♖×d1+
50. ♖g2 ♖d4 51. ♖g3 ♖d3+ 52. f3
♖a3 53. h5+ 1-0 Two points for
calculating until 33. ♘×d4

Test 8

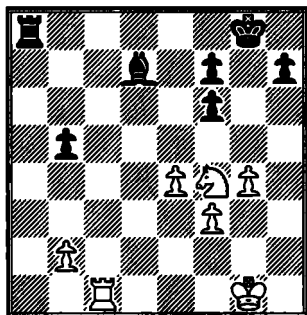
T08.01: 46. ♖f7! Dominating Black's knight. The greedy 46. ♖h7? lets the knight escape, 46... ♘f6=. 46... ♘h6 47. ♖×h7 ♖×h5 48. ♖c4 ♖d8 If Black tries to get rid of the pin by 48... ♖h2 with the idea ♘g4 White's bishop always demonstrates its superiority, e.g., 49. ♖d5 a5 (49... ♘g4 50. ♖×h2 ♘×h2 51. ♖d1 a5 52. ♖×e5 a4 53. f4 a3 54. ♖b3+-) 50. ♖d7+ ♖d8 (50... ♖b8 51. ♖e6 ♘g4 52. ♖×h2 ♘×h2 53. ♖×e5+-) 51. ♖d6 ♘g4 52. ♖×h2 ♘×h2 53. f4 ♘f3 54. f5 ♘g5 55. ♖c6 a4 56. ♖×e5 a3 57. ♖d5+- . 49. f3 ♖h2 50. ♖d5 a5 50... ♘g4?! is met by 51. ♖d7+ ♖c8 52. f×g4 ♖d2+ 53. ♖×e5 ♖×d7 54. ♖×d7+ ♖×d7 55. ♖d5+- 51. ♖e6 ♖c8 52. ♖g7 ♖h3 53. ♖g6 The rook ties Black down completely. 53... ♖c7 54. ♖e8 ♖d8 55. ♖c6 ♖c7 56. ♖d5 a4 56... ♖h5 57. ♖e7 ♖h3 58. ♖c6+ ♖b8 59. ♖d7 ♖a7 60. ♖c7 ♖×f3 61. ♖c5+- 57. ♖×e5 a3 58. ♖c6+ ♖d8 59. ♖a6 ♖e7 60. ♖a7+ ♖f8 61. ♖×a3 ♘g4+ 62. ♖f5 ♘h2 63. ♖f4 ♖e7 64. e5 ♖h4+ 65. ♖g3 ♖h5 66. f4 ♘f1+ 67. ♖g4 ♖h2 68. f5 ♖f2 69. f6+ ♖d8 70. ♖g5 1-0 Two points for 46. ♖f7.

T08.02: 26. ♖c7! 26. ♖d6?! ♖f6 (26... ♖d7? 27. ♖×d8 ♖×d8 28. ♖c7+-) 27. ♖d1 ♖fe8 28. ♖c5 h6y 26... ♖d7 26... ♖de8? 27. ♖d6 ♖f6 28. ♖c1+-

27. ♖×d8 ♖×c6 28. ♖×h4 ♖×a8 (D)



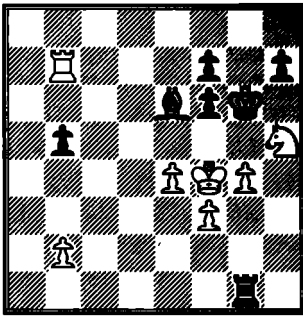
Jakovenko proceeds to dominate Black's pieces in an instructive way: 29. ♖c1 ♖d7 30. g4! ♘f6 31. ♖×f6 g×f6 32. ♘f4 (D)



White has reached a very good Andersson endgame (see 04.11). 32... ♖f8 33. ♘d5 ♖g7 34. ♖c7 ♖e6 35. ♘f4 ♖c4?! 35... ♖h6 36. ♖b7 ♖a1+ 37. ♖f2 ♖c4 38. ♖b8 f5 39. ♖b6+ ♖g7 40. g×f5+-; 35... ♖f8 36. ♖b7 ♖c4 37. ♘h5+- 36. ♘h5+! ♖g6 37. ♖f2! White's king joins the attacking forces. 37... ♖a1 37... ♖a2? 38. ♖c8! ♖×b2+ 39. ♖g3 ♖h6 40. ♖g8 f5 41. ♘f6 f×g4 42. f×g4 ♖b3+ 43. ♖f4+- 38. ♖g3 ♖g1+?! 38... ♖a8 39. ♖c6 h6 40. ♖×f6+ ♖h7 41. ♖b6+- 39. ♖f4 ♖e6 40. ♖b7 (D)

Black cannot defend both weaknesses, the b5-pawn and his king. 40... f5 40... ♖c1 41. ♖×h5 ♖c8 42. b4+- 41. e×f5+ ♖×f5 42. ♖×b5 1-0 and

Solutions: Tests

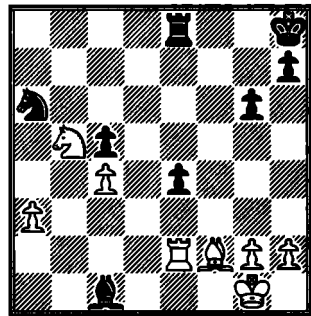


Black resigned in view of 42...♙e6 43.♙g5+ ♖h6 44.♗f6+- . Two points for 26.♙c7.

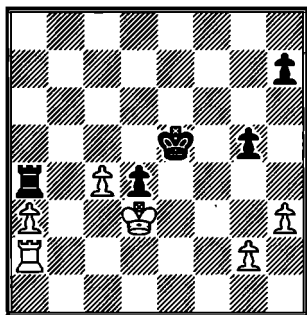
T08.03: 24. ♙f5! 24. ♙xc6? ♜xc6 25. ♞d7 ♞f8 26. ♞f5 ♞a6 27. e4 h6 28. ♞b5 ♞c8=; 24. ♙d5? ♗e5 can only be better for Black. 24... ♞c7 25. ♞d7! ♞cc8 25... ♞xd7? 26. ♙xd7+-; 25... ♞a7!? 26. ♞c1!± 26. ♞xf7! ♖xf7 27. ♙xc8+ ♖e7 28. ♙f5 White has a solid extra pawn and converted: 28... ♙g6 29. ♙e4 ♗a7 29... ♗e5 30. ♞c1± 30. ♙d3 ♗c6 31. ♞c1 ♗e5 32. ♙e4 ♖d6 33. ♞d1+ ♖c7 34. ♞d4 ♞d8 35. ♖f2 h6 36. ♙d5 ♙g5 37. ♞d2 ♞f8+ 38. ♖e2 ♞d8 39. e4 ♞f8 40. ♙e6 ♞f6 41. ♞c2+ ♖d8 42. ♙f5 ♞c6 43. ♞xc6 ♗xc6 44. ♖d3 ♖c7 45. ♖c4 ♖d6 46. ♖b5 h5 47. ♙g6 h4 48. ♙h5 ♗e5 49. ♖xa5 ♖c5 50. ♙e2 ♗d7 51. ♙b5 ♗e5 52. ♙e2 ♗d7 53. ♙f3 ♗e5 54. ♙h5 ♗d3 55. ♙e2 ♗e5 55... ♗e1 56. ♙f3 ♗d3 57. ♖a6 ♗e5 58. ♖b7 ♗d3 59. ♖c7 ♗e5 60. ♙g4 ♗d3 61. ♙f5 ♗e5 62. ♖d8 ♖d6 63. ♖e8+- 56. ♖a4 ♗d7 57. ♙g4 ♗e5 58. a3 bxa3 59. ♖xa3 ♖d4 60. b4 ♖xe4 61. b5?! 61. ♖a4 is superior. 61... ♖d5?! 61... ♗c4+ 62. ♖a4 ♖d4 63. ♙e6 ♗b6 64. ♖c2 ♖c5 65. ♖d4

♖xb5 66. ♖e4+- 62. ♖b4 ♖d6 63. ♙f3 ♖c7 64. ♖c5 ♗d3+ 65. ♖d4 ♗e1 66. ♙e4 ♖b6 67. ♖c4 1-0 Two points for 24. ♙f5.

T08.04: 25. ♖xb2! 25. ♖xa6? ♙d4!+-; 25. ♙xe4? ♖c3 26. ♙f2 ♙d4 27. ♙xd4+ ♖xd4+ 28. ♖h1 fxe4= 29. ♖xa6? ♖f2 30. ♞g1 e3 31. ♖a5 e2→ 25... ♙xb2 26. ♙xe4! Another important exchange. 26... fxe4 27. ♗b5 ♞e8 28. a3! ♞d8 29. ♙f2 ♞e8 30. ♞e2 ♙c1 (D)



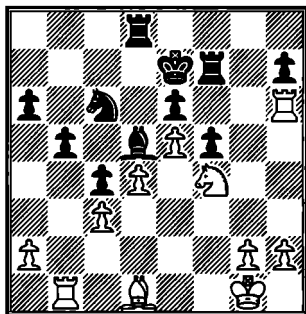
31. ♙e3! After the exchange of the bishops White can simply win the e4-pawn. 31... ♙xe3+ 32. ♞xe3 ♗b8 33. ♗c3 ♗c6 34. ♞xe4 ♞a8 35. ♗b5 ♗d4 36. ♞e7 36. ♗xd4 cxd4 37. ♞xd4 ♞xa3 38. ♖f2± 36... ♗c2 36... ♗b3!? 37. ♞a7 ♞xa7 38. ♗xa7 ♗a5 39. ♗b5 ♗xc4 40. a4± 37. ♞e2! ♗d4 38. ♗xd4! Now White can exchange and place his rook behind the passed pawn. 38... cxd4 39. ♞a2 ♞a4 40. ♖f2 ♖g7 40... ♞xc4 41. a4 ♞c6 (41... ♖g7 42. a5 ♖f6 43. a6 ♞c8 44. a7 ♞a8 45. ♖e2 ♖e5 46. ♖d3 ♖d5 47. ♞a5+ ♖c6 48. ♖xd4 ♖b7 49. g3 ♞d8+ [49... ♖b6 50. ♞a4 ♞d8+ (50... ♖b7 51. ♖e5 ♞e8+ 52. ♖f6 ♖a8 53. ♞h4+-) 51. ♖e5 ♞a8 52. ♖f6+-] 50. ♞d5 ♞h8 51. ♞d7+ ♖a8 52. ♖c5+-) 42. a5 ♞a6 43. ♖e2 ♖g7 44. ♖d4+- 41. ♖e2 ♖f6 42. ♖d3 ♖e5 43. h3 ♙g5 (D)



Now White wins by using the typical technique: 44. ♖a1 Black is in *zugzwang*, while White's rook just shuffles between a1 and a2. 44... h5 45. ♖a2 h4 46. ♖a1 ♖d6 47. ♖×d4 ♖c6 48. ♖a2 ♖a5 49. a4 g4 50. h×g4 ♖g5 51. a5 ♖×g4+ 52. ♖e5 ♖b7 53. a6+ ♖a7 54. c5 ♖g5+ 55. ♖f4 ♖×c5 56. ♖g4 ♖c4+ 57. ♖h3 ♖b4 58. ♖a5 ♖c4 59. ♖h5 ♖×a6 60. ♖×h4 ♖c3+ 61. g3 ♖b6 62. ♖d4 ♖c5 63. ♖d8 ♖a3 64. ♖h4 1-0 Two points for 25. ♖×b2.

T08.05: 37... ♖g4! After the exchange of the important defending knight, all Black's pieces will become active. The rook invades via b2 and the king advances to e5. 37... ♖b4?! is answered by 38. h3. 38. ♖×g4 ♖×g4 39. h3 39. ♖e1 ♖c8 40. h3 ♖f6 41. ♖h2 ♖e5 42. ♖d3 ♖b4 43. g4 ♖f4+ 39... ♖e6 40. g4 ♖b2 41. ♖e1 41. ♖a1 ♖d5 42. ♖a7+ ♖f6 43. ♖×h7 ♖b1+ 41... ♖d5 42. h4 ♖f6 43. ♖h2 43. ♖c1 ♖e5 44. g5 ♖f4+ 43... ♖×f2+ 44. ♖g3 e3 45. g5+ ♖g7 46. ♖d3 ♖g2+ 47. ♖f4 e2 48. ♖b1 h6 49. ♖b7+ ♖f8 50. ♖b8+ ♖e7 51. ♖b7+ ♖d8 52. ♖b8+ ♖c7 53. ♖b1 h5 54. ♖a6 ♖g4+ 55. ♖e5 0-1 Two points for 37... ♖g4.

T08.06: 24. ♖de1! The rook will be brought to h6 via e3 and h3 where it targets Black's vulnerable weaknesses. 24. g4? ♖g8 25. h3 ♖e7 26. ♖×d5+ ♖×d5 27. ♖f2 f×g4 28. h×g4 ♖×g4 29. ♖h1 ♖g7 exchanges too many pawns. 24... ♖e7 25. ♖e3 b5 26. ♖b1 a6 27. ♖h3 White plays on both wings which renders Black defenseless. 27... ♖f7 28. ♖h6 ♖c6 29. ♖d1! 1-0 (D)

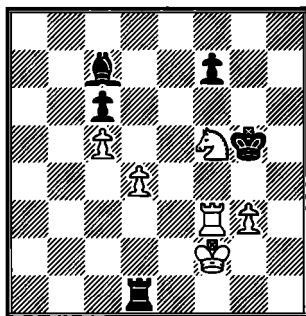


and Black resigned, which may seem premature at first sight but closer inspection reveals that Black cannot move a piece, e.g., 29... ♖g7 (29... ♖g8? 30. ♖×d5+ e×d5 31. ♖×c6+-; 29... b4? 30. ♖×d5+ ♖×d5 31. ♖f3 b×c3 32. ♖×d5 e×d5 33. ♖×c6+-) 30. a4! ♖a7 31. ♖f2 ♖d7 32. ♖f3 ♖×f3 33. ♖×e6+ ♖f7 34. ♖×f3+- . Two points for 24. ♖de1.

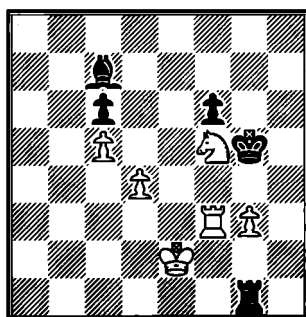
T08.07: 39. ♖f5! Without queens, White can play on without any risk. But as a result of the reduced material, Black still has some drawing chances. 39. ♖f1? ♖e1-; 39. ♖f5? ♖e1+ 40. ♖g2 h×g3 41. f×g3 ♖h5 42. ♖h4 ♖g5=. 39... ♖×f5 39... ♖g7? 40. ♖d7+- (Stohl in CBM 125); 39... f6!? 40. ♖×g5+ (40. ♖d7? ♖×e3 41. ♖c8+ ♖f7 42. ♖×c7+ ♖e7=-) 40... f×g5 41. g×h4 ♖×h4 42. ♖μ2± 40. ♖×f5 h×g3 41. f×μ3 ♖h7 42. ♖g2 ♖g6

Solutions: Tests

43. ♖h4+!? ♜g5 44. ♜f2 ♜e7
 44... ♜g4? 45. ♜xf7 ♜xg3 46. ♜g7+
 ♜xh4 47. ♜xg3 ♜e6 (47... ♜d8 48. ♜g6
 ♜xd4 49. ♜f3! ♜c4 50. ♜xc6+-, Stohl)
 48. ♜g7 ♜h5 49. ♜f3 ♜h6 50. ♜g2
 ♜h7 51. ♜f4 ♜e8 52. ♜b2 ♜e6 53. ♜b6
 ♜g7 54. d5 ♜f6+ 55. ♜e5+- 45. ♜f5
 ♜e1 45... ♜e4!? 46. ♜h3 ♜e6 47. ♜h4!
 ♜e3 48. ♜f5+ ♜h6 49. ♜f3 ♜xf3
 50. ♜xf3 ♜g6 (50... f5? 51. g4!+-)
 51. g4= (Stohl) 46. ♜f3 ♜d1?!
 47. ♜f2 (D)

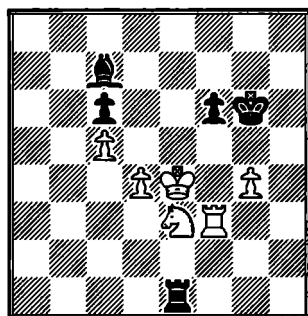


47... ♜f6? Black should stop White's
 plan prophylactically with 47... ♜a5!
 48. ♜e2 (48. ♜d6 ♜xd4 49. ♜xf7+ ♜h5
 50. ♜e5 ♜d5 51. ♜f5+ ♜h6) 48... ♜e1+
 49. ♜d3 ♜d8 with some drawing
 chances. 48. ♜e2 ♜g1 (D)



49. ♜d3? Here "do not rush" is not the
 right approach. White should seize the
 moment with 49. ♜e7! ♜xg3
 (49... ♜xg3 50. ♜xg3+ ♜xg3 51. ♜xg6
 ♜f5 52. ♜d3 ♜e6 53. ♜c4 f5 54. d5+
 ♜d7 55. ♜d4+-) 50. ♜xg6 f5 51. d5

♜f6 52. d6 ♜e6 53. ♜d3 ♜d7 54. ♜a7
 ♜e6 55. d7 ♜h4 56. ♜d6+ ♜f7
 57. ♜c6+- 49... ♜e1 50. ♜e3
 50. ♜e3? ♜xe3+ 51. ♜xe3 f5 52. ♜c2
 ♜g4 53. ♜b4 ♜xg3 54. ♜xc6 f4=
 50... ♜g6? Too passive. After 50... ♜g1
 it is not clear if White can win. 51. g4!
 ♜a1 52. ♜e4 ♜e1?! (D)



53. ♜f1! Very strong. Without rooks,
 White's task is easier. 53... ♜xf1 It is
 not really possible to avoid the
 exchange with 53... ♜e2 because of
 54. ♜a1 ♜h2 55. ♜f3 ♜d2 56. ♜f5 ♜b2
 57. ♜a7+- 54. ♜xf1 ♜f7 54... ♜g5
 55. ♜e3 ♜f4 56. ♜f3!? ♜h2 57. ♜f5
 ♜g1 58. ♜g3 ♜g6 59. ♜g2+- (Stohl).
 55. ♜f5 ♜a5 56. ♜e3 ♜d2
 57. ♜g2 ♜c3 58. ♜e4 ♜e6
 59. ♜f4+ ♜d7 60. d5 cxd5+
 61. ♜xd5 ♜d2 62. ♜e6 ♜c1
 63. ♜d4 ♜e3 63... ♜f4 64. c6+ ♜e7
 65. ♜f5+ ♜d8 66. ♜d6 ♜h2 67. ♜b5
 ♜e7 68. ♜e4 ♜e6 69. c7 ♜d7 70. ♜f5
 ♜e5 71. g5 ♜xc7 72. g6+- 64. c6+
 ♜c8 64... ♜d8 65. ♜b5 ♜e7 66. ♜d6
 ♜d8 67. ♜e4! ♜e7 68. ♜xf6+-
 (Stohl). 65. ♜b5 ♜f2 66. ♜e6 ♜h4
 67. c7 1-0 One point for 39. ♜f5.

T08.08: 27. ♜f2! Activating the last
 unit, which is very important in the
 endgame. 27. ♜c4? is met by 27... ♜b5.
 27... ♜b5 28. ♜2c4 ♜xd6
 29. ♜xd6 ♜f8 30. ♜c7 ♜a8

31.♖e3 ♘a6 32.♗d4 a4 33.♖c4
33.♖c8+ ♖e7 34.♖g8 g6 35.♖c5 b3
36.a3 ♘a5+ 37.♖c6 ♘a6+ (37...♗d5??
38.♗e8*) 38.♖c7 ♘a7+ 39.♖b6+-
33...b3 34.a3 ♘a5 35.♖c5 ♘a7
36.♖b5 ♖e2+ 37.♖b6 ♘a6+
38.♖b7 h6 39.♖b5 ♘a5 40.♖c7
1-0 40.♖b6 wins as well. One point
for 27.♖f2.

Test 9

T09.01: White will force the exchange
of queens when his monster f5-knight
will rule the board: 48.♖d6+ ♖h8
49.♖c8+ ♖h7 50.♖f5+ ♖xf5
51.♖xf5 ♖d2 52.♖g2 ♖b4
53.♖f2 ♖f8 Just waiting with
53...♖c5+ 54.♖e2 ♖g1 is also
insufficient, e.g., 55.♖d3 ♖f2 56.♖c4
♖c5 57.♖b5 ♖f2 58.♖d6 ♖g7
59.♖c4 ♖f6 60.♖xb6 ♖e5 61.♖xa5
♖f4 62.♖b5+- . 54.♖e3f6 55.♖e4
♖g8 56.♖d5 ♖f7 57.♖c6 ♖e6
58.♖xb6 ♖e5 59.♖xa5 ♖f4
60.♖b5 ♖xf3 61.a5 1-0 Two
points for 48.♖d6+.

T09.02: 29.g4! This is the right way
to exchange queens as White gains
time and will win a pawn more or less
by force. 29.♖c2?! ♘a2 30.♖b3 c5
31.d5 ♖c7 gives Black counterplay.
29...♖xf5 30.gxf5 ♖d8 31.♖e5
c5 32.♖d7 ♖b4? This leads to a lost
rook endgame. 32...♖c6 was the last
chance to fight. 33.dxc5 bxc5
34.♖xc5 ♖xc5 35.♖xc5 ♖b7
36.♖e5! f6 37.♖xf6+ gxf6
38.♖e8+ ♖g7 39.♖xd8 ♖h6
40.♖g8 ♖b5 41.e4 ♖b4 42.♖g4
♖h5 43.h3 h6 44.♖g2 ♖b6
45.♖g6 ♘a6 46.♖g3 ♖b6 47.f3
♘a6 48.♖g8 1-0 Two points for
29.g4.

T09.03: 20.♖b5! As the queens is the
main defender of Black's weakened
queenside, this hits his Achilles' Heel.
20...♖xd2 20...d5 21.exd5 exd5
22.♖f1 ♖xd2 23.♖xd2 a4 24.♖a5
♖d7 25.♖b6 ♖f8 26.♖a7 ♘a8
27.♖xc5 ♖xc5+ 28.♖xc5 ♖xa7
29.b4± 21.♖xd2 ♖h6? 21...a4
22.bxa4 ♖e8 was more tenacious.
22.♖h5! ♖xd2?! 22...♖g4 23.♖xh6
♖xh6 24.♖xd6 gxh5 25.♖xc8 ♖xc8
26.♖e2+- 23.♖xf6+ ♖g7
24.♖xd2 ♖xf6 25.♖xd6 ♖d7
25...♖c7 26.e5+ ♖e7 27.♖b5+-
26.♖b5 ♖xd6 27.♖xd6 ♖xe4
28.♖xc8 ♖xd6 29.♖c5 ♖d5
30.♖c6 ♖e5 31.♖xa5 ♖d4
32.♖xd5 exd5 33.♖f2 ♖b7
34.♘a7 ♖d6 35.♖e2 h5 36.♖d2
1-0 Two points for 20.♖b5.

T09.04: 24...♖d4! Black exchanges
White's main attacker and defender.
Then the chronic weaknesses on
White's queenside give Black a clear
plus. 24...♖f5? runs into 25.♖xf6
♖xe3 26.♖h5+ ♖f7 27.♖g7+ ♖e6
28.♖xb7 gxh5 29.♖xc6+ ♖e7
30.♖c5+ ♖f6 31.♖xe3 and White is
by no means worse. 25.♖xd4 ♖xd4
26.♖d6? White should stop the
coming fork prophylactically by
26.♖b2 or 26.♖c1 but Black strategic
initiative is obvious in both cases.
26...♖c2! 27.♖xe5 fxе5 28.♖c4
♖e6 29.♖b2 ♖xc4 30.♖xc2
♖xd3 31.♖d2 ♖f5 32.♖f1 ♖c8
33.♖e1 b5 34.♖d6? This allows a
direct breakthrough on the queenside.
34.♖f1 is necessary. 34...c5 35.bxc5
♖xc5 36.♖b6 and now instead of
36...♖c3? when the game was drawn
later, Black could have won by
36...♖c1+! 37.♖d2 ♖c2+ 38.♖e3
(38.♖e1 e4 39.♖xb5 e3+-)

Solutions: Tests

38...♖c3+ 39.♕d2 ♖d3+ 40.♗c1 ♖x3 41.♖xb5 ♖a1+ 42.♗d2 e4 43.♖a5 a3 44.♗c3 a2 45.♗b2 ♖b1+ 46.♗xa2 ♖g1-+. Two points for 24...♗d4.

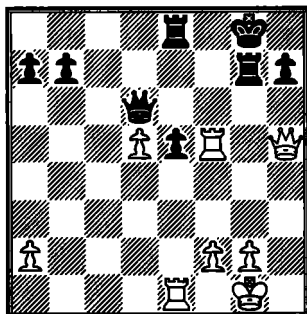
T09.05: 18...♖e8! Black wants to follow with f6, stopping White's kingside attack, while the static weaknesses remain. 19.♗h1 ♖e6 19...f6 20.e4 ♖e6 21.♗e3 ♖f7 22.♖g1 ♖d7 23.♖g2 ♖g6 24.♖ag1 ♖ad8 from Ibragimov-Alexandrov, Kherson 1991 is very similar to the game. 20.♖g1 f6 21.♖g3 ♖d7 22.♖ag1 ♖ad8 23.♖c1 ♖f5 24.e4 ♖g6 25.h4 ♖c7 26.♖f1 ♖e6 27.♖h3 ♖h5 28.♖hg3 ♗h8 29.♗e3 ♖d4 30.♖g2 ♖e8 31.♖h3 ♗a4! and the infiltration of the queen decides the issue: 32.♖f1 ♗d1 33.♖g2 ♗c2 34.f4 ♖e2 35.♖f1 ♖d1 0-1 Three points for 18...♖e8.

T09.06: 38...♗f3! 39.♖xf6!? 39.♖d4? runs into 39...♖xh4! 40.gxh4 ♗g4+ 41.♗h2 ♗xh4+ 42.♗g2 ♗g4+ 43.♗h2 ♗h5+ 44.♗g3 ♗g6+ 45.♗h2 ♖f3 46.♖g1 ♗h5+ 47.♗g3 ♗g4+ 48.♗h2 ♗h4*. 39...gxf6 40.♗d5 ♖d3? Allowing a direct perpetual. 40...♗g4 41.♗f7+ ♗g7 42.♗d5 ♗e7 should be winning for Black in the long run. 41.♗f7+ ♗h8 42.♗f8+ ♗h7 43.♗f7+ ♗h8 44.♖c1 ♖c2 45.♗f8+ ♗h7 46.♗f7+ ♗h8 47.♗f8+ ½-½ One point for 38...♗f3.

T09.07: 22...♖c1! Kramnik exchanges an important attacker first to win the resulting technical endgame. The greedy 22...♖xa3?? meets up with 23.♖f6 h5 24.♖e8+ ♗h7 25.♖hh*. 23.♖xc1 ♖xc1 24.♖f6 ♖hh

25.♖c4?! 25.♗f1 ♖xa3 26.♖e1 ♖c5 27.♖a1 is more tenacious, but Black should win in the long run. 25...♖xa3 26.♖d4 ♖c5! The resulting rook ending is an easy win as White's rook will be completely passive on a1. 27.♖xc5 dxc5 28.♖xc5 a3 29.♖c1 a2 0-1 One point for 22...♖c1.

09.08: 25.h4! The battering ram moves forward. 25...♖d7 25...♗f6? 26.♖e6 ♗f7 (26...♗xh4? 27.d6 ♖d7 28.♗d5 ♗f8 29.♗e5 ♗f7 30.♗b5+-) 27.h5 ♖d6 28.hxg6 hxg6 29.♗h6+- 26.h5 gxh5 27.♖xf5 e5 28.♗g5+ ♖g7 29.♗xh5 (D)

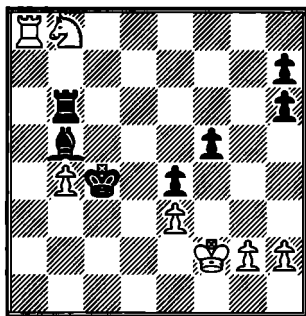


29...♖ge7? Black must try to exchange queens to reduce the pressure: 29...♗g6! 30.♗f3 e4 (30...♗g4 runs into 31.♖xe5!+-) 31.♗h3 (Krasenkow in CBM 141) 31...♗d6 32.♖e3± 30.♗f3 ♖g7 31.♖f6 ♗d8 32.d6 e4 33.♗f5 ♖d7 34.♖e3 ♖xd6 35.♖g3+ ♗h8 36.♖g7! 1-0 A very beautiful final blow. One point for 25.h4!

Test 10

T10.01: 19...♗h6! 19...♗c7?! 20.♖h2 is not easy to play over the board. 20.♗xh6 20.♖xe4?! ♗xh3 21.♖g4+ ♗f6 22.♖xh3 ♖xa3 23.♖xa3

♖c3 gives Black more than enough compensation because of his strong initiative. **20...g×h6 21.♙b2?** 21.♙f8 ♖c3 was agreed drawn in Ekstroem-Gallagher, Samnaun 2004. Black is slightly better after 22.♙h6 ♖b3 and managed to win in Engelbert-Lanka, Hamburg 2002. **21...♙g7 22.♗d1 ♙×b2 23.♗×b2 ♖c3?** 23...♖c5 24.♙ad1 b5 makes better use of Black's initiative. **24.♖e3?** Activating the knight with 24.♗c4 ♖b3 25.f3 is the order of the day, e.g., 25...♖b4 26.♗e5+ ♖e7 27.♖ab1 ♖b1 28.♖b1 ♙c8 29.f4 ♖d8 30.♖c1=. **24...♖×e3 25.f×e3 b5 26.♖c1 ♖e7 27.♖c5?** The knight should be regrouped with 27.a×b5 a×b5 28.♗d1. **27...♖d6 28.b4 b×a4 29.♖a5 ♙b5 30.♗×a4 ♖×d5 31.♗c5 ♖c8 32.♗×a6?** 32.♖a1 ♖c6 33.♖c1 is more tenacious. **32...♖c4 33.♖f2 ♖c6! 34.♗b8 ♖b6 35.♖a8 (D)**



35...f4! This breakthrough decides matters. **36.e×f4 ♖d3 37.♖a3+ ♖d4 38.♖a8 e3+ 39.♖f3 ♖e6 40.♖a1 e2 41.♖f2 ♖e8 0-1** Three points for 19...♖h6.

T10.02: 34.♖a8+? Gruenfeld's suggestion 34.♖b1! is much stronger: 34...c×b5 (34...d×c4 35.b×c6 b×c6 36.♖b8+ ♗g8 37.♖b7+-) 35.♖×b5 b6 (35...d×c4? 36.♖×h7 ♖d1+ 37.♖h2

♖e6 38.♖b6+-) 36.♖b8+ ♖d8 37.♖×b6 ♖×b8 38.♖×b8+ ♖g7 39.♖b7+ ♖g8 (39...♖h6 40.c5±) 40.c×d5 ♗×d5 41.g4±. **34...♖g7 35.b×c6 b×c6 36.♖b1 ♖e6?** 36...♖e7 37.c×d5 c×d5 38.♖b5 ♖e6 is more precise and Black should be able to hold. **37.♖b7+ ♖d7 38.c×d5?** 38.♖b6! ♖e7 39.♖×c6 ♖c7 40.♖b5 d×c4 41.♖c6 ♖×c6 42.♙×c6 ♖e6 43.♖c5 gives White practical winning chances. **38...c×d5 39.♖c8 ♖f7 40.♖b8 d4 41.e×d4 ♖×d4 42.♙c6 ♖d1+ 43.♖g2 ♖e1 44.♖h8+ ♖h6 45.♖b4 g5 46.h4 g×h4 47.♖×h4+ ♖g6 48.♖d8 ♖e6 49.♙b7 h5 50.♖h1 ½-½** Two points for 34.♖b1.

T10.03: 23.♙×c6! "An excellent decision. After this exchange, the difference between the remaining minor pieces will be marked" (Nisipeanu in CBM 137). 23.♗e3? e4 24.♖e2 ♗e5= (Nisipeanu). **23...♖×c6 24.f4 ♖cc8 24...e4 25.♖d4+ ♖g8 26.♗e3** is also very good for White, e.g., 26...♖f8 27.♖f2 ♖a6 28.♖g2 ♖f7 29.h5 ♙c8 30.♖g1 h6 31.g4 f×g4 32.♗×g4 ♖h7 33.♗e3 ♙f5 34.♖d5±. **25.♖e3 ♖g7 26.♖f2! ♖d7?** Allowing the decisive activation of White's knight. 26...d5! 27.♖fd2 ♖e8! was a far better chance, e.g., 28.c×d5 ♙×d5 (28...♙d7!?) 29.♗×b4 ♙×b3 30.♖×b3 a×b4 31.♖×b4 ♖g8 (Nisipeanu) 32.♖g2±. **27.♗d4! ♖g4 28.♖dd2 ♖e8 29.♗b5 d5 30.♗d6! ♖ed8 31.♖×e5+ ♖g7 32.c5 ♖×e5 33.f×e5 ♖c7 34.♖c2 d4 35.♖fd2 f4 36.g×f4 d3 37.♖×d3 ♙f5 38.♗f7+ ♖g7 39.♖g2+ 1-0** Two points for 24.♙×c6.

Solutions: Tests

T10.04: 38...♖g4! The upcoming ♖6 will destroy the harmony of White's army. 38...♖a8?? runs into 39.♗h6+- . 39.♗e3 g6 40.♙xa3 ♖xa3 40...bxa3! 41.h4 ♗h6 42.♗g4 ♙xg4 43.♖xg4 ♗d8 44.♖g1 a2+- is even stronger. 41.♗d1 ♗h6 42.h4 ♗h8! Underscoring the vulnerability of White's king. 43.♙c2 ♗f6 44.♗h3 ♗xh3 45.♖xh3 ♙f4+ 46.♗g2 ♙xh3+ 47.♗xh3 ♗f8 48.♗g4 ♙g5 49.♗xf6 ♗xh4+ 50.♗g2 ♙xf6 51.♖h1 ♗g5+ 52.♗f1 ♗f4 53.♖h3 ♙g5 54.♗g2 ♗h4 55.♖f3 ♗g5+ 56.♗f1 ♗h5 57.♙d3 ♙g5 58.♙c2 ♖a1 0-1 Two points for 38...♗f4.

T10.05: 29.♗g5! 29.c5? plays White's main trump too early in view of 29...dxc5 30.♖c1 ♖xd2 31.♖xc5 ♖xf2+ 32.♗xf2 ♗d6 33.♗xe5 ♖f8 34.♗c2 ♗d7 35.♗xd7 ♗xd7 36.♖xa5 ♗d4 with good drawing chances. 29...♖ee7 29...h6 30.♗g6 ♖ee7 31.g4 ♗c6 32.g5 hxg5 33.♗xg5+-; 29...♗c6 30.h5 ♗xe4 31.♖xd6 ♖f7 32.♗e3 ♗b7 33.♖d8+- **30.c5!!** Now the right time has come. 30...dxc5 30...♗xc5 runs into 31.♖xd6 ♖xd6 32.♗xe7+- . 31.♖xd7 ♖xd7 32.♖xd7 ♗xd7 33.♗e7 h6 34.♗xe6+ ♗h8 35.g4 c4 36.♗e8+ ♗h7 37.g5 hxg5 38.♗xg5+ ♗h6 39.♗h8+ ♗g6 40.♗e8+ ♗h6 41.♗e6 1-0 Two points for 29.♗g5.

T10.06: 38.♙h4! ♗c8 38...♗c7 39.♙g3 ♗xg3 40.♗xd7 ♙e5 41.♖e2+- **39.♙f6 ♖f7!** 39...♗μH 40.♗h5 ♗b7 41.♖g1+- (Lo Quing in CBM 141); 39...♙f6 40.♗xf6 ♖μ7 41.♗xh6+ ♖h7 42.♗f6+ ♖μ7 41.♖f1

♗g8 44.♖g1 ♖xg1+ 45.♗xg1 ♖b1+ 46.♗g2 ♖b2+ 47.♗f3+- **40.♙xg7+ ♖xg7** 41.♖e6 White's major pieces close in for the final attack 41...♗g8 **42.♗h5 ♗c7** 43.♖xh6 ♖h7 44.♖xh7 ♗xh7 45.♖g1+ ♗h8 46.♗e5+ 1-0 One point for 38.♙h4!.

T10.07: 38.b3! ♗xa3 38...♙b5 39.bxc4 ♙c6 (39...♙xc4 40.♗xh5+-; 39...♙a6 40.♗d3 ♗xc4 41.♗xa5+-) 40.♗c1 ♙b5 41.♗g1 ♗xc4 42.♗e3 a4 43.♗f2+- **39.♗xc4 ♗d6** 40.♗c3 ♙d5 40...♗e5 41.♗xc6+-; 40...a4 41.bxa4 ♙xa4 42.♗xh5 e5 43.g4 ♙d7 44.♗g3+- **41.♗xa5 ♙xb3** 42.♗a7+ 1-0 One point for 38.b3!.

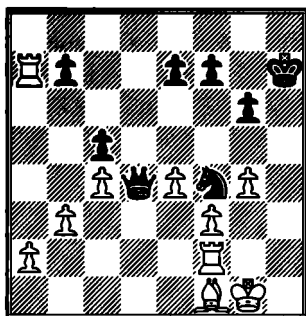
T10.08: 26.h5? Karpov rushes. 26.♗d3 ♖c8 27.h5! is better as 27...♗f4? can now be met by 28.gxf4 ♗g4+ 29.♗h1! exf4 30.♗h2 ♗h4 31.♙d2 ♙xd2 32.♖xd2 ♗xf2 33.♙f3=; 26.♗d2 also gets 1 point. **26...♗f4! 27.gxf4 ♗g4+ 28.♗f1** After 28.♗h1 Black gets good compensation by 28...exf4 29.♙xc5 ♙xc5 30.♗xc5 ♖c8 31.♗a3 ♗xe4 32.♖f1 ♗xh5+ 33.♗h2 ♗xd5 34.♙f3 f5=. **28...♗h3+ 29.♗g1 ♗g4+ 30.♗f1 ♗h3+** ½-½ One point for 26.♗d3 or 26.♗d2.

Test 11

T11.01: 25...♙f4 26.♙xc8 ♗c5!! The point as White's light-square bishop has no real targets. 27.♗h1 ♙xe3 28.♙d7 ♖e7 28...♙xc1 29.♖axc1 ♖xe1+ 30.♖xe1 ♖d8 31.♙f5 ♖d2 is even stronger. **29.♙xe3 ♖xe3 30.♖xe3 ♗xe3** "White's position is a picture of bad coordination. Black has a free reign on

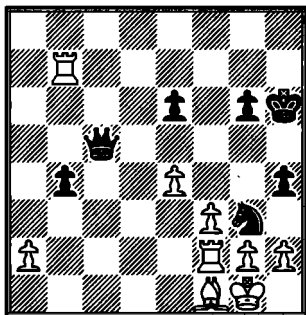
the d- and e-files, and his king is much safer" (McShane in CBM 82).
31. ♖b5 ♜e2 32. ♜g1 ♞d8 33. f4?
0-1 allowing ♜e4 loses directly, but Black dominates in any case. Three points for 25... ♖f4 26. ♖xc8 ♜c5!!.

T11.02: 33... ♞h4! Black is surprisingly better as his attack is very difficult to meet. 33...g5? runs into 34.g3 g4 35. ♖e2 "and White escapes from the pin" (Le Quang in CBM 141). **34. ♞b4?!** 34.g3!? h×g3 35. h×g3 ♜h5 36.g4 (36. ♜g2?! runs into 36... ♜e5 37.f4 ♜xe4+ 38. ♜f3 ♜f6 39. ♞d8 [39. ♖d3? ♜d4 40. ♜f1 ♜g4 41. ♜e2 ♜g1 →] 39... ♜g4 40. ♞dd3 ♜g7 with strong pressure.) 36... ♜f4 37. ♞a7 (D)



37... ♜h6!! "This king maneuver is really beautiful, especially when you find it over the board!" (Le Quang) 38. ♞xb7 ♜g5 39. ♞b4 ♜a1! 40. ♞h2 (40. ♖xc5 ♜h3+ 41. ♜g2 ♜d4 42. ♞bb2 ♜h4 43. c6 ♜d6 44. ♜h1 ♜xf2+ 45. ♞xf2 ♜g3 →. We add the line 40. ♜h2 ♜h8+ 41. ♜g1 ♜h4 42. ♖g2 ♜g3 43. ♜f1 ♜xg2 44. ♞xg2 ♜xf3+ 45. ♜g1 c×b4 to Le Quang's analysis.) 40... ♜e1 41. ♞xe7 ♜g3+ 42. ♜h1 ♜xf3+ 43. ♜g1 c×b4 (Le Quang) with a strong initiative. 34. ♞a7? ♜h5 35. ♞xb7 ♜g3 → (Le Quang). **34... c×b4 35. ♞a5 ♜h5?!** Even more convincing is 35...e6! 36.g3 ♜h5 37.g×h4

(37. ♜g2? runs into 37...h3+ 38. ♜g1 ♜xg3!) 37... ♜f4 38. ♞b5 ♜a1 39. ♞xb4 ♜h3+ 40. ♜g2 ♜xf2 41. ♜xf2 ♜d4+ 42. ♜e2 b6 (Le Quang) and Black should break the fortress in the long run. **36. ♞d5 ♜e3 37. ♞d3 ♜a7 38. ♞d5 ♜g3 39. c5?** White should keep the pawn with 39. ♞dd2 e6 40. ♞c2 ♜d4 41. ♞cd2 ♜c5 42. ♞c2 ♜g7 (Le Quang) when Black's king will approach further, but it is not over yet. **39...e6 40. ♞d7 40. ♞g5? ♜xf1 41. ♜xf1 ♜a3 42. ♞c2 f5 → 40... ♜xc5 41. ♞xf7+? 41. ♞dd2** was the last chance to offer further resistance. **41... ♜h6 42. ♞xb7 (D)**



42... ♜h1! 0-1 An amazing final move! Two points for 33...h4!

T11.03: 58. ♜b3! The knight is brought to d4 where it controls the game. The routine 58. ♜f3? is wrong because of 58... ♖g6+ 59. ♜d4 ♞d1+ 60. ♜e3 ♞d3+ 61. ♜f4 ♞c3 62. ♜d2 ♖f7=. **58... ♞d1+ 58... ♖xc4+ 59. ♜d2 ♞f1 60. ♜d4** (Atalik in CBM 141) 60... ♞b1 61. ♜f5+ ♜h7 62. ♞xh5+ ♜g8 63. ♜d4± **59. ♜e2 ♞b1 60. ♜d4 ♖xc4+ 61. ♜d2 d5 62. ♜f5+ ♜h7 63. ♞xh5+ ♜g6 64. ♞g5+ ♜f6 65. ♜e3 ♞b2+ 66. ♜d1 ♖e2+ 67. ♜c1 ♞xb5 68. ♜d2! 68. ♜xd5+? ♜f7 69. ♞f5+ ♜e6 70. ♞f2 ♞xd5 71. ♞xe2+ ♜f5**

T11.06: 21...♖e8! "It is important to put this knight on f6 (it was just an obstruction on g7) rather than the other knight, which has a very useful defensive function on d7" (Carlsen in CBM 142). **22.♖dc1 ♖ef6 23.♖f1? 23.♖d1?** is also bad because of **23...g4 24.h×g4 h×g4 25.♖×g4 ♖×g4 26.f×g4 ♖h4!** (Carlsen). But **23.♖h1 g4 24.♖g1** (Carlsen) is better to stop Black's attack. **23...♖f7 24.♖e1?! g4 25.♖d1 g×h3 26.g×h3 ♖g8 27.♖c2 ♖g2 28.♖h1 ♖×e2 29.♖×e2 ♖g2 30.♖d3 ♖b6 31.♖bg1 ♖bg8 32.♖×g2 ♖×g2 33.a5 ♖×c4 34.♖c1 b5 35.a×b6 ♖×b6 36.♖f1 ♖h7 37.h4 ♖f8 38.♖d2 ♖g6 39.♖e1 ♖a4 40.♖g1 ♖×g1 41.♖×g1 ♖×h4 42.♖d2 ♖e7 43.♖h3 ♖d7** **0-1** One point for **21...♖e8**.

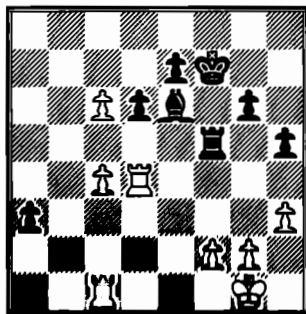
T11.07: 36...a3! 37.♖×a3 37.b×a3 ♖×c3 38.♖b1 ♖×c4 39.♖×b8 ♖c2+ -+ 37...♖a5 38.c4 38.♖b1! ♖a4 39.♖d1 ♖e3! 40.♖×e3 ♖×b2+ 41.♖×b2 ♖×b2+ 42.♖×b2 ♖×d1 -+ (Dembo in CBM 142). 38...♖a4 39.♖d3 ♖×b2+ 40.♖×b2 ♖×b2+ 41.♖×b2 ♖b4+ 0-1 One point for **36...a3**.

T11.08: 48.♖b6! ♖d8 48...♖a6? 49.♖b7+-; 48...♖d7 49.♖×a5+- 49.♖×a5! ♖e7 49...♖×a5 50.♖b7 ♖d7 51.♖b8+- 50.♖×a7 ♖×a7 51.♖×b4 ♖h8 52.a4 ♖d4 53.♖b7 ♖g8 54.g3 ♖d2 55.♖g2 ♖c3 56.♖f7 ♖d3 57.♖g6 ♖c3 58.♖b5 ♖d2 59.a5 ♖a2 60.♖g4 ♖c2 61.a6 **1-0** One point for **48.♖b6**.

Test 12

T12.01: 14.d5! A very strong idea. Black will be dominated. **14...c×d5 15.c4 e6?! 15...♖g7 16.c×d5 0-0 17.0-0 ♖f5 18.♖e3± 16.♖b2 ♖g7 17.♖c6! b×c6 18.♖×g7 ♖g8 19.♖e5 ♖d7 20.0-0** Black is completely tied down. The rest is easy. **20...♖b8 21.♖a4 ♖b7 21...d×c4 22.♖fb1 ♖×b1+ 23.♖×b1 ♖b5 24.♖d1 c3 25.♖×c6 ♖×c6 26.♖×d8+ ♖×d8 27.♖×c3+- 22.♖ab1 ♖c8 23.♖×b7 ♖×b7 24.♖f2 d4 25.♖a5 ♖d8 26.♖e4** **1-0** Three points for **14.d5 c×d5 15.c4**.

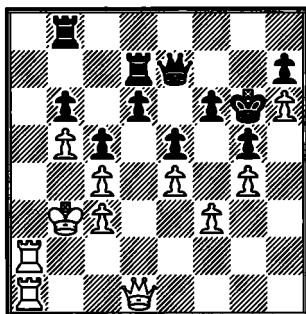
T12.02: 20.♖b4! a strong regrouping after which all White pieces are very powerful and he has the clear plan to attack on the queenside. **20...♖f7 21.♖c6 ♖e8 22.♖d3 ♖c8 23.♖e4! ♖c7 24.a4 h5 25.h3 ♖e6 26.♖×e6 ♖×e6 27.♖e1 ♖c8 28.a5 b×a5 29.♖×a7 ♖f7 30.♖b6 30.♖d8+!?** is better technique as White preserves the knight: **30...♖e8 31.♖b6 ♖d7 32.♖e6 ♖e5 33.♖c7+ ♖f7 34.♖×a5+- (Roiz in CBM 111). 30...♖×c6 31.b×c6 a4 32.♖ed1 a3 33.♖d4 ♖×d4 34.♖×d4 ♖e6? 34...♖a5 35.♖a1 ♖a6 36.c7 ♖a7 37.f3 ♖e6 38.♖f2 ♖×c7 39.♖×a3 ♖×c4 40.♖×c4 ♖×c4 41.h4 ♖f6 42.♖a7± (D)**



Solutions: Tests

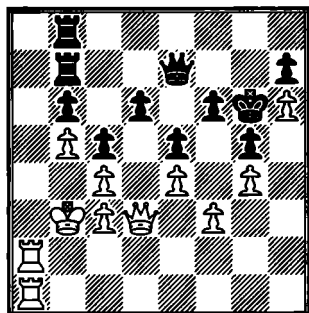
35. ♖d5! ♜e8 35... ♜xd5 36. cxd5
 ♜xd5 37. c7 ♜c5 38. ♜xc5 dxc5
 39. c8♖+ 36. ♜xf5 gx f5 37. ♜a1
 ♜d8 38. ♜xa3 ♜c7 39. ♜e3 ♜xc4
 40. ♜xe7+ ♜xc6 41. f3 1-0 One
 point for 20. ♜b4 .

T12.03: 51. ♖f2 White's king is brought to b3 and then the rooks will be doubled on the a-file. Afterwards Black will not be able to stop the invasion. 51... ♜e7 52. ♖f1 ♖f7 53. ♜e3 ♜g6 54. ♖h1 ♖f7 55. ♜d3 ♜e7 56. ♜c2 ♖g8 57. ♖a1 ♖f8 58. ♜d1 ♜db7 59. ♜h1 ♖f7 60. ♜b3 ♖e7 61. ♖a2 ♖d7 62. ♜a1 ♖e7 63. ♖d2 ♜g6 64. ♖h2 ♖f7 65. ♜1a2 ♖d7 66. ♖h5+ ♖f8 67. ♖h1 ♖f7 68. ♖d1 ♜g6 69. ♜d2 ♜d8 70. ♖h1 ♖f7 71. ♜da2 ♜db8 72. ♜a1 ♖e7 73. ♜6a2 ♜d7 74. ♖d1 ♜g6 (D)



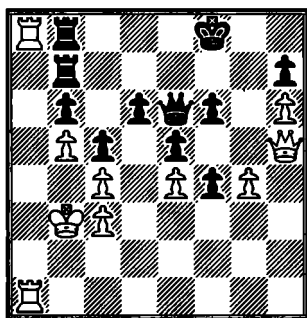
75. ♖h1! 75. ♖d5! ? ♜xh6 76. ♜a8
 ♜xa8 77. ♜xa8 ♜d8 (77... ♜b7 78. ♜c8
 ♖f7 79. ♖xf7 ♜xf7 80. ♜b8 ♜g6
 81. ♜xb6 ♜d7 82. ♜a6 [82. ♜b8! ?]
 82... h5 83. gxh5+ ♜xh5 84. b6+-)
 78. ♜xd8 ♖xd8 79. ♖f7 ♖h8 80. ♖c7
 ♜g6 81. ♖xb6 h5 82. ♖xd6 h4 83. b6
 h3 84. b7 h2 85. b8♖ h1♖ 86. ♖xh8
 ♖xh8 87. ♖xc5 ♖h1 88. ♖d5 ♖xf3
 (88... ♖b1+ 89. ♜a4 ♖c2+ 90. ♖h5
 ♖b3+ 91. ♜c6 ♖b8 92. c5+-) H9.c5

♖xg4 90. c6 ♖g1 91. ♖g8+ ♜h6
 92. ♜c4 ♖f1+ 93. ♜c5 ♖g1+ 94. ♜d6
 ♖b6 95. ♖f7 ♖d8+ 96. ♖d7 ♖f8+
 97. ♖e7 ♖c8 98. c7 ♖a6+ 99. ♜d7
 ♖d3+ 100. ♖d6 ♖b5+ 101. ♜e7+-
75... ♖f7 76. ♖b1 ♜db7 77. ♖d3
 ♜g6 (D)



78. f4! Quite spectacular, but objectively not best. Better was the invasion beginning with 78. ♖d5 ♜xh6 79. ♜a8 ♖c7 80. ♖c6 ♜xa8 (80... ♖e7 81. ♜1a7 ♜xa7 82. ♜xb8 ♜a3+ 83. ♜c2 ♖a7 84. ♖xd6 ♖a4+ 85. ♜d2 ♜a2+ 86. ♜e3+-) 81. ♜xa8 ♖xc6 82. bxc6 ♜c7 83. ♜a4 ♜xc6 84. ♜b5 ♜c7 85. ♜xb6 ♜f7 86. ♜c6 ♜g6 87. ♜g8+ ♜h6 88. ♜xd6+- . 78... gx f4 ? The coffin-nail on h6 must be taken: 78... ♜xh6! and Black has chances to survive: 79. ♜h1+ ♜g7 80. fxg5 (80. ♜ah2 ? ♜h8 81. fxg5 fxg5 82. ♜xh7+ ♖xh7 83. ♜xh7+ ♜xh7 84. ♖xd6 ♜g8 85. ♖xe5 ♜g6 86. ♖e8 ♜bg7 87. e5 ♜g8 88. ♖f7+ ♜g7 89. ♖f8 ♜g8 90. ♖f5 ♜g7 91. ♜c2 ♜e7 92. ♜d3 ♜g7 93. ♜e4 ♜f7 94. ♖c8 ♜f8=) 80... fxg5 81. ♖h3 ♜h8 (81... ♜g8 ? 82. ♖h6 ♜d8 [82... ♖f8 83. ♖xg5+ ♜g7 84. ♖d2±] 83. ♜f1 ♖g7 84. ♖e6+ [84. ♖xd6! ?] 84... ♜h8 85. ♜af2±) 82. ♖h6 ♜d7 83. ♜f2 ♜g8 84. ♜d1 ♜dd8 85. ♜f6 ♖g7 ; 78... exf4? 79. c5+ ♖f7 80. exd6 ♖e6 81. ♜e2+- . 79. ♖h3 ♖f7 80. ♜a8 ♖c6

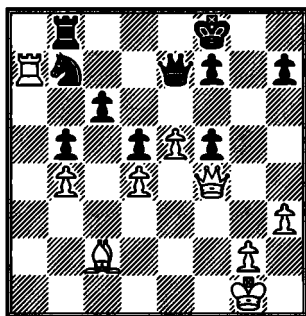
80...♖d8 81.♜h5+ ♔g8 82.♖1a6
♖bd7 83.♖xd8+ ♜xd8 84.♜f5 ♖b7
85.♜e6+ ♜f8 86.♜c2 f3 87.♜d3+-
81.♜h5+ ♜f8 (D)



82.♜f5!? Good technique, as the resulting rook ending is won by *zugzwang* because of Black's passivity. 82.♖xb8+ ♖xb8 83.♖a7 ♔g8 84.g5 wins as well, but is more complicated, e.g., 84...f5 (84...♜e8 85.♜h4 ♖g6 86.gxf6 ♜h8 87.f7 ♖f8 88.♖d7 d5 89.♜e7 ♜xh6 90.♖d8+-) 85.g6 ♜xg6 86.♖g7+ ♜xg7 87.hxg7 fxe4 88.♜h6 ♖b7 (88...♖e8 89.♜xd6 ♜xg7 90.♜xb6 e3 91.♜xc5 e2 92.♜g1+ ♜h8 93.b6+-) 89.♜xd6 ♖f7 90.♜xb6 f3 91.♜b8+ ♜xg7 92.♜xe5+ ♖f6 93.♜e7+ ♜g6 94.♜xe4+ ♜g5 95.♜e3+ ♜g4 96.♜g1+ ♜h4 97.♜f2+ ♜g4 98.♜a4+- **82...♜xf5 83.gxf5 ♖xa8 83...f3 84.♜c2 f2 85.♖xb8+ ♖xb8 86.♜d3 f1♜+ 87.♖xf1 ♖a8 88.♖g1 ♖a7 89.♖g2+-** as Black is in fatal *zugzwang* and has to allow the invasion of White's rook via a2 or g7. **84.♖xa8+ ♜f7 85.♜c2 ♖e7 86.♜d3 ♖e8 87.♖a7+ ♜g8 87...♖e7 88.♖a6 d5 (88...♖b7 89.♖a8 ♖e7 90.♖h8 ♖e8 91.♖xh7+ ♜g8 92.♖b7 ♖a8 93.♖xb6 ♖a2 94.♖xd6 f3 95.♜e3 f2 96.♖d1+-) 89.cxd5 ♖b7 90.♖a8 ♜e7 91.♜e2 c4 92.♜f3 ♜d6 93.♖c8 ♖c7 94.♖f8 ♜e7 95.d6+**

♜xd6 96.♖xf6+ ♜c5 97.♖e6+-
88.♖g7+ ♜f8 88...♜h8 89.♖b7+-
89.♖xh7 ♜g8 90.♖a7 ♜h8 91.h7 Strong prophylaxis against the activation of Black's rook. **91...♖b8 92.♜e2 ♖d8 93.♜f3 ♖c8 94.♜g4 ♖d8 95.♜h5 f3 95...♖b8 96.♜g6 ♖f8 97.♖d7 ♖a8 98.♖xd6 f3 99.♖d3 f2 100.♖f3 ♖a2 101.♜xf6 ♜xh7 102.♜e6 ♜h6 103.f6+- **96.♜g6 1-0** Two points for the plan to bring the king to b3 followed by an invasion of the major pieces.**

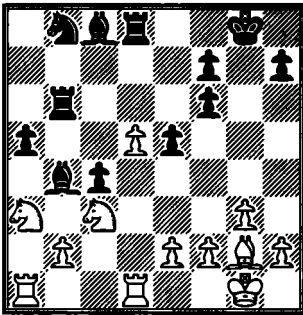
T12.04: 29.f5! gxf5 30.♜g3+ ♜f8 31.♖c2? The wrong order of moves. The immediate 31.♜f4 wins. **31...♜e7?** Both players miss the amazing 31...♖a8!! 32.♖xa8 (32.♖xb7 ♜c8 33.♖xf7+ ♜xf7 34.♜g5 ♜f8) 32...♜xa8 33.♜c3 ♖d8 34.♖xf5 ♖a7 with drawing chances in both cases. **32.♜f4! (D)**



“White can afford to sacrifice the b4-pawn, since the forthcoming invasion of white's queen will be fatal for Black.” (Postny in CBM 102) **32...♜xb4 33.♖xf5 c5 34.♜h6+ ♜e8 35.♜c6+ ♜f8 36.♜h6+ ♜e8 37.♜c6+ ♜f8 38.♜c7 ♜xd4+ 39.♜h1 ♜f4 40.♜xb8+ ♜g7 41.♖a1 ♜xf5 42.♜xb7 b4 43.♜xd5 1-0** One point for 29.f5.

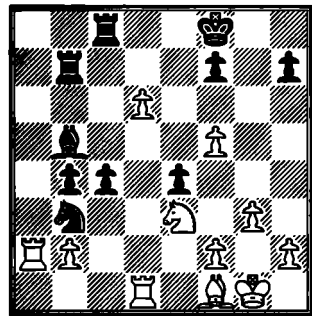
Solutions: Tests

T12.04: 14. ♖d4! "Splendid! The time has come for the queen to be developed and this causes Black great problems!" (Marin in CBM 125). 14... ♗d7 15. dxe6 fxe6 16. ♖g4+ ♖h8 17. ♗g5± (Marin). 15. ♗x d4 ♖a6 15... ♗xc3 16. bxc3 exd5 17. ♖fb1± "would retrieve both sacrificed pawns soon, with an obvious advantage." (Marin). 16. ♗dxb5 ♖b6 17. ♖fd1 e5 18. ♗a3 (D)



18... ♗a6?! 18... ♗a3! 19. ♖xa3 ♖xb2 20. ♖b1 ♖xb1+ 21. ♗xb1 f5 22. ♖xa5 ♗d7 23. ♗c3 ♗b6 24. f4 e4 25. ♖f2 ♗b7 26. d6± 19. ♗a4 ♖b7 20. ♖dc1 ♖c7 21. e4 f5 21... ♗d7 22. ♗f1 ♖dc8 23. b3± 22. exf5 ♗d7 23. ♗f1 ♖dc8 24. ♗c2 ♗f8?! 25. ♗e3 e4 25... ♗c5 26. ♗xc5 ♖xc5 27. f6 h6 28. ♖d1 ♗b7 29. ♗xc4 ♖xc4 30. ♗xc4 ♖xc4 31. d6 ♖c8 32. d7 ♖d8 33. ♖xa5+- 26. ♗c3 ♗c5 27. ♖d1 ♗b3 28. ♖a4 ♗b4 29. d6 ♖b7 30. ♗cd5 ♖f8 31. ♗xb4 ♗b5 32. ♖a2 axb4 (D)

33. ♗xc4! ♗xc4 34. ♗xc4 ♖g7 34... ♖xc4 35. ♖a8+ ♖g7 36. d7+- 35. ♗e3 ♖d8 36. ♖d5 ♖b6 37. ♖a4 ♗c1 38. ♗c4 ♖b7 39. ♖c5 ♗d3 40. ♖c7 ♖b5 41. g4 ♖d5 42. ♖aa7 ♖f8 43. h4 h5 44. g5 ♗e1 45. f6+ ♖g6 46. ♖h2 ♖f5 47. ♖a5 ♖xf2+ 48. ♖g1 e3 49. ♗e5+ ♖h7 50. ♖xf7+ ♖xf7 51. g6+ ♖h6



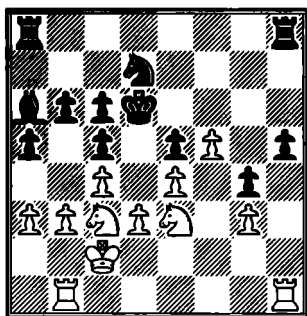
52. gxf7 ♖xf6 53. d7 1-0 Two points for 14. ♖d4.

T12.06: 25. ♗xc5! "White's strategy ... has been to get a good bishop that works better than the black knight on two flanks. In that sense this exchange might look wrong from one point of view. However in view of the concrete and forced lines to follow, this is absolutely the right time for this exchange in order to disrupt the coordination of the Black pieces and make the weakness on e6 even more vulnerable" (Berg in CBM 137 extra). After 25. f4?! ♗bd7 26. ♖c2 b6 27. ♗a3 ♗f8 White is better but Black can still fight. 25... ♖xc5 26. f4 e5 26... ♖cc8 27. ♗xe6 ♗d7 28. f5 ♗c5 29. ♖d6+- 27. ♗f5! and the invasion of White's major pieces will decide: 27... ♗c8 28. ♖d2 ♖f8? 28... b5 29. ♖d1 ♖c7 30. cxb5 axb5 31. fxe5 fxe5 32. ♖d5+- (Berg). 29. ♖d7 ♗e7 30. ♗d6 ♖b8 31. b4! ♖c6 32. fxe5 ♗c8 33. c5 ♗xd6 34. exd6 b6 35. ♖e4 1-0 Two points for 25. ♗xc5.

T12.07: 28. ♗b1! f5 29. ♗a3 ♗d7 30. ♖a6 ♗c8 31. ♖xc4! Black is lost. He is a pawn down without counterplay and the try to free himself fails tactically. 31... ♖xc4 32. ♗xc4

Qb5 33. Ec6! Qxc6 33... Qe7
34. Qb3+- 34. dxc6 Qd8 35. b5 f4
36. Qd2 E f7 37. Qa4 Qxc6
38. bxc6 E a7 39. Qb3 Qf8
40. Qa5 Qf6 41. Qfd2 E a6 42. c7
1-0 Two points for 28. Qb1.

T12.08: 25. a3! The exclamation mark is not for the move but for the plan. Black has great problems dealing with White's latent threat to open the queenside as Black must also protect his weaknesses on the kingside. **25... a5 26. Qc2 Qb7 27. E b1 E a8**
28. Qc3 Qd6 29. Qf1 Qa6
30. Qe3 (D)



From page 151:

39. Qh4 Qf7 40. Qxa6 Qe6 41. d7
Qxd7 42. Qb5 Qd6 43. Qxc6 Qxc6
44. Qxg6 Qd6 45. Qh4+- 39. Qxa6
Qd7 40. Qb5 Qxd6 41. Qxc6
Qxc6 42. Qxe5 Qd7 42... Qc5
43. Qe6 Qb4 44. Qd7+- 43. e4 Qe7
44. Qd5 Qd8 45. b4 1-0 Two points for 34. d6.

T01.02: 37. Ec6! and the e6-pawn falls, deciding the issue. **37. E xh7?** can be met by **37... Qc5 38. Qe8 E x e3+**
39. Qg4 e5 40. f5 e4 41. E h6+ Qg7
42. E e6 E e2 43. f6+ Qh6 44. Qf5 Qf8
and 37. Qc4? by **37... Ec3 38. Ec6 Qd6**

30... b5? This accelerates Black's defeat. He should not play on the wing where White wants to open the game. But only waiting is also insufficient; Black should play prophylactically, e.g., **30... Qf6 31. Qg2 E hb8 (31... Qc7?! 32. Qh4 Qd6?! 33. Qg6 E he8 34. b4! ±) 32. b4 a x b4 33. a x b4 b5 34. c x b5 Q x b5 35. b x c5+ Q x c5 36. E hc1 Qd4 37. Qe2+ Qc5 38. Qd2+ Qd6 39. Qc3 Qa6** and Black can fight on. **31. c x b5 Q x b5 31... c x b5 32. a4 b4 33. Qcd5 E h7 34. E h4 E g8 35. E bh1 E g5 36. E x g4!+- 32. Qa4!?**
32. Q x b5+ c x b5 33. a4! is also very strong, e.g., **33... b4 (33... Qc6 34. a x b5+ Q x b5 35. Qc3+-) 34. E h4 Qf6 (34... E ae8 35. Qc4+ Qc7 36. Q x a5+-) 35. Qc4+ Qe7 36. Q x e5+- 32... Qe7 33. E h4 E ab8?! 34. Qb2 1-0** and Black resigned as he has too many weaknesses, e.g., **34... Qf6 (34... E be8 35. E bh1 Qf6 36. a4 Qa6 37. Qbc4+-) 35. E bh1 Qg5 36. Q x g4+-**. One point for the plan to open a second front with a3 followed by b4 after preparation.

with good drawing chances in both cases. **37... E a7 38. Qc4 E e7 39. e4 Qh6 40. e5+ 1-0** Three points for 37. Ec6.

T01.03: Epishin improves the worst placed minor piece with **17. Qc4!** to install it on d5, where it is very annoying for Black. **17... Qde5 18. Qd5 Q x f3+ 19. Q x f3 Qd7 20. E fd1 E fe8 21. E d3 Qg6 22. E e1 E ad8 23. Qd1 Qe7 (D)**

Please return to page 151 for the remainder of the solution for *Test 3*.

Sources

Books

- Dvoretsky, Mark, *Dvoretsky's Endgame Manual*, Russell Enterprises, Inc., Milford 2003
- Fischer, Bobby, *My 60 Memorable Games*, Simon and Schuster 1969
- Kasparov, Garry, *On My Great Predecessors*, Volumes 1-5, Everyman 2004-2006
- Meyer, C.D., and Müller, K., *The Magic of Chess Tactics*, Russell Enterprises, Inc., Milford 2002 and as ChessBase Fritztrainer DVD, Hamburg 2009
- Müller, Karsten, *ChessCafe Puzzle Book 1*, Russell Enterprises, Inc., Milford 2004
- Müller, Karsten, *ChessCafe Puzzle Book 2*, Russell Enterprises, Inc., Milford 2008
- Müller, Karsten and van Delft, Merijn, *ChessCafe Puzzle Book 3*, Russell Enterprises, Inc., Milford 2010
- Müller, K., and Pajeken, W., *How to Play Chess Endgames*, GAMBIT 2008
- Rowson, Jonathan, *Chess for Zebras*, GAMBIT 2005
- Soltis, Andy, *The Wisest Things Ever Said about Chess*, Batsford 2008
- Stohl, Igor, *Instructive Modern Chess Masterpieces*, GAMBIT 2001
- Volokitin and Grabinsky, *Perfect your Chess*, GAMBIT 2007

Electronic Works and Databases

- ChessBase MEGABASE 2011
- Chess Endgames 1-10, Fritztrainer DVDs by Karsten Müller, ChessBase, Hamburg 2005-2012

Magazines and Periodicals

- Chess Informant*
- ChessBase Magazine*
- Chess Vibes Openings* by Merijn van Delft and Robert Ris weekly internet newspaper
- Chess Today* daily internet newspaper by Alexander Baburin et al.
- New in Chess Magazine*
- Endgame Corner* at ChessCafe.com by Karsten Müller

The Chess Puzzle Book 4

The chapters on prophylaxis and the principle of two weaknesses are based on works in German by Alexander Markgraf to get his A and B trainer licenses. He used the following additional sources:

- Anand, Viswanathan *Meine besten Schachpartien*, 1. Auflage, Edition Olms, Zürich 1998.
- Bronznik, Valery and Terekhin, Anatoli, *Techniken des Positionsspiels*, 1. Auflage, Schachverlag Kania, Schwieberdingen 2005
- Dworetzky, Mark, *Geheimnisse der Schachstrategie*, 2. Auflage, Edition Olms, Zürich 2006.
- Dworetzky, Mark und Yusupov, Artur, *Angriff und Verteidigung*, 2. Auflage, Edition Olms, Zürich 2004.
- Dworetzky, Mark und Yusupov, Artur, *Positionelles Schach*, 4. Auflage, Edition Olms, Zürich 2003.
- Hansen, Lars Bo, *How Chess Games are Won and Lost*, 1. Auflage, Gambit Publications, London 2008.
- Kasparow, Garry, *Das große Kasparow Schachbuch, Von der Zeit geprüft, Partien von 1978-1985*, 1. Auflage, Rau Verlag, Düsseldorf 1990.
- Kasparov, Garry, *Kasparov vs. Karpov*, 1975-1985 including the first and second matches, Everyman Chess, London 2008.
- Kasparov, Garry, *My Great Predecessors*, Part 3, Petrosian Spassky, 4. Auflage, Everyman Chess, London 2008.
- Kasparow, Garry, *Meine großen Vorkämpfer Band 7: Anatoli Karpow*, 1. Auflage, Edition Olms, Zürich 2007.
- McDonald, Neil, *The Giants of Strategy*, 1. Auflage, Everyman Chess, London 2007.
- Nimzowitsch, Aaron, *Mein System*, 2. Auflage, "Das Schach-Archiv", Hamburg 1965.
- Reinfeld, Fred, *The Immortal Games Of Capablanca*, 2. Auflage, Dover Publications, New York 1990.
- Rowson, Jonathan, *Die Sieben Todsünden des Schachspielers*, 1. Auflage, Gambit Publications, London 2003.

Congratulations! You Have the Advantage! Now What??

Welcome to *The Chess Puzzle Book 4!* – It mostly deals with the important technical question of how to convert a static advantage.

As noted by Mark Dvoretsky in his Foreword: “I cannot think of any books with high-quality exercises regarding such topics as domination, the “do not hurry” principle, the principle of two weaknesses, etc., all of which are discussed by Müller and his co-author Alexander Markgraf... I hope that you enjoy this new book by Müller and Markgraf and I encourage you to seriously study the positions discussed in the book. As a result, you will significantly progress in your understanding of chess and improve your results.”

Topics include Prophylaxis, The Principle of Two Weaknesses, The Right Exchange, Domination, Do Not Rush, and Converting an Advantage. There are also many well-chosen exercises with comprehensive solutions to help guide and instruct the reader.

The Chess Puzzle Book 4 is the fourth volume in the series formerly known as the ChessCafe Puzzle Books.



Russell Enterprises, Inc.
www.russell-enterprises.com



9 781936 490523